



**EnglishPod**



## Table of Contents

Elementary - Difficult Customer (B0001) .....	1
Elementary - Calling In Sick (B0002) .....	4
Elementary - I need an assistant! (B0004) .....	10
Elementary - What's your name again? (B0008) .....	22
Elementary - Silence Please! (B0009) .....	25
Daily Life - New Guy in Town (C0011) .....	32
Daily Life - Cleaning the House (C0012) .....	36
The Office - Out Of Control Spending (C0013) .....	40
Daily Life - I'm sorry, I love you (C0015) .....	47
Elementary - Turn left here! (B0016) .....	51
Elementary - Here Comes the Bride (B0017) .....	55
Upper-Intermediate - Protest! (D0018) .....	59
The Weekend - Christmas Chronicles I (C0019) .....	63
Elementary - I Can See Clearly Now (B0020) .....	67
The Office - What Do You Do? (C0021) .....	71
The Weekend - Christmas Chronicles II (C0022) .....	75
Elementary - Making an Appointment (B0023) .....	79
Elementary - Where should we eat? (B0024) .....	82
Upper-Intermediate - Planning For The Worst (D0025) .....	86
Elementary - New Year Resolution (B0026) .....	90
Elementary - Asking for Time Off (B0027) .....	93
Daily Life - I'm Sorry, I Love You II (C0028) .....	96
Advanced - Investing in Emerging Markets (E0029) .....	99
Daily Life - New Guy in Town II (C0030) .....	103
Elementary - Canceling an Appointment (B0031) .....	106
Daily Life - Opening a Bank Account (C0032) .....	109
Upper-Intermediate - Live from Washington (D0034) .....	118
Daily Life - He's not a Good Fit (C0035) .....	122
Elementary - I'm Sorry, I Love You III (B0036) .....	126
Intermediate - Chinese New Year (C0037) .....	129
Elementary - My New Boyfriend (B0039) .....	138



Elementary - Can I ask you a favor? (B0040) .....	141
The Weekend - Movie Trailer (C0041) .....	144
Elementary - I Need More Time (B0042).....	148
Daily Life - Applying for a Visa (C0043) .....	151
Intermediate - I'm Sorry I love You IV (C0045).....	159
Upper-Intermediate - Emergency Room (D0046).....	163
Advanced - Just In Time Strategy (E0047).....	168
Intermediate - Carnival in Rio! (C0048) .....	173
Daily Life - New Guy In Town III (C0050) .....	180
The Weekend - What a Bargain! (C0051).....	184
Daily Life - Pizza Delivary (C0052) .....	188
Intermediate - I'm Sorry I Love You V (C0054).....	195
Daily Life - Planning a Bank Robbery (C0056) .....	203
Daily Life - This Is Your Captain Speaking (C0058).....	211
Intermediate - New Guy in Town IV (C0060) .....	219
The Office - Job Interview II (C0062).....	225
Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You VI (C0064).....	233
The Office - Job Interview III (C0065).....	237
The Office - Calling The Office (C0066) .....	241
The Office - Groundbreaking Research (C0068) .....	247
Advanced Media - Buying Underwear (F0070).....	254
Intermediate - You Are Fired! (C0072) .....	262
Daily Life - What Am I Thinking! (C0074) .....	270
Daily Life - Going To The Dentist (C0075) .....	274
Daily Life - Learning Simple Math (C0076) .....	277
The Weekend - International Workers Day (C0078).....	286
The Weekend - Funky Galaxy Battles (C0079).....	291
Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You VII (C0080) .....	295
Daily Life - Getting A Hair Cut (C0081).....	298
Daily Life - New Guy In Town V (C0082).....	302
Daily Life - At The Pharmacy (C0084) .....	310
Daily Life - Looking for an Apartment (C0086).....	319
The Weekend - Star Trek The Lost Generation (C0087) .....	324
Daily Life - Will You Be My Girlfriend? (C0088) .....	328



Daily Life - At The Airport (C0089) .....	331
Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You VIII (C0090) .....	335
Global View - Big Bang Theory (C0094) .....	353
Daily Life - Talking About a Past Event (C0095) .....	359
The Weekend - 1960's English (C0096) .....	363
Daily Life - Weather Forecast (C0097).....	366
Daily Life - Where are you from? (C0100) .....	381
Global View - Global Warming (C0102).....	389
Daily Life - Baby, I'm Sorry (C0103).....	395
Daily Life - Mobile Phone Plan (C0106).....	409
Daily Life - Complaining at a Restaurant (C0107) .....	414
The Office - Bad news, boss. (C0108) .....	419
Daily Life - Registering for University (C0110).....	428
The Office - Sorry I'm Late (C0113) .....	442
Daily Life - I Don't Feel So Good (C0115).....	449
The Office - You Missed The Deadline! (C0116).....	453
The Weekend - I'm Sorry I Love You IX (C0117) .....	457
Global View - Presidential Speech (C0121) .....	473
Daily Life - Supermarket Cashier (C0122).....	476
The Weekend - That's Funny! (C0126).....	492
The Weekend - I Love That Song! (C0127) .....	496
Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You X (C0128) .....	501
Global View - Presidential Speech II (C0129) .....	506
Daily Life - Going To The Gym (C0130).....	510
Daily Life - What if? Part 1 (C0131).....	514
Daily Life - Getting Internet Service (C0137) .....	535
The Weekend - Playing Chess (C0139) .....	543
Daily Life - Buying a Computer (C0140) .....	547
Daily Life - What If? Part 2 (C0141).....	552
The Weekend - What Do I Wear? (C0142) .....	556
Global View - Capital Punishment (C0144) .....	564
Global View - Animal Rights (C0146) .....	573
Advanced - Darwin's Theory Of Evolution (E0151) .....	590
The Weekend - Bachelor Party (C0155).....	602



The Weekend - Trick Or Treat (C0157).....	610
Global View - All Saints Day (C0158).....	613
Daily Life - Getting Flowers (C0159) .....	616
Global View - Health Insurance (C0160).....	619
Daily Life - Computer Games (C0161).....	623
Global View - Veteran's Day (C0162) .....	626
Global View - Social Security (C0163).....	629
Daily Life - Apology Letter (C0164) .....	632
Daily Life - Asking For A Loan (C0165).....	634
Daily Life - Learning How To Drive (C0167).....	640
The Weekend - Cooking A Thanksgiving Dinner (C0168).....	643
The Weekend - Roller Coaster (C0169).....	644
Daily Life - Wedding Doubts (C0170).....	647
The Weekend - Buying a Camera (C0171).....	650
The Office - Preparing a Budget (C0173).....	657
The Weekend - Getting a manicure (C0174) .....	660
Global View - New Years Resolution (C0175) .....	663
The Weekend - Decorating a Christmas Tree (C0177) .....	669
Daily Life - Finding the perfect present (C0178).....	672
Intermediate - Silent Night (C0179) .....	675
Daily Life - Winter Clothes (C0183).....	687
Daily Life - Going On A Diet (C0187) .....	700
The Office - Asking For A Raise (C0188) .....	703
Daily Life - Buying A New Mobile Phone (C0189) .....	706
The Weekend - Family Barbecue (C0190).....	709
Global View - Daylight Savings Time (C0191).....	712
Global View - Natural Disasters (C0192).....	715
Daily Life - Building Your Dream Home (C0193).....	718
Daily Life - Going To The Tailor (C0196) .....	736
Global View - Learning About First Aid (C0199) .....	747
Daily Life - At The Post Office (C0201) .....	753
The Weekend - Asking For Directions (C0202).....	756
Daily Life - Calling Tech Support (C0203) .....	759
Global View - Understanding a Trial (C0204).....	763



The Office - Closing The Deal (C0205).....	768
Daily Life - Talking To Your Roomate (C0206) .....	774
Daily Life - Shopping Online (C0207) .....	777
Global View - Understanding The Stock Market (C0208).....	781
Daily Life - Meeting the In-laws (C0210) .....	787
The Weekend - Playing Board Games (C0211) .....	790
Global View - Last Will And Testament (C0212).....	792
Daily Life - Funeral Arrangements (C0213).....	796
Daily Life - Describing Personalities (C0214) .....	799
Global View - Carbon Footprint (C0222) .....	824
The Weekend - Planning A Crime (C0225) .....	837
Daily Life - Wedding Planning (C0227) .....	847
The Weekend - Going to the Beach (C0228).....	852
Daily Life - Buying Men's Shoes (C0229).....	856
Daily Life - Buying Women's Shoes (C0231).....	863
Daily Life - Going to the Doctor (C0234).....	874
The Office - Interview Skills Part 1 - The Introduc- tion (C0235) .....	878
Daily Life - Trying To Sleep (C0236).....	882
Daily Life - Morning Routine (C0237).....	885
The Office - Interview Skills Part 2 - Discussing YourBackground (C0238) .....	889
The Weekend - Adventure Sports (C0239) .....	892
The Office - Interview Skills 3 - Education Back-ground (C0241) .....	899
Global View - Learning The Piano (C0242) .....	903
The Weekend - Talking to a Travel Agent (C0243) .....	907
The Office - Interview Skills 4 - Talking About WorkExperience (C0244) .....	911
The Weekend - Getting A Subscription (C0245).....	914
Daily Life - At The Train Station (C0246).....	917
The Office - Interview Skills 5 - Discussing ReasonsFor Leaving Previous Position (C0247)....	920
The Weekend - Making A Sandwich (C0249) .....	926
The Office - Interview Skills 6 - Describing OnesStrengths (C0250) .....	929
The Weekend - Buying Makeup (C0251).....	932
Global View - Contraceptives (C0252) .....	935
The Office - Interview Skills 7 - Describing OnesWeaknesses (C0253).....	938
The Weekend - Making Breakfast (C0254).....	941



Global View - The Miracle Of Life (C0255) .....	944
The Office - Interview Skills 8 - Discussing Salaryand Benefits (C0256).....	949
Global View - The World Cup (C0257).....	952
Daily Life - You're Grounded! (C0258) .....	956
The Office - Interview Skills 9 - Asking For Informa-tion About The Position (C0259) .....	958
Daily Life - Describing Someone's Face (C0261) .....	964
The Office - Interview Skills 10 - Concluding The In- terview (C0262) .....	966
Global View - Nationalities (C0263).....	969
Daily Life - Weather Report (C0266).....	978
Daily Life - Making A Bank Transfer (C0267) .....	981
The Office - Purchasing Manager (C0268) .....	984
The Office - Marketing Plan (C0269).....	987
The Office - Presentation Series 1 - The Overviewand the Agenda (C0271) .....	995
Daily Life - Getting A Nanny (C0272).....	999
The Weekend - The Zodiac and Horoscopes (C0273) .....	1002
The Office - Presentation Series 2 - Talking aboutnumbers, charts and graphs (C0274)....	1006
Daily Life - Kitchen Appliances (C0275) .....	1010
Daily Life - Telephone Services (C0276) .....	1013
The Office - Presentation Series 3 - Making Com-parisons (C0277) .....	1016
Global View - At The Car Dealership (C0278) .....	1020
The Office - Presentation Series 4 - Discussing theCompetition (C0280).....	1026
The Office - Presentation Series 5 - Deferring Ques-tions (C0283) .....	1037
The Office - Presentation Series 6 - Addressing theAudience (C0286) .....	1048
Daily Life - High School Reunion (C0287) .....	1051
The Weekend - Getting A Tattoo (C0288).....	1054
The Office - Presentation Series 7 - Handling Tech-nical Problems (C0289).....	1057
The Weekend - Buying Jewelery (C0290).....	1060
Daily Life - Ordering Chinese Food (C0291) .....	1065
The Office - Presentation Series 8 - Common Pre-sentation Mistakes (C0292).....	1068
Advanced Media - Cheese Lovers (F0293) .....	1072
Daily Life - Picking A University (C0294) .....	1076
The Office - Presentation Series 9 - Summary andConclusion (C0295) .....	1079
Global View - Vegan Or Vegetarian? (C0296).....	1082
The Weekend - Ordering At An Italian Restaurant.....	1085



The Office - Presentation Series 10 - The Q and A Session (C0298).....	1087
Daily Life - Returning A Product (C0299).....	1091
The Weekend - Pick Up Lines (C0306).....	1111
The Office - Small Talk Series - Showing Interest .....	1114
Daily Life - Boxers and Briefs (C0308) .....	1116
The Office - Sorry I'm Late (C0311) .....	1125
The Weekend - Ordering Drinks (C0312).....	1128
Daily Life - Making A Collect Call (C0314) .....	1134
The Office - Sending A Quote Via Email (C0315).....	1137
Daily Life - Small Talk Series 4 - Discussing Recent Work Events (C0316).....	1141
The Office - First Paycheck (C0317).....	1144
Daily Life - Small Talk 5 - Brief Talk With A Stranger.....	1152
Global View - Taking The GMAT (C0320) .....	1154
The Office - Small Talk 6 - Talking About Yourself.....	1161
Daily Life - Cancelled Flight (C0323) .....	1164
Global View - Thanksgiving Dinner (C0324) .....	1167
The Office - Small Talk 7 - Talking About A Trip (C0325) .....	1170
Daily Life - Buying A Pair Of Jeans (C0327) .....	1176
The Office - Small Talk 8 - Talking About Work (C0328).....	1178
Daily Life - Going To The Bakery (C0329) .....	1181
The Weekend - Fortune Telling (C0330) .....	1184
The Office - Small Talk 9 - Talking About The Weather.....	1187
Daily Life - Setting Up Your Voice mail Message .....	1190
Global View - Human Anatomy (C0333).....	1193
The Office - Small Talk 10 - General Talk (C0334).....	1197
The Weekend - Going To The Playground (C0335).....	1200
Daily Life - Christmas Traditions (C0336) .....	1203
Global View - The Night Before Christmas (C0337) .....	1206
Daily Life - Having Leftovers (C0338).....	1215
Global View - Parent Teacher Conference (C0339) .....	1218
Global View - Happy New Year! (C0340) .....	1221
Global View - At The Library (C0342).....	1226
Daily Life - Seafood Dinner (C0343) .....	1230
Global View - Booking A Hotel Room (C0344) .....	1234



Global View - All About Wines (C0346) .....	1241
Global View - Immigration and Customs (C0347) .....	1246
The Weekend - Talking About Skincare (C0348).....	1250
Global View - Chinese Medicine (C0349) .....	1253
Daily Life - Talking About Relatives (C0350).....	1258
Global View - The 7 Wonders Of The World (C0352) .....	1264
Global View - Homeschooling (C0354) .....	1272
Daily Life - Coins and Money (C0356).....	1278
Daily Life - Making A Dinner Reservation (C0357) .....	1281
Global View - Urban Legends (C0360).....	1290
Daily Life - What Mood Are You In? (C0362).....	1296
Daily Life - Living With Your Parents (C0363) .....	1299
Daily Life - Household Chores (C0365) .....	1305

## Elementary - Difficult Customer (B0001)

A: Good evening. My name is Fabio, I'll be your waiter for tonight. May I take your order?

B: No, I'm still working on it. This menu is not even in English. What's good here?

A: For you sir, I would recommend spaghetti and meatballs.

B: Does it come with coke and fries?

A: It comes with either soup or salad and a complimentary glass of wine, Sir.

B: I'll go with the spaghetti and meatballs, salad and the wine.

A: Excellent choice, your order will be ready soon.

B: How soon is soon?

A: Twenty minutes?

B: You know what? I'll just go grab a burger across the street.

### Key Vocabulary

still working on	<i>Phrase</i>	not yet completed, need more time
would recommend	<i>Verb</i>	suggest
complimentary	<i>Adjective</i>	free
go with	<i>Phrase</i>	to choose, pick
grab	<i>Verb</i>	get quickly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

waitress	<i>Noun</i>	female server at a restaurant or bar
----------	-------------	--------------------------------------

fast food	<i>Phrase</i>	food prepared and served quickly
impatient	<i>Adjective</i>	uncomfortable waiting, wanting to go
fancy	<i>Adjective</i>	nice, expensive, upscale
casual	<i>Adjective</i>	relaxed, not dressy

## Elementary - Calling In Sick (B0002)

A: Hello, Daniel speaking, how may I help you?

B: Hi Daniel, Julie here.

A: Hi Julie, how are you?

B: Actually I'm feeling quite ill today.

A: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. What's wrong?

B: I think I'm coming down with the flu. I have a headache, a sore throat, a runny nose and I'm feeling slightly feverish.

A: I see..... so you're calling in sick?

B: Yes. I was hoping to take the day off to recover.

A: Ok then. Try and get some rest.

### Key Vocabulary

how may I help you?	<i>Phrase</i>	Polite order to help
quite ill	<i>Phrase</i>	very sick
coming down	<i>Phrase</i>	getting, acquiring
calling in sick	<i>Phrase</i>	report that you will not go to work because you are sick
was hoping	<i>Phrase</i>	to kindly expect

### Supplementary Vocabulary

symptom	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a sign, indication
permission	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	allow
impolite	<i>Adjective</i>	unfriendly



Learn English on Your Terms

sick day

*Phrase*

day off because you're sick

make it into work

*Phrase*

will not go to work

## Elementary - Hotel Upgrade (B0003)

A: Good afternoon. What can I do for you?

B: I'd like to check in please. I have a reservation under the name Anthony Roberts.

A: All right R.O.B.E.R.T.S. . . Oh Mr. Roberts we've been expecting you. . . and here is your key card to the presidential suite.

B: But there must be some mistake; my reservation was for a standard room.

A: Are you sure? Let me double check.

B: Yeah. . . Here, this is my confirmation number.

A: You're right Mr. Roberts, there seems to be a mix up, unfortunately we're over booked at the moment.

B: So...

A: Not to worry. We're pleased to offer you a complimentary upgrade.

B: Presidential suite baby!...

### Key Vocabulary

check in	<i>Verb, In-finitive</i>	register at a hotel or airport
under the name	<i>Phrase</i>	name used for the reservation
reservation	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	booking
confirmation	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	an approval, verification
mix-up	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	confusion

complimentary upgrade	<i>Phrase</i>	free improvement of quality
overbooked	<i>Adjective</i>	full

### Supplementary Vocabulary

check out	<i>Verb</i>	pay and leave a hotel
booking	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	reservation
concierge	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	hotel employee that helps guests
deluxe room	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	hotel room, better than standard
receipt	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	paper showing payment details

## Elementary - I need an assistant! (B0004)

A: ...like I told you before, we just don't have the resources to hire you an assistant.

B: I understand that, but the fact is we're understaffed.

A: The timing is just not right. The economy is bad, and it's too risky to take on new staff.

B: Yeah, I guess you're right.... here's an idea, what if we hire an intern? She would take some of the weight off my shoulders.

A: She?

B: Yeah, you know, a recent graduate. She could give me a hand with some of these projects and we could keep our costs down.

A: That sounds reasonable... let me see what I can do.

A: Tony, I'd like to introduce you to your new assistant.

B: OK, great! Let's meet her!

C: Hi, I'm Adam.

B: Oh... hi... I'm Tony...

### Key Vocabulary

resources	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	money
understaffed	<i>Adjective</i>	not enough people to do the job
the timing is just not right	<i>Phrase</i>	it is not a good time now

weight off my shoulders	<i>Phrase</i>	remove pressure or stress
give me a hand	<i>Phrase</i>	help
that sounds reasonable	<i>Phrase</i>	is OK

### Supplementary Vocabulary

recruit	<i>Verb, In-finitive</i>	hire
overworked	<i>Adjective</i>	working too much
short staffed	<i>Adjective</i>	not enough people to do the job
cut costs	<i>Phrase</i>	reduce spending
overstaffed	<i>Adjective</i>	having too many employees

## Elementary - Cut In Line (B0005)

A: I can't believe it took us two hours to get here. The traffic in New York is unbelievable.

B: Yeah, but just relax honey, we're here and we're going on vacation. In a few hours we'll be in Hawaii and you'll be on the golf course.

A: Oh no! Look at that line! It must be a mile long! There's no way I'm waiting for another two hours.

B: Honey..... don't

C: Hey man...the end of the line is over there....

A: yeah...

C: No seriously, I was here first, and you can't cut in line like this

A: Says who?

C: I do

A: So sue me

C: Alright...that's it....

### Key Vocabulary

unbelievable	<i>Adjective</i>	incredible, amazing
relax	<i>Verb, Imperative</i>	calm down
be a mile long	<i>Phrase</i>	very long
there's no way	<i>Phrase</i>	its impossible
cut in line	<i>Phrase</i>	move in front of someone waiting in line

### Supplementary Vocabulary

traffic jam	<i>Phrase</i>	many cars
a few hours from now	<i>Phrase</i>	in a couple of hours
form a queue	<i>Phrase</i>	to get in line
jump the queue	<i>Phrase</i>	cut in line ( Br E )
stand in line	<i>Phrase</i>	wait in line
line up	<i>Phrase</i>	form a line

## Elementary - Road Trip (B0006)

A: So are we all ready to go?

B: Yup, I think so. The car's packed, we have munchies and music, and the map's in the car.

A: Did you get the camera?

B: Got it! Did you fill up the tank?

A: Yup, it's all set.

B: You're sure we're not forgetting anything?

A: I'm sure... we've got all our bases covered.

B: Well... let's get going then! I love road trips!

B: Umm...do you think we can make a pit stop?

A: But we've only been on the road for ten minutes.

B: I know, but I forgot to go to the bathroom before we left.

### Key Vocabulary

all ready to go	<i>Phrase</i>	prepared, ready to leave
packed	<i>Adjective</i>	full, everything is inside
munchies	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	snacks, food
fill up the tank	<i>Phrase</i>	put gas in the car
all set	<i>Phrase</i>	ready
got all the bases covered	<i>Phrase</i>	have everything ready
get going	<i>Phrase</i>	start, leave, depart

road trip

*Phrase*

long car trip

pit stop

*Phrase*

quick stop for food or  
gas

## Supplementary Vocabulary

trunk

*Noun (singular)*

the luggage area of a car

passenger

*Noun (singular)*

person in a car, not the  
driver

freeway

*Noun (singular)*

highway

rental car

*Phrase*

a car you rent, a car you  
pay to borrow

highway toll

*Phrase*

fee paid for using the  
highway

## Elementary - Virus! (B0007)

A: Oh great! This stupid computer froze again! That's the third time today! Hey Samuel can you come take a look at my PC? It's acting up again. It must have a virus or something.

B: Just give me a second, I'll be right up.

B: I ran a virus scan on your computer and it turns out that you have a lot of infected files!

A: But I'm quite careful when I'm browsing the internet, I have no idea how I could have picked up a virus.

B: Well, you have to make sure that your anti-virus software is updated regularly; yours wasn't up to date, that's probably what was causing your problems.

A: Ok. Anything else?

B: Yeah, try not to kick or hit the computer!

A: Um yeah... Sorry about that.

### Key Vocabulary

freeze	<i>Verb, Past Simple</i>	to stop working properly
take a look	<i>Phrase</i>	see, revise
act up	<i>Verb, Present Progressive</i>	not working properly
be right up	<i>Phrase</i>	go upstairs soon
pick up	<i>Verb, Present Perfect</i>	get, acquire
browse	<i>Verb, Present Progressive</i>	look, search
up to date	<i>Phrase</i>	having all the most recent information

## Supplementary Vocabulary

monitor	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	computer screen
computer tech	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	person in a company who fixes computers
corrupt file	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	damaged or broken computer file that can't be opened
surf the net	<i>Phrase</i>	look for information on the internet
web browser	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	computer program that allows you to go on the internet

## Elementary - What's your name again? (B0008)

A: Nick! How's it going?

B: Oh, hey...

A: What are you doing in this neighborhood? Do you live around here?

B: Actually, my office is right around the corner.

A: It was great to meet you last week at the conference. I really enjoyed our conversation about foreign investment.

B: Yeah, yeah, it was really interesting. You know, I'm in a bit of a hurry, but here's my card. We should definitely meet up again and continue our discussion.

A: Sure, you still have my contact details, right?

B: You know what, this is really embarrassing, but your name has just slipped my mind. Can you remind me?

A: Sure, my name is Ana Ferris. Don't worry about it; it happens to me all the time. I'm terrible with names too.

### Key Vocabulary

how's it going	<i>Phrase</i>	how are you
around here	<i>Phrase</i>	close to here
around the corner	<i>Phrase</i>	on the next street
in bit of a hurry	<i>Phrase</i>	moving quickly, having no time
contact details	<i>Phrase</i>	information required to contact someone, i.e. telephone number, email address
slip my mind	<i>Phrase</i>	been forgotten

terrible with

*Phrase*

bad at

### Supplementary Vocabulary

around there

*Phrase*

close to there

to recognize

*Verb, Imperative*

to know and remember  
someone or something  
you have seen before

acquaintance

*Noun (singular)*

someone you know, but  
who is not a close friend

in a rush

*Phrase*

move quickly, not have  
much time

forgetful

*Adjective*

forgetting things easily

## Elementary - Silence Please! (B0009)

A: Those people in front of us are making so much noise. It's so inconsiderate!

B: Don't worry about it; it's not such a big deal.

A: Oh... I can't hear a thing! Excuse me, can you keep it down?

C: Sure, sorry bout that!

A: Someone's phone is ringing!

B: Honey, I think it's your phone. Did you forget to switch it off?

A: Oh, no! You're right. That's so embarrassing!

C: Do you mind keeping it down? I'm trying to watch a movie here!

### Key Vocabulary

inconsiderate	<i>Adjective</i>	not thinking of the feelings of other people; not thoughtful
not such a big deal	<i>Phrase</i>	not a big problem
can't hear a thing	<i>Phrase</i>	unable to hear
keep it down	<i>Phrase</i>	be quiet
switch off	<i>Phrase</i>	turn off
do you mind	<i>Phrase</i>	could you please

### Supplementary Vocabulary

noisy	<i>Adjective</i>	very loud
rude	<i>Adjective</i>	impolite
to disturb	<i>Verb, In-infinitive</i>	to interrupt, bother, or upset

to interrupt                    *Verb, In-finitive*                    to speak or make noise when someone else is speaking

to whisper                    *Verb, In-finitive*                    to speak very softly

## The Office - Driving Sales (C0010)

A: All right, people. We're holding this meeting today because we've got to do something about our sales, and we need to do it NOW! I want concrete solutions. How do you intend to drive sales... Roger?

B: Well, in fact, we're the most expensive in the market, so maybe we need to lower our prices to match the competitors?

A: Lower our prices? Not very creative. It'll never fly with Swan. What kind of thinking is that? Geez. Anybody else have a better plan? Natalie?

C: Um, perhaps, um, a sales promotion. Maybe a two-for-one offer, or something like that!

A: What? That's the same thing. Bad idea. Really bad idea. Dammit people come on! Think! The CEO will be here any minute.

D: Do we have any ideas yet?

C: Yes Mr. Swan, we were kind of considering a two-for-one offer to get more competitive.

D: A two-for-one promotion? Hmm. I kind of like the sound of that. It sounds like something we should consider.

A: Yeah, exactly. Just what I was thinking! In fact, that's a brilliant idea! I'm glad we thought of that. Very creative.

### Key Vocabulary

concrete solutions      *phrase*      a real or specific solution to a problem

drive sales      *Preposition*      increase sales

in the market      *phrase*      in the industry

to match the competitors	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	be the as good as or better than others companies in the same industry
will never fly	<i>phrase</i>	will not work, will not be approved
promotion	<i>phrase</i>	something done to make people aware of a product
be here any minute	<i>phrase</i>	will arrive very soon
to consider	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	thinking about
brilliant	<i>Adjective</i>	excellent

### Supplementary Vocabulary

competitive	<i>Adjective</i>	as good as or better than others of the same type
win sales	<i>phrase</i>	make sales successfully

<b>sales strategy</b>	<i>phrase</i>	plans for a company's sales activities
<b>sales cycle</b>	<i>phrase</i>	the process a customer goes through when deciding to buy a product
<b>to outsell</b>	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	to sell more than others
<b>customer loyalty</b>	<i>phrase</i>	when a customer buys the same brand over and over

## Daily Life - New Guy in Town (C0011)

A: Oh, I don't know if you heard, but someone moved into that old house down the road.

B: Yeah, I know. I met the owner of the house yesterday as he was moving in. His name is Armand.

A: Really? What's he like? You have to fill me in.

B: Actually, he's a bit strange. I don't know... I've got a bad feeling about him.

A: Really? Why?

B: Well, yesterday I brought over a housewarming gift, but Armand started acting really weird, and then he practically kicked me out! I tried to, sort of, peek into his house, but everything was so dark inside that I couldn't really get a good look.

A: Well, you'll never guess what I saw this morning. A delivery truck pulled into his driveway, and it dropped off a long, rectangular box. It almost looked like a coffin!

B: You see! Why would he...

C: Hello ladies...

B: Ah, Armand! You scared the heck out of me! This is my friend Doris.

C: A pleasure to meet you...If you are not doing anything tonight, I would like to have you both for dinner. I mean...I would like to have you both over for dinner.

### Key Vocabulary

I don't know if  
you heard

*phrase*

phrase used to introduce a piece of information

fill me in	<i>phrase</i>	tell me about it
a bad feeling	<i>phrase</i>	a sense or feeling that something bad is going to happen
weird	<i>Adjective</i>	strange, unusual
kick out	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	make or force someone leave when they don't want to
creep me out	<i>phrase</i>	make me feel uncomfortable and a bit scared
you'll never guess	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to introduce a piece of news
scare the heck out of me	<i>phrase</i>	cause someone to feel a lot of fear

### Supplementary Vocabulary

bizarre	<i>Adjective</i>	strange or unusual
creepy	<i>Adjective</i>	strange or scary, causing people to feel nervous and afraid

vampire	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a dead person who drinks the blood of living people
have you heard	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to introduce a piece of gossip
guess what	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to introduce an interesting or surprising piece of information

## Daily Life - Cleaning the House (C0012)

A: Honey, the house is such a mess! I need you to help me tidy up a bit. My boss and her husband are coming over for dinner and the house needs to be spotless!

B: I'm in the middle of something right now. I'll be there in a second.

A: This can't wait! I need your help now!

B: Alright, alright. I'm coming.

A: Ok, here's a list of chores we need to get done. I'll do the dishes and get all the groceries for tonight. You can sweep and mop the floors. Oh, and the furniture needs to be dusted.

B: You know what, I have to pick something up at the mall, so why don't you clean the floors and I'll go to the supermarket and get all the groceries.

A: Sure that's fine. Here is the list of all the things you need to get. Don't forget anything! And can you pick up a bottle of wine on your way home?

B: Hey, honey I'm back. Wow, the house looks really good!

A: Great! Can you set the table?

B: Just a sec I'm just gonna vacuum this rug real fast

A: Wait! Don't turn it on...

### Key Vocabulary

such a mess                    *phrase*                    very dirty, disordered

tidy up	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	put things in place, organize
spotless	<i>Adjective</i>	perfectly clean
in the middle of something	<i>phrase</i>	busy doing something at the moment
chores	<i>common noun, plural</i>	common house tasks
groceries	<i>common noun, plural</i>	food that you buy at a store

### Supplementary Vocabulary

	<i>phrase</i>	careful, thorough house cleaning usually done in the spring/ spring cleaning
immaculate	<i>Adjective</i>	perfectly clean, having no dirt at all
do the laundry	<i>phrase</i>	wash the dirty clothes

dish detergent      *phrase*      soap used to wash the plates, knives, forks, bowls, etc.

trash      *common noun, non-variable*      garbage (AmE)

rubbish      *common noun, non-variable*      garbage (BrE)

## The Office - Out Of Control Spending (C0013)

A: OK, so now the last point on our agenda. Jill, let's go over the profit and loss statement.

B: Great. Well, the main issue here, as you can see, is that our expenses are through the roof.

A: Let's see... These numbers are off the charts! What's going on here!

B: Well, um, sir, the company expenditures on entertainment and travel are out of control. Look at these bills for example. Just this month we've paid over twenty thousand dollars for hotel charges!

A: OK, thank you. I'll look into it.

B: The list goes on and on. Here, this is a bill for five thousand dollars for spa treatments!

A: Thank you; that will be all. I'll take care of it.

B: Look at this one sir, eight thousand dollars were spent in one night at a place called "Wild Things"!?

A: OK, I get it!! Thank you for your very thorough analysis!

### Key Vocabulary

go over	<i>phrase</i>	revise, check
through the roof	<i>phrase</i>	suddenly very high
off the charts	<i>phrase</i>	very high
expenditures	<i>common noun, plural</i>	amount of money spent on something
out of control	<i>phrase</i>	not in control

look into	<i>principle verb, Will Future</i>	investigate, try to get information about something
go on and on	<i>phrase</i>	continues
take care of	<i>principle verb, Will Future</i>	do something about

### Supplementary Vocabulary

revenue	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	amount of money paid to a business
cash flow	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the movement of money into and out of a business
the bottom line	<i>phrase</i>	the net profit; the amount of money a business makes after expenses
finances	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the amount of money you have and how well it is organized



Learn English on your Terms

income	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the amount of money a person or a company makes
assets	<i>common noun, plural</i>	things of value that are owned by a company

## Elementary - I'm in Debt (B0014)

A: Hello, I'm here to see Mr. Corleone.

B: Right this way, sir.

C: Charlie! What can I do for you?

B: Mr. Corlone, I'm really sorry to trouble you, but I need your help.

C: Anything for you, Charlie! Your father was like a brother to me.

B: Well, sir, you see, this recession has hit me pretty hard; I lost my job and I'm in a lot of debt.

C: I see.....

B: Yeah, you know, I've got credit card bills, car payments, I've got to pay my mortgage; and on top of all that, I have to pay my son's college tuition.

C: So you're asking for a loan.

B: Well, I just thought maybe you could help me out.

C: What? At a time like this? I'm broke too, you know! You're not the only one who has been hit by the recession! I lost half my money in the stock market crash! Go on! Get outa here!

## Key Vocabulary

trouble	<i>Verb, Present Simple</i>	disturb or bother
recession	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a period of time when the economy of a country is bad
hit me pretty hard	<i>Phrase</i>	had a strong, negative effect on me

debt	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	the amount of money you owe to a person, bank, company, etc.
on top of all that	<i>Phrase</i>	besides that, in addition to
broke	<i>Adjective</i>	not have any money

### Supplementary Vocabulary

borrow	<i>Verb, Present Simple</i>	take and use some money, and return the equal amount of money at a later time
pay back	<i>Phrase</i>	return the money you borrowed
a loan	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	amount of money borrowed
take out a loan	<i>Phrase</i>	borrow money
unemployed	<i>Adjective</i>	having no job
downturn	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a time when the economy is worse than usual

## Daily Life - I'm sorry, I love you (C0015)

A: Whoa, whoa, what's going on? Watch out!

B: Hey, watch where you're going!

A: Oh, no! I'm so sorry! Are you all right?

B: Oh...I don't know.

A: I feel terrible, I really didn't mean to knock you over. My tire, just exploded, and I lost control of my bike. Really, it was an accident. Please accept my apologies.

B: Just let me try to stand up.

SONG: Why do birds suddenly appear, every time you are near?

A: Are you okay?

B: Oh, wait a second, you seem really familiar, I think I know you from somewhere.

A: Yeah, I think we have met somewhere before. That's right! We met at Aaron's place last weekend! What a coincidence! But anyway, I'm glad to see that you're not too badly hurt, and I should probably get going. I have a nine o'clock meeting.

B: Ouch! My ankle! I think it's broken! You can't just leave me like this! Are you calling an ambulance?

A: Nope, I'm canceling my appointment so that I can stay here with you.

SONG: Do you remember when we met? That's the day I knew you were my pet. I wanna tell you how much I love you.

### Key Vocabulary

feel terrible	<i>phrase</i>	sorry
mean	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	intend, plan
explode	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	suddenly break apart
accident	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an event that is not planned or intended
familiar	<i>Adjective</i>	probably known, but not clearly remembered
place	<i>common noun, singular</i>	house

coincidence	<i>common noun, singular</i>	situation when two or more things happen at the same time in an unplanned way
knock over	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	make something fall over

### Supplementary Vocabulary

regret	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	feel sad or sorry about something
apologetic	<i>Adjective</i>	feeling or showing regret, showing an apology
feel guilty	<i>phrase</i>	feel responsible for doing something bad
unfamiliar	<i>Adjective</i>	not familiar
love at first sight	<i>phrase</i>	falling in love the first time you see someone

## Elementary - Turn left here! (B0016)

A: Hurry up, get in.

B: I'm in, let's go!

A: OK, make a left here. . . no wait, I meant make a right. Come on, speed up!

B: Geez! What's the rush?

A: Don't worry about it, just drive. Oh, no, the light is about to change. . . step on it!

B: Are you nuts! I'm not going to run a red light!

A: Whatever. Just turn right here. . . . The freeway will be packed at this hour. . . . let's take a side street. Go on! Get out of our way! Move, move!

B: What's your problem! Geez. Having a fit is not going to help!

A: Here, I know a short cut....just go down here, and we'll cut though Ashburn Heights. Let's go, let's go! Watch out for that lady!

B: I'm going as fast as I can!

A: Yes! We made it. 5:58, just before the library closes.

B: You're such a geek!

### Key Vocabulary

hurry up	<i>Phrase</i>	move faster
make a left	<i>Phrase</i>	turn left
step on it	<i>Phrase</i>	drive a lot faster
nuts	<i>Adjective</i>	crazy

speed up	<i>Verb</i>	go faster
have a fit	<i>Phrase</i>	get very angry
cut though	<i>Phrase</i>	quickly go past or through something that blocks you
step on it	<i>Phrase</i>	drive a lot faster
packed	<i>Verb</i>	full, having lots of cars

### Supplementary Vocabulary

road rage	<i>Phrase</i>	be very angry at other drivers while driving
back street	<i>Phrase</i>	small street that is away from the main streets
u-turn	<i>Phrase</i>	a 180 degree turn in the car
to back up	<i>Verb, In- finitive</i>	to move backwards, the opposite of go forwards
to pass	<i>Verb, In- finitive</i>	to drive past another car on the road to pass a car on the road



Learn English on Your Terms

to park

*Verb, In-  
finitive*

to stop the car and turn  
off the engine

## Elementary - Here Comes the Bride (B0017)

A: I can't believe that Anthony is finally getting married!

B: Yeah well it's about time! He's been living with his parents for 40 years!

A: Don't be mean. Look here come the bridesmaids! Their dresses look beautiful!

B: Who are those kids walking down the aisle?

A: That's the flower girl and the ring bearer. I'm pretty sure they're the groom's niece and nephew. Oh, they look so cute!

B: I just hope the priest makes it quick. I'm starving. I hope the food's good at the reception.

A: That's all you ever think about, food! Oh, I think the bride's coming now! She looks gorgeous. Wait, what's she doing? Where's she going?

B: Oh great! Does this mean that the reception is canceled?

### Key Vocabulary

married	<i>Adjective</i>	joined in marriage
it's about time	<i>Phrase</i>	finally
bridesmaid	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	female friends or relatives who helps the bride at a wedding
aisle	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a passage between sections of seats
flower girl	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a girl at a wedding that throws flower petals down the aisle
ring bearer	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a boy at a wedding that holds the wedding rings

reception	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	party held to celebrate something or to welcome people
groom	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a man who is about to be married
bride	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	female who is about to get married
gorgeous	<i>Adjective</i>	very beautiful or attractive

## Supplementary Vocabulary

goomsman	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	male friend or relative who helps the groom on the wedding day
maid of honor	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	female friend or relative who acts as a witness at the wedding
best man	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	male friend or relative who acts as a witness at the wedding
ushers	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	men who help guest find their seats



Learn English on Your Terms

*Noun (plural)*

promises that the bride and groom make to each other during the wedding ceremony

## Upper-Intermediate - Protest! (D0018)

A: This is Action 5 News reporter Sarah O'Connell reporting live from Washington, D. C. where a protest has broken out. Thousands of angry citizens are protesting against the proposed bailout of the auto manufacturing industry! Sir, sir, Sarah O'Connell, Action 5 news. Can you tell us what's happening?

B: Yeah, yeah, we're here because we feel this is an injustice! The financial irresponsibility of big business has to stop! We're there to show the government that we don't like the way that they're spending our tax dollars!

A: Sir but what exactly is making everyone so angry?

B: It's an absolute outrage, Sarah, the US government wants to give 25 billion dollars of taxpayers' money to the auto industry. These are companies that have been mismanaged and are now nearly bankrupt.

A: I see. But, many supporters of the bailout argue that it could help save the jobs of millions of hard-working Americans.

B: That maybe true, and I for one don't want to see anyone lose their job, but how can these CEOs ask for a bailout when they're making millions of dollars? And then, they have the nerve to fly to Washington in private jets! This costs hundreds of thousands of dollars! And they're asking for money! That is just not right!

A: Good point. This is Sarah O'Connell reporting live from Washington D. C., back to you, Tom.

## Key Vocabulary

protest	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	an event where people gather together to show disapproval of something
break out	<i>Verb, Present Perfect</i>	start suddenly

bailout	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	the act of saving a company from money problems
injustice	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	an unfair situation
outrage	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	something that is morally wrong
mismanage	<i>Verb, Present Perfect</i>	manage badly
have the nerve	<i>Phrase</i>	dare to

### Supplementary Vocabulary

	<i>Pronoun</i>	
placard	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	sign people hold at protests, usually a piece of cardboard on a stick
rally	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	public meeting in support or opposition of something

demonstration	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	event where people gather together to show that they support or oppose something
demonstrators	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	people who go to a demonstration or protest
opponent	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a person who opposes something or someone
proponent	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	person who supports someone or something

## The Weekend - Christmas Chronicles I (C0019)

A: I hate working on Christmas Eve! Whoa! Get a load of this guy! Come in central, I think we've got ourselves a situation here.

B: License and registration please. Have you been drinking tonight, sir?

A: I had one or two glasses of eggnog, but nothing else.

B: Step out of the vehicle, please. Sir, what do you have in the back?

A: Just a few Christmas gifts, 'tis the season, after all!

B: Don't take that tone with me. Do you have an invoice for these items?

A: Umm...no...I make these in my workshop in the North Pole!

B: You are under arrest, sir. You have the right to remain silent. You better not pout, you better not cry. Anything you say can and will be used against you. You have the right to an attorney; if you cannot afford one, the state will appoint

E dell  
2011-10-13 13:31:18

one for you. Do you understand?

A: You can't take me to jail! What about my sleigh? It's Christmas Eve! I have presents to deliver! Rudolph! Prancer! Dancer! Get help!

## Key Vocabulary

get a load of      *phrase*      look at (informal)

license      *common noun, singular*      official document that shows you have permission to drive a car

eggnog      *common noun, non-variable*      traditional Christmas drink containing eggs, cream, sugar and rum

vehicle	<i>common noun, singular</i>	machine used to carry people, i.e. a car or truck
step out	<i>principle verb, imperative</i>	briefly go out of a place
take that tone	<i>phrase</i>	speak in that tone of voice
invoice	<i>common noun, singular</i>	official document that shows you have paid for something you bought
arrest	<i>phrase</i>	the act of legally taking someone to jail
pout	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	push out your lips to show that you are unhappy
sleigh	<i>common noun, singular</i>	large, open vehicle that is pulled by horses over snow or ice

## Supplementary Vocabulary

handcuffs	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a set of two metal rings that are used to join a persons hands together, esp. by police
prison	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a building where criminals are kept as punishment
read someone's rights	<i>phrase</i>	tell someone their legal rights, usually when they are arrested
DUI	<i>phrase</i>	driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs
speeding ticket	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece of paper the police give if you are driving too fast

## Elementary - I Can See Clearly Now (B0020)

A: Hello, Arthur. What seems to be the problem?

B: Hey doc. Well, I think I might need glasses. I'm getting headaches, and I really struggle to see things that are far away. But I have always had 20/20 vision.

A: Sounds like you may be far-sighted. OK, then, cover your left eye and read the chart in front of you.

B: Mmm. . . X, E, R, 3, a question mark, and I can't quite make out the other symbol but I think it's the peace sign.

A: Wow, Arthur! You're as blind as a bat!

B: Yeah, I know, my vision is really blurry at times.

A: Ok then, head on over to the other room and pick out some frames while I fill out your prescription.

B: Thanks doc!

A: Arthur, that's the bathroom.

### Key Vocabulary

seem to be	<i>Phrase</i>	appears or is
struggle	<i>Verb</i>	try very hard
20/20 vision	<i>Phrase</i>	perfect eyesight
make out	<i>Verb</i>	see
far sighted	<i>Phrase</i>	see far-away things more clearly than things nearby
as blind as a bat	<i>Phrase</i>	have really poor vision
vision	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	ability to see things

blurry	<i>Adjective</i>	not clear
pick out	<i>Phrase</i>	choose
prescription	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a message written by a doctor that tells people what medicine to take

### Supplementary Vocabulary

check-up	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	regular examination by a doctor to make sure a person is healthy
short sighted	<i>Adjective</i>	unable to see things far away (AmE)
nearsighted	<i>Adjective</i>	unable to see things far away (BrE)
contacts	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	lenses you wear directly on your eyes to help you see
optometrist	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	eye doctor
prescribe	<i>Verb</i>	officially tell someone to use a medicine or treatment



Learn English on Your Terms

**lenses**

*Noun (plural)*

clear, curved piece of glass that helps people see better

## The Office - What Do You Do? (C0021)

A: Oh, look, there's Veronica and her boyfriend. She's always going on about him at the office. Oh, great, they saw us. They're coming this way.

B: Oh, man...

C: Jessica! Arthur! Hi! I'd like you to meet my boyfriend Greg, he's the V. P. of quality and safety for a top Fortune 500 food company.

A: Nice to meet you. This is my husband, Arthur.

B: Hey, how's it going?

D: Hello.

A: Veronica talks about you all the time. I guess you must be pretty busy at work.

D: Well, yeah, a V. P. position is not easy, you know! I implement policies and procedures nationwide. of various departments, as well as train junior managers in FDA and EPA regulations. I also have to oversee daily ope

B: Wow, yeah... that sounds exciting.

D: And what about you, Arthur? What do you do for a living?

B: Oh, I'm a Top Gun pilot!

### Key Vocabulary

go on about                    *phrase*                    talk about something a lot

Fortune 500                    *phrase*                    top 500 companies, rated by revenue

implement	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	begin to do something, put into action
responsible	<i>Adjective</i>	have the duty or job of taking care of some- thing
nationwide	<i>Adjective</i>	in the whole country
look after	<i>principle verb, infini- tive</i>	take care of
oversee	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	watch and direct to make sure a job is done correctly
quality control	<i>common noun, non- variable</i>	checking goods to make sure that they are good enough to sell
under me	<i>phrase</i>	working for me

### Supplementary Vocabulary

develop relationships	<i>phrase</i>	make good relation- ships
-----------------------	---------------	------------------------------

handle complaints	<i>phrase</i>	look after or take care of complaints
	<i>phrase</i>	/ write official documents
coordinate	<i>verb</i>	make arrangements or plans with a group of people
monitor	<i>verb</i>	watch and check
supervise	<i>verb</i>	be in charge of something , watch and direct
ensure	<i>verb</i>	make sure

## The Weekend - Christmas Chronicles II (C0022)

A: Really, gentlemen, you can't take me to jail! Don't you know who I am? Kris Kringle, you know, Papa Noel, Pere Noel, Babbo Natale, sheng dan lao ren!

B: Yeah, Yeah, we've heard that one before, haven't we Joe?

C: Yeah, last week we booked this guy who claimed to be the tooth fairy! Can you believe that?

A: It's Christmas Eve and I have all these presents to deliver! Where is your Christmas spirit? What will happen when all the children wake up tomorrow and don't find any gifts in their stockings?

B: Sorry buddy, you were parked in a no-parking zone, you were speeding, and you have no ID!

C: Besides that, even if we let you go now, your sleigh has been impounded and those reindeer were taken to the city zoo.

A: What! This is unbelievable! What's this world coming to? Christmas is ruined!

C: What's that up ahead? It looks like... elves!! Elves!! Whoa, they're shooting candy canes! Mayday, Mayday, we are under heavy attack! We need backup!

### Key Vocabulary

take someone to jail	<i>phrase</i>	take someone who is arrested to a place where other criminals are kept
-------------------------	---------------	--

book	<i>verb</i>	arrest (informal)
------	-------------	-------------------

claim	<i>verb</i>	say something is true when some people say it may not be true
-------	-------------	---

stocking	<i>common noun, singular</i>	large sock; traditionally, Christmas gifts are put inside on the Christmas Eve
speed	<i>verb</i>	drive faster than legal speed limit
impound	<i>verb</i>	held by the police
ruined	<i>Adjective</i>	damaged or destroyed
reindeer	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	large deer that lives in the north part of the globe
elf	<i>common noun, singular</i>	small creature (in stories) that have pointed ears and magic powers
candy cane	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a stick-shaped candy with red and white curves on the top
under heavy	<i>phrase</i>	being attacked or hurt
backup	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	help

## Supplementary Vocabulary

charge	<i>verb</i>	formally accuse someone of a crime
pull someone over	<i>phrase</i>	make a moving car move to the side of the road
ambush	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a sudden attack
stocking stuffer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	small gifts that are put in the Christmas stocking
Christmas ornament	<i>common noun, singular</i>	decoration that is used to make the Christmas tree beautiful

## Elementary - Making an Appointment (B0023)

A: Hello, Fairbrook Consulting, how may I help you?

B: Yes, this is Julianne Horton, and I'm calling to arrange an appointment with Ms. McNealy.

A: Certainly, what day were you thinking of?

B: How's Thursday? Does she have any time available then?

A: Um. . . let me double check. . . unfortunately, she's booked solid on Thursday, how does next Monday work for you?

B: Actually, I've got something scheduled on Monday. Can she do Tuesday?

A: Sure, Tuesday's perfect. May I ask where you're calling from?

B: Sure, Merton Financial Advisors.

A: Oh, actually, Tuesday's no good. Sorry 'bout that.

### Key Vocabulary

	<i>Verb</i>	to arrange
appointment	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	an agreement to meet someone at a particular time
available	<i>Adjective</i>	not busy, willing to talk to someone
double check	<i>Phrase</i>	check again
booked solid	<i>Phrase</i>	having no available place or time
work for you	<i>Phrase</i>	be okay with you
scheduled	<i>Verb</i>	planned at a specific time
no good	<i>Phrase</i>	not okay

## Supplementary Vocabulary

**fully booked** *Phrase* booked solid; having no space or time available

**fit you in** *Phrase* find time to see someone in a busy schedule

**unavailable** *Adjective* not available

**occupied** *Adjective* busy doing something

## Elementary - Where should we eat? (B0024)

A: Do you two have any plans for the evening?

B: We were thinking of checking out a restaurant in the neighbourhood. Do you have any suggestions?

A: I know this really nice Italian place. The food is fantastic, and the décor is beautiful. I'd recommend giving it a try.

C: Actually, I'm not all that crazy about Italian food; I'm in the mood for something a bit lighter.

A: In that case, I know a great little bistro. They make a really tasty seafood platter; the fish is outstanding.

B: It sounds fantastic, but I'm allergic to seafood, so . . .

A: Okay, well, let me think. . . Oh, I know this great little place. It's just a hole in the wall, but they do the most amazing sandwiches. You gotta give them a try.

C: Ella, you took me there last time I visited, and I got food poisoning, remember?

### Key Vocabulary

check out	<i>Phrase</i>	look at something that is attractive
fantastic	<i>Adjective</i>	extremely good
décor	<i>Noun (<i>singular</i>)</i>	decoration
in the mood for	<i>Phrase</i>	have a desire for something or to do something
light	<i>Adjective</i>	not heavy on stomach, easy to digest
bistro	<i>Noun (<i>singular</i>)</i>	small, trendy restaurant or bar

tasty	<i>Adjective</i>	delicious, tasting good
outstanding	<i>Adjective</i>	excellent
	<i>Adjective</i>	have allergy towards something (usually food)
a hole in the wall	<i>Phrase</i>	a very small, usually cheap restaurant or bar
food poisoning	<i>Phrase</i>	becoming sick because of bacteria in food

### Supplementary Vocabulary

yummy	<i>Adjective</i>	tasting good
crazy about	<i>Phrase</i>	like very much
not fond of	<i>Phrase</i>	don't like (polite)
enjoyable	<i>Adjective</i>	tasting good



yum

*Interjection*

expression you use  
when you're enjoying  
food or drink

## Upper-Intermediate - Planning For The Worst (D0025)

A: Well, right, let's move to our next order of business, as many of you are aware, in recent weeks there has been a lot of media coverage surrounding this bird flu issue. And it's come to my attention that our company lacks any sort of bird flu contingency plan.

B: Basically, we need to come up with a clear plan; we need to outline specific actions that our company can take to maintain critical business functions in case a pandemic strikes.

A: So, what I'd like to do is: first appoint someone to look after drafting our plan; Ralph, I'd like you to head up this project.

C: Sure, no problem. What issues do you want me to consider?

B: Well, let's see, there are a few points we need to be thinking about. . . first, I'll need you to analyze our numbers and figure out what kind of financial impact an outbreak might have.

A: You'll also need to think about how we can avoid any of our employees getting infected; think of ways to reduce employee-customer contact, perhaps some IT solutions that will allow our people to work from home.

C: I guess you'll need me to forecast employee absences as well, right? And I'll think about the impact this will have on our clients. Hey, what about vaccines? Should we be thinking about getting vaccines for our employees?

A: Exactly right. So, I'll leave this to you, and we'll review the draft plan in two weeks. Okay, so, anyone want to order some KFC for lunch?

### Key Vocabulary

order of business

*Phrase*

an issue that must be discussed

bird flu

*Noun (non-count)*

flu originated from birds that carry virus

contingency plan	<i>Phrase</i>	a plan that prepares for a situation where things can go wrong
critical	<i>Adjective</i>	extremely important
pandemic	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a situation where a disease is spread out very quickly, and affects many people in many countries
draft	<i>Verb</i>	make a first version of something
impact	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	major influence or effect on something
outbreak	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a sudden start of disease affecting many people
head up	<i>Verb</i>	lead and be responsible for
forecast	<i>Verb</i>	predict what is going to happen based on available information

vaccine	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	medical substance that protect people or animal against diseases
---------	----------------------	--

### Supplementary Vocabulary

epidemic	<i>Conjunction</i>	event where a disease spreads really quickly and affects a large number of people
backup plan	<i>Phrase</i>	a plan made in case events go badly
pandemic preparedness plan	<i>Phrase</i>	a plan to prepare for the possible outbreak of a pandemic
transmit disease	<i>Phrase</i>	pass disease from one individual to another
avian influenza	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	bird flu
influenza	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	flu; illness caused by a virus

## Elementary - New Year Resolution (B0026)

A: So, did I tell you about my New Year's resolution?  
I've decided to go on a diet.

B: And you're going to completely transform your eating habits, right?

A: Exactly! I'm going to cut out all that junk I eat; no more chips, no more soda, no more fried food.

B: I've heard this one before.

A: But this time I'm going to stick to it. I really mean it! Trust me, Carol, I'm going to be a new man in one year's time!

B: Well, I guess we'll just have to wait and see.

A: Thanks, honey, that was a great meal. I'm stuffed.  
Do we have any chips left?

## Key Vocabulary

diet	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	eating plan to help you lose weight
transform	<i>Verb</i>	change
cut out	<i>Verb</i>	remove, eliminate
eating habits	<i>Phrase</i>	usual ways of behaving
stick to	<i>Verb</i>	continue doing something
wait and see	<i>Phrase</i>	remain in a state in which you expect something to happen, and see if it does
stuffed	<i>Adjective</i>	filled with food; no longer hungry

## Supplementary Vocabulary

calorie	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	unit of energy in food
vegetarian	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	person who does not eat meat



Learn English on Your Terms

fast food	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	food that is prepared and served quickly (i.e. McDonald's, KFC, Burger King, etc.)
work out	<i>Verb</i>	exercise at a gym
lifestyle change	<i>Phrase</i>	change the way you live

## Elementary - Asking for Time Off (B0027)

A: Mr. McKenna, do you have a second? I need to talk to you about something.

B: Sure, Liv, what can I do for you?

A: Well, I was just wondering. . . you see, I know I've used up all my vacation days this year, but my sister is getting married, and the wedding is overseas, and, well. . .

B: You wanna take some time off, is that right?

A: Well, sir, I was just hoping that I might be able to take some unpaid leave this year.

B: What dates are you planning on taking off? I'll need at least two months notice, so that I can plan for your absence.

A: I was thinking of taking off from September first until the thirtieth . Would you be okay with that?

B: Well, I guess so.

### Key Vocabulary

have a second	<i>Phrase</i>	have some time, not busy
use up	<i>Verb</i>	take all of something
overseas	<i>Adjective</i>	in an other country, across the ocean
take some time off	<i>Phrase</i>	stop working for a short time
notice	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	information that tells you about something or warns about something
be okay with that	<i>Phrase</i>	agree
unpaid leave	<i>Phrase</i>	time away from work that is not paid

### Supplementary Vocabulary

take a leave of absence	<i>Phrase</i>	stay away from work for a long period of time, without getting paid
sick leave	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	time away from work when sick
personal leave	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	time away from work for personal reasons (i.e. doctor's appointment, etc.)
maternity leave	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	time away from work for a mother to care for a new baby
bank holiday	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	public holiday recognized by law (BrE)

## Daily Life - I'm Sorry, I Love You II (C0028)

A: I'm so relieved that your ankle wasn't broken! I feel just awful about this whole thing. I wanna make it up to you. Let me take you out to dinner tonight. My treat.

B: That sounds great! I'd love to! Here is my address. Pick me up at eight?

A: Perfect!

B: Thank you for such a lovely evening! The food was amazing, and I had a great time.

A: Me too. You look so beautiful tonight! I wish this night would never end. There's something I have to tell you...

B: What is it?

A: I woke up today thinking this would be just like any other ordinary day, but I was wrong. A twist of fate brought us together. I crashed into your life and you into mine, and this may sound crazy, but I'm falling

### Key Vocabulary

relieved	<i>Adjective</i>	relaxed and happy that something difficult has been stopped
make it up	<i>verb</i>	do something good as a balance to a bad or hurtful action
my treat	<i>phrase</i>	I will pay
pick up	<i>verb</i>	go somewhere in order to get someone or something
ordinary	<i>Adjective</i>	normal
twist of fate	<i>phrase</i>	unplanned events that has a big impact on the future

crash	<i>verb</i>	hit something causing serious damage
fall in love	<i>phrase</i>	start being in love

### Supplementary Vocabulary

go on a date	<i>phrase</i>	go to an event or activity with a boyfriend or girlfriend
ask you out	<i>verb</i>	invite or ask someone to go on a date (informal)
take you out	<i>verb</i>	invite someone to go and do something
turn down	<i>verb</i>	decline an invitation
look forward to	<i>verb</i>	an expression to show excitement about something
see someone	<i>verb</i>	be in a relationship with someone
flirt	<i>verb</i>	behave in a way that expresses a sexual attraction for someone

## Advanced - Investing in Emerging Markets (E0029)

A: Dad, I'd like to borrow some money.

B: Sure, Johnny, how much do you need? five bucks?

A: Come on, Dad, I need thirty thousand. I wanna get into the market. You know, I'm tired of hearing all this news about the economic downturn, the inevitable recession, people stuffing their money in their mattresses. I look at this as an opportunity. This is a chance for me to get a jump start on building my nest egg.

B: I don't know about that; with all the uncertainty in the markets right now, it would be a very unwise decision to invest. I don't know if you're aware son, but there has been a lot of turmoil in the markets recently. There have already been half a million layoffs in the last few months, and we have no idea how the proposed stimulus package will impact the economy. There's just too much instability. I wouldn't feel comfortable investing in this climate.

A: But look at it this way, every challenge is an opportunity. And anyway, I'm not talking about investing in the domestic market. There are emerging markets that promise great returns. Look at China, for example; they have 1.4 billion people, half a billion of whom have recently entered the middle class. Here alone, the aggregate demand for consumer goods represents an amazing wealth generating opportunity.

B: Come on, son, you're looking at this too naively, the Chinese market has exhibited a great deal of instability, and their currency has been devalued by almost a whole percentage point.

A: Fine, then! If that's the way you feel, so be it. But you're losing out on a great opportunity here. I'm going to go hit up Mum for the cash.

### Key Vocabulary

inevitable

*Adjective*

unavoidable

nest egg	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	money that is saved to pay for something in the future, usually a house, or retirement
turmoil	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	a state of confusion, disorder, disturbance
stimulus package	<i>Phrase</i>	amount of money the government uses to improve the economy
	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	state of not being stable, being likely to change
emerging market	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	nations undergoing quick industrialization
	<i>Adjective</i>	combined
devalue	<i>Verb</i>	reduced in value
hit up	<i>Verb</i>	ask for money

## Supplementary Vocabulary

depreciation	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	an decrease in the value of something
--------------	-------------------------	---------------------------------------



Learn English on Your Terms

appreciation	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	an increase in the value of something
inflation	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	an continual increase in price
developing economy	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	growing economy
rapidly developing country	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	countries undergoing quick industrialization
industrialized nation	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	nations that have developed factories and businesses

## Daily Life - New Guy in Town II (C0030)

A: Oh, Armand, thank you for such a thoughtful invitation! It's really very nice of you to invite us over for dinner, don't you think so, Ellen?

B: Oh, yes of course! We'd love to come over. Can I bring anything?

C: No, don't worry about it; I'll take care of everything. I'll see you tonight. Come with an appetite... I know I will!

B: I don't want go over to his place for dinner! He gives me the creeps! Why on earth did you accept?

A: Oh come on Ellen, it will be nice to get to know him. Besides, he's new to the neighborhood, and it would be rude to decline his invitation.

B: I guess so... You always rope me into things like this!

C: Ladies! Thank you for coming! You look delicious... I mean beautiful. Please come in.

A: Oh Oh Armand! You are too kind!

B: How did I get myself into this...

### Key Vocabulary

thoughtful	<i>Adjective</i>	showing concern for the needs and feelings of other people
appetite	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a physical desire of food
give the creeps	<i>phrase</i>	make someone to feel scared and uncomfortable

get to know	<i>verb</i>	start to know, become familiar with someone
why on earth	<i>phrase</i>	(expression to emphasize surprise or frustration)
decline	<i>verb</i>	say you will not or cannot do something
rope into	<i>verb</i>	convince someone to do something

### Supplementary Vocabulary

make yourself at home	<i>phrase</i>	polite way to ask guests to make themselves comfortable
hospitable	<i>Adjective</i>	being a friendly and caring host to the guests
potluck	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a party that requires everybody to bring food
housewarming	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a party to celebrate moving into a new home

## Elementary - Canceling an Appointment (B0031)

A: Hello, Samantha speaking.

B: Hi Samantha. This is Angela calling.

A: Oh, hi Angela, what's up?

B: I'm just calling about our meeting today. I wonder, is it possible to reschedule our appointment in the afternoon? I have a bit of an emergency that I need to take care of.

A: Let me see, it shouldn't be too much of a problem...

B: I'm really sorry, I hope it doesn't inconvenience you too much, it's just this thing came up, and ...

A: Angela, you know what, I can't make it to our meeting, either. Why don't we postpone it to tomorrow afternoon at the same time?

B: Sounds great. See you tomorrow.

C: Angela..Angela, look up! See that lady over there who is trying on a red leather jacket? Isn't that Samantha?

B: What? No wonder she told me she couldn't make it to the meeting, oh, no, I think she saw me...

### Key Vocabulary

what's up	<i>Phrase</i>	what is the matter
reschedule	<i>Verb</i>	schedule something for a different time
inconvenience	<i>Verb</i>	cause problem or trouble
come up	<i>Verb</i>	occur in an unexpected way

make it	<i>Verb</i>	come
postpone	<i>Verb</i>	decide to do something at a later time
no wonder	<i>Phrase</i>	not surprisingly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

scheduling conflict	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	two or more appointments scheduled at the same time
call off	<i>Verb</i>	cancel
double-book	<i>Verb</i>	have two appointments or meetings at the same time
push back	<i>Phrase</i>	move a meeting or appointment to a later time
rain check	<i>Phrase</i>	a promise or offer to do something in the future that is not possible to do now

## Daily Life - Opening a Bank Account (C0032)

A: Next, please. May I help you, sir?

B: Hello, yes, I'd like to open a bank account.

A: Certainly, I can help you with that. What type of account would you like to open? A chequing or a savings account?

B: What features do they offer?

A: Well, if you just take a look here, see, with our chequing account, you can have unlimited daily transactions for a small monthly fee, and our savings account has a higher interest rate, but you must carry a minimum balance of \$ 10,000 dollars.

B: I see, well, I think I'm more interested in a chequing account; I like to have easy access to my money.

A: Alright, then, with this chequing account you'll be issued a debit card and a cheque book. Will you require overdraft protection? There is an extra fee for that.

B: No, that won't be necessary.

A: In that case, I'll get you to fill out this paperwork; I'll need your social insurance number, and two pieces of government ID. If you could just sign here, and here, and here; we'll be all set. Would you like to make a deposit today?

B: Yes, I'd like to deposit one billion dollars.

### Key Vocabulary

feature	<i>common noun, plural</i>	interesting or important quality
---------	----------------------------	----------------------------------

chequing account	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a regular account for daily transations
transaction	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an occurrence in which money is transferred from one person, or one account, to another
savings account	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an account for people to keep their money, usually offers a higher interest rate
balance	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of money in a bank account
access	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a way to get to something
debit card	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a card for you to take money out of your bank account
overdraft	<i>common noun, singular</i>	taking out more money than what is available in the account

I'll get you	<i>phrase</i>	(a way to ask people to do things)
I'll need your	<i>phrase</i>	(a way to request people to provide something)
If you could just	<i>phrase</i>	(a polite way of asking people to do things)
deposit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an amount of money that is put in a bank account

### Supplementary Vocabulary

credit card	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a card to buy things and pay for them later
online banking	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a service that allows people to do transactions online
telephone banking	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a service that allows people to do transactions by phone

cheque book	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a book of cheques for use with a chequing account
terms and conditions	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	an outline of the rules and company policies of a particular product or service
high interest account	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a savings account that offers higher than usual interest rate
teller	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person working in a bank, who helps customers with daily transactions

## Elementary - Foul! (B0033)

A: Has the game started yet?

B: Yeah, about 5 minutes ago.

A: Who's winning?

B: The Bulls, of course!

A: What! That wasn't a foul! C'mon, ref!

B: Don't worry, Shaq always screws up free throws.

A: You were right! He didn't make the shot!

B: That was a great shot! A three pointer, yeah!

A: Did you see that? He traveled and the ref didn't call it!

B: This ref needs glasses. Hey ref, open your eyes! I can't believe he didn't see that!

A: Okay... end of the first quarter... Alright, I'm gonna make a beer run.

### Key Vocabulary

foul	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an act in sports that is against the rules
referee	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who makes sure that players act according to the rules in a game or sport (informal)
screw up	<i>verb</i>	make a mistake

free throw	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a chance to shoot the ball due to a foul made by the opponent
make the shot	<i>verb</i>	successfully throw a ball toward a goal (sports)
three pointer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a shot that scores three points in a game
travel	<i>verb</i>	take more steps with the basketball than the rule allows
beer run	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the act of quickly going to get beer

### Supplementary Vocabulary

court	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place where basketball is played
assist	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an action where the ball is passed that helps score a goal

block	<i>verb</i>	put your body between an opposing player and the ball
jump shot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	jump in the air and shoot the ball while
rebound	<i>verb</i>	grab and control the ball after the other team missed a shot
steal	<i>verb</i>	intercept a pass between two players of the opposite team

## Upper-Intermediate - Live from Washington (D0034)

A: This is Madeline Wright, for BCC News reporting live from Washington D. C. where, very shortly, the new President will deliver his inaugural address. Just moments ago, the President was sworn-in to office; following the United States Constitution the President swore an oath to faithfully execute the office of the presidency.

B: And what exactly is going on now, Madeline?

A: Well, Tom, true to American tradition, the band has just played “Hail to the Chief”, and the President has been honored by a 21-gun salute. Now we’re waiting for the President to take to the stage and deliver his speech. Tom, it’s like a who’s who of the political world here on Capital Hill, with dignitaries representing several different countries.

B: What’s the mood on the ground like, Madeline?

A: In a word, the mood here is electric. The excitement in the air is palpable; I've never seen a larger crowd here on Capital Hill, and the audience is shouting, crying, and embracing each other. On this, a most historic day, you can feel the hope and the excitement in the air. The 20th of January will go down in history as the . . . . Oh, Tom, it looks like the President is about to begin. . . .

C: My fellow Americans, today I stand before you...

### Key Vocabulary

deliver	<i>Verb</i>	give information by speaking; say something officially
swear in	<i>Verb</i>	place someone in a new position by holding an official ceremony where he promises to do the job well
oath	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	official, serious promise

who's who	<i>Phrase</i>	important and famous people in a particular industry
dignitary	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	person with a high rank or position, especially in government or religion
palpable	<i>Adjective</i>	so strong you can feel it, obvious
in a word	<i>Phrase</i>	to describe it in one word
fellow	<i>Adjective</i>	used to describe people of the same group
go down in history	<i>Phrase</i>	be remembered

### Supplementary Vocabulary

ceremony	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	activity or action that are the official part of a formal official state or social occasion
festivities	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	celebration, enjoyment, and happiness

president-elect	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a person who has been voted president, but not yet officially made president
parade	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a public celebration of an event where many people move down a street in groups or on vehicles; usually involves a marching band
term	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	time allowed for one person to remain President after one election; in America a presidential term is four years
affirmation	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a show of agreement or dedication
inaugural cheon	lun- <i>Phrase</i>	formal lunch celebrating the inauguration

## Daily Life - He's not a Good Fit (c0035)

A: So, Lauren, I just wanted to talk to you quickly about our new customer support representative, Jason Huntley.

B: Sure, what's up?

A: Basically, I've got a few concerns about him, and the bottom line is, I don't think he's a good fit for our company.

B: Okay... what makes you say that? I thought you were pleased with his overall performance. Didn't you just tell me last week how impressed you were with his attitude?

A: Yeah, his attitude is great, but he's really unreliable. Sometimes he's really productive, but then other times... take last Tuesday for instance, he was forty-five minutes late for our morning meeting!

B: Well, I'm sure he had a perfectly good reason...

A: But that's not the only thing... you know, he really doesn't have the best work ethic, I'm constantly catching him on MSN and Facebook when he should be talking to clients.

B: Yeah, but come on, Geoff, as if you don't check Facebook at work. Look, you hired this guy, we've invested a lot of time and money in his training, so now it's up to you to coach him. Make it work, Geoff!

A: Make it work, Geoff. You would say that, wouldn't you, he is your cousin; what a jerk, make me hire your stupid, useless, cousin.

### Key Vocabulary

concern

*common*

worry

*noun, plural*

	<i>phrase</i>	most important point
<b>overall</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	general
<b>performance</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	how well someone does their job
<b>unreliable</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	not able to be trusted
<b>productive</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	doing a lot in a short amount of time
<b>perfectly good</b>	<i>phrase</i>	having no problems, just fine
<b>work ethic</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	attitude to work
<b>coach</b>	<i>verb</i>	teach and train someone new skills

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>poor judgment</b>	<i>judgment</i>	<i>phrase</i>	regularly makes bad decisions
<b>poor work ethic</b>	<i>work ethic</i>	<i>phrase</i>	bad attitude to work

dependable	<i>Adjective</i>	able to be trusted and relied upon
a bad apple	<i>phrase</i>	a bad member of a group who makes things more difficult for others
unproductive	<i>Adjective</i>	not productive, not doing a lot

## Elementary - I'm Sorry, I Love You III (B0036)

A: Steven! Where have you been? I've been trying to get a hold of you for hours!

B: I... um... there was an emergency at work, so...

A: I was waiting for you in the restaurant for three hours! And you didn't even have the decency to call me! Do you have any idea how embarrassed I was?

B: Honey, I promise this won't happen again, it's just that I...

A: Yeah, right. I've heard it all before. I'm not going to take any more of your empty promises. This is the 5th time you've stood me up in two weeks! You need to get your priorities straight. I'm tired of you putting your job first all the time!

B: Come on, Veronica, that's not fair. I do care about you a lot, you know that. I tried to ...

A: You know what? Maybe we should just take a break. I need some time to think about where this relationship is heading.

B: But...Veronica, would you just listen to me? There was a fire alarm at my office building today and I was stuck...

### Key Vocabulary

get hold of	<i>Verb</i>	find or contact someone
decency	<i>Noun (non-count)</i>	polite or moral behavior
do you have any idea	<i>Phrase</i>	do you know
stand (someone) up	<i>Verb</i>	fail to keep the appointment to meet someone
get your priorities straight	<i>Phrase</i>	realize what is more important
head	<i>Verb</i>	go towards a specified direction or place

## Supplementary Vocabulary

break up	<i>Verb</i>	end a relationship
cheat on (some-one)	<i>Verb</i>	kiss or have sex with someone who is not your boyfriend, girl-friend, wife or husband
get back together	<i>Phrase</i>	restart a relationship that ended
ex-boyfriend	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	person who used to be your boyfriend
	<i>person who used to be your girlfriend</i>	ex-girlfriend

## Intermediate - Chinese New Year (C0037)

A: I'm so excited about Chinese New Year! When do I get to visit Grandma? Grandma makes the best dumplings in the world!

B: Ha ha, right. Sounds to me like you're more excited about the dumplings than seeing your Grandma.

A: Of course I miss Grandma, too. I bet she's gonna teach me how to play Mahjong! Hey, Dad, are you going to buy me firecrackers this year? We're going to have the best fireworks! I'm really looking forward to lighting them!

B: Son, firecrackers aren't toys; they're dangerous!

A: No, fireworks are awesome!

B: Whoa, don't you remember? Last year when I set off the firecrackers, you covered both your ears and hid behind your mother?

A: Dad! I was scared because... because I saw a bug. That's all.

B: Hahaha... really?

A: Oh, and I can't wait to watch the dragon dance! Dad, can I sit on your shoulders this time?

B: Hey, I offered last year...

A: Well, I... anyways, I was just thinking of the red envelopes. I wanna make a list of all the things I'm gonna buy with my red envelope money! I can't wait! I'm gonna have so much money! Mom, can I get a pen and a piece of paper?

A: I want a new transformer, no, two transformers...the Optimus Prime, and...maybe the wheel-jack? I'll get a PSP game, hahaha, and I'll buy the entire class lunch at MacDonald's...

### Key Vocabulary

excited	<i>Adjective</i>	very happy about something
dumpling	<i>common noun, plural</i>	small lump of dough that is steamed or boiled, traditional Chinese New Year food
firecracker	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a cylinder filled with explosive substance that makes loud noise when it explodes
look forward to	<i>phrase</i>	excited and happy about something that will happen in the future
can't wait	<i>phrase</i>	eager or excited about doing something or for something to begin

set off                      *verb*                      cause something to explode

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Lunar New Year                      Chinese New Year, based on the cycles of the moon

Spring Festival                      Chinese New Year

lunar calendar                      *common noun, singular*                      a calendar based on the cycles and phases of the moon

can hardly wait                      *phrase*                      very excited about something that will happen in the future

impatient                              *Adjective*                      not happy or willing to wait for something

## Daily Life - Buying a Car (C0038)

A: Hi there, can I help you folks?

B: I'm just browsing; seeing what's on the lot. My daughter wants a car for her birthday, you know how it is.

C: Dad! I'm sixteen already and I'm, like, the only one at school who doesn't have a car!

A: She is right, you know. Kids these days all have cars. Let me show you something we just got in: a 1996 sedan. Excellent gas mileage, it has dual airbags and anti lock brakes; a perfect vehicle for a young driver.

C: Dad, I love it! It's awesome! Can we get this one please?

B: I see... What can you tell me about this one?

A: Oh, that's just an old World War Two tank that we use for TV commercials. Now about this sedan...

B: Whoa, whoa wait a minute. Tell me more about this tank.

A: Well, Sir, if you are looking for quality and safety then look no further! Three inches of reinforced steel protect your daughter from short range missile attacks.

B: Does the sedan protect her from missile attacks?

A: It does not.

B: Well, I don't know. Let me sleep on it.

A: Did I mention the tank is a tank?

B: I'll take it!

C: Dad!

### Key Vocabulary

browse	<i>verb</i>	look around to see if anything is interesting
sedan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a car with four doors
gas mileage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of gas used per mile
dual airbags	<i>common noun, plural</i>	two airbags, one for the driver and one for the passenger
brake	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a device that slows down or stops something

vehicle	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that carries people from one place to another
reinforce	<i>Adjective</i>	strengthen, make something stronger
sleep on it	<i>phrase</i>	think about something further and make a decision later (informal)

## Supplementary Vocabulary

minivan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a vehicle that is larger than a car, has four doors and is shaped like a box
SUV	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large vehicle that is suitable to run on rough surfaces
sale	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an event where goods or services are sold at a price lower than usual
promotion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something (usually advertising) that is done to increase sales



Learn English on your Terms

<b>discount</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of reduction in price
<b>bargain</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something bought or sold at a price lower than its actual value

## Elementary - My New Boyfriend (B0039)

A: Irene! I heard you were on a date last night! So, how how did it go? I want all the juicy details!

B: Um... well, actually, we had a fantastic time last night. He was...amazing!

A: Okay, now you really have to fill me in. What's he like?

B: He's really good looking; he's quite tall, around 6'1", he's in his early thirties, and he's got the most beautiful dark brown eyes...

A: He sounds hot! What does he do for a living?

B: You know what, this is the best part. David is a junior investment banker at Fortune Bank, so he's got a great career path ahead of him!

A: Hold on a sec, his name is David?

B: Yeah?

A: That's my brother!

### Key Vocabulary

hear	<i>Verb</i>	get the information from someone
juicy detail	<i>Noun (plural)</i>	exciting pieces of information
fill me in	<i>Verb</i>	give me more information
good looking	<i>Adjective</i>	handsome
hot	<i>Adjective</i>	attractive
career path	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	a planned, logical progression of jobs within a profession throughout working life



Learn English on Your Terms

## Supplementary Vocabulary

**attractive**                    *Adjective*                    have a pleasing appearance

**sexy**                         *Adjective*                    attractive, exciting and appealing

**tender**                       *Adjective*                    very loving and gentle

**handsome**                   *Adjective*                    good looking

## Elementary - Can I ask you a favor? (B0040)

A: Um, sorry to bother you, um... my name is Rachel. I'm new here. Can I ask you a favor?

B: Hi Rachel, welcome on board. I'm afraid I can't help you right now. I'm getting ready for a very important meeting.

A: Excuse me, but can I bother you for a sec?

C: You know what, I'd love to help you, but I'm about to meet an important client. Do you wanna try Sean instead? He sits right over there.

A: Sorry to interrupt you Sean, could you do me a quick favor?

D: Actually, I'm working on a document that is due in a couple minutes. I really can't talk to you right now. Sorry about that.

A: Geeze! I just want to know where the bathroom is! What's wrong with you people!

### Key Vocabulary

bother	<i>Verb</i>	annoy or disturb someone
can I ask you a favor	<i>Phrase</i>	ask someone to do a kind and helpful thing
on board	<i>Phrase</i>	to the company
can I bother you	<i>Phrase</i>	polite way of asking if you can interrupt someone
instead	<i>Adverb</i>	in the place of
sorry to interrupt	<i>Pronoun</i>	phrase used to begin speaking to someone when they are busy doing or saying something
do me a quick favor	<i>Pronoun</i>	do a small, helpful thing that won't take a long time

### Supplementary Vocabulary

help me out	<i>Phrase</i>	help me
give me a hand	<i>Phrase</i>	help me with something
annoy	<i>Verb</i>	cause someone to feel slightly angry
bug	<i>Verb</i>	bother or annoy someone (informal)
disrupt	<i>Verb</i>	stop someone from working, or doing something

## The Weekend - Movie Trailer (C0041)

- A: In a digital world, even the strongest must fight for survival. Two people, possess a secret so valuable, so powerful, they have to defend it at all costs.
- B: I don't care where they are, I don't care what it takes... you find them and bring them to me!
- A: They only had one chance! And their chance was to fight back!
- D: You wanna play rough? Okay, say hello to my little friend!
- A: With a little help from a Governor...
- C: Listen to me! We have to get them outta there! No matter what!

A: Nothing will prevent them from doing their job!  
Double the action.

D: Get down!

A: Triple the excitement.

D: Get down again!

A: This summer... nothing will stand in their way.

B: I'm going to make him an offer he can't refuse.

A: Two hosts, one podcast, coming to a theater near you.

## Key Vocabulary

possess	<i>verb</i>	have or own
survival	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the state of living and being alive
defend	<i>verb</i>	fight in order to keep something or someone safe
rough	<i>phrase</i>	be tough, difficult, violent
no matter what	<i>common noun, singular</i>	even if it's difficult
get down	<i>phrase</i>	lower your body, not standing
stand in someone's way	<i>phrase</i>	prevent a person from doing something
at all costs	<i>phrase</i>	regardless of the cost involved, even if it's difficult

## Supplementary Vocabulary

	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a very scary movie
comedy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a funny movie
romantic comedy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a funny movie where two people fall in love
animated film	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a movie made with a series of drawings; not with live people
thriller	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a very exciting film
drama	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a movie about a serious subject

## Elementary - I Need More Time (B0042)

A: So, Casey, how are things going with the photos for the press kit?

B: Yeah, I've been meaning to talk to you about that. I might need to ask for an extension on that deadline.

A: You've had over a month to get this finalized! Why are things delayed?

B: Well, the thing is, we ran into a lot of problems...

A: I'm not looking for excuses here. I just want to get this finished on time!

B: I know, and I apologize for the delay. But some things were just beyond my control. I had trouble booking the photographer, and then Michael was sick for three weeks, so I couldn't include him in the photos, and the design team lost all the files, so I had to re-do the pictures.

A: I'm not going to put this off any longer, Casey! I want those photos ASAP!

### Key Vocabulary

press kit	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	group of photos, documents, articles, and information about a company given to reporters, newspapers, magazines, etc.
I've been meaning to	<i>Verb, Present Perfect Progressive</i>	intend, plan to do something
extension	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	make a deadline longer, extra time to do something
finalize	<i>Noun (singular) Verb</i>	the date when something must be finished finish, decide on all the details

delay	<i>Verb</i>	late
run into	<i>Phrase</i>	meet or encounter
beyond someone's control	<i>Phrase</i>	not able to control something
put (something) off	<i>Verb, Going to Future</i>	plan to do something later

## Supplementary Vocabulary

due	<i>Adjective</i>	the date when something must be finished or happen
	<i>Verb</i>	not do something now that should be done; do something later procrastinate
behind	<i>Adjective</i>	late with a project or things you have to do
hold up	<i>Phrase</i>	delay or slow something
tight deadline	<i>Phrase</i>	a deadline that is really difficult to meet

## Daily Life - Applying for a Visa (C0043)

A: So, you're applying for a B2 visa, where is your final destination and what's the purpose of your trip to the United States?

B: I'm going to visit my brother; he's just had a baby. He lives in Minneapolis.

A: And how long do you plan to remain in the United States?

B: I'll be here for approximately three weeks. See, here's my return ticket for the twenty-sixth of March.

A: And, who is sponsoring your trip?

B: My brother, here, this is an invitation letter from him. I will stay with him and his family in their home.

A: Alright, tell me about the ties you have to your home country.

B: Well, I own a house; actually, I'm leaving my dog there with my neighbors. I have a car at home, and oh, my job! I'm employed by Tornel as an engineer. Actually, I only have three weeks' vacation, so I have to go back to work at the end of March.

A: And what evidence do you have that you are financially independent?

B: Well, I do have assets in my country; like I said, I own a house, and see, here's a bank statement showing my investments, and my bank balance.

A: I'm sorry, sir, we cannot grant you a B2 visa at this time, instead, you are granted a resident visa! Congratulations, you are the millionth person to apply for a visa! You win! Congratulations!

## Key Vocabulary

remain	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	stay
approximately	<i>Adjective</i>	an amount that is almost, but not exact
sponsor	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	someone who takes the responsibility for a person applying for a visa
invitation letter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a formal letter asking a person to come to a place
tie	<i>common noun, plural</i>	responsibility that links a person to a place or a thing
evidence	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	something that shows the thing is true
financially independent	<i>phrase</i>	have enough money to live alone; do not need help with money

assets	<i>common noun, plural</i>	things that are worth money that you own
grant	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	let you have something

## Supplementary Vocabulary

visa officer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who's job is to interview people for visas
resident permit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an official document that allows you to live in a country
embassy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the group of people who represent your country in another country, located in the capital city
application form	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece of paper you have to put information on to make a formal request



Learn English on your Terms

## consulate

*common noun, singular*

government building representing your country in another country; not located in a capital city

## Elementary - Small Talk (B0044)

A: Morning.

B: Hi there Mr. Anderson! How are you on this fine morning?

A: Fine, thank you.

B: It sure is cold this morning, isn't it? I barely even get out of bed!

A: Yeah. It's pretty cold, alright.

B: Did you catch the news this morning? I heard that there was a fire on Byron Street.

A: No, I didn't hear about that.

B: Did you happen to watch the football game last night? The Patriots scored in the last minute!

A: No, I don't like football.

B: Oh. . . By the way, I saw you with your daughter at the office Christmas party. She is really beautiful!

A: She's my wife! Oh, here's my floor! Nice talking to you. Goodbye.

B: Sir this is the 56th floor! We are on the 70th!

A: That's okay, I'll take the stairs!

### Key Vocabulary

It sure is

*Phrase*

Affirmation or confirmation of something

barely even	<i>Adverb</i>	hardly, could almost not
catch	<i>Verb</i>	hear, listen to
Did you happen to	<i>Phrase</i>	By chance or casualty someone did something
By the way	<i>Phrase</i>	phrased used to interject another topic in a conversation
take the stairs	<i>Phrase</i>	go up the stairs, use the stairs

### Supplementary Vocabulary

small talk	<i>Pronoun</i>	short, friendly conversation about things that are not important
chat	<i>Verb</i>	talk (informal)
network	<i>Verb</i>	talk with people to form business connections
awkward	<i>Adjective</i>	difficult to deal with
uncomfortable	<i>Adjective</i>	a feeling of being embarrassed or uneasy

## Intermediate - I'm Sorry I love You IV (C0045)

A: ... so, I said, "let's take a break ." And since that night, I've been waiting for him to call, but I still haven't heard from him. You don't think he's seeing someone else, do you?

B: Come on, don't be so dramatic! I'm sure everything is going to work out just fine.

A: You think so? Oh, no! How can he do this to me? I'm sure he's cheating on me! Why else wouldn't he call?

B: But, you two are on a break. Theoretically he can do whatever he likes.

A: He's the love of my life! I've really messed this up.

B: Come on, hon. Pull yourself together. It's going to be alright.

A: But I... I still love him! And it's all my fault! I can't believe how immature and selfish I was being. I mean, he is a firefighter, it's not like he can just leave someone in a burning building and meet me for dinner. I've totally messed this up!

B: You know what, Veronica, I think you should make the first step. I'm sure he'll forgive you...

A: No, this is not gonna happen! I... I've ruined everything....

B: Hey... do you hear something? Guess what? It's your lovely firefighter!

C: When I had you, I treated you bad and wrong dear. And since, since you went away, don't you know I sit around with my head hanging down and I wonder who's loving you.

## Key Vocabulary

seeing someone	<i>phrase</i>	dating or going out with someone
cheat on (someone)	<i>verb</i>	having a romantic relationship with someone else
on a break	<i>phrase</i>	a relationship that is temporarily on hold
pull yourself together	<i>phrase</i>	calm down, relax, organize your thoughts
immature	<i>Adjective</i>	acting in a childish way
selfish	<i>Adjective</i>	having or showing concern only for yourself and not for the needs or feelings of other people
ruin	<i>verb</i>	damage, destroy something

## Supplementary Vocabulary

break up	<i>verb</i>	end a relationship
dump (someone)	<i>verb</i>	end a relationship when the other person does not want to (informal)

partner	<i>common noun, singular</i>	serious, long-term boyfriend of girlfriend
ex	<i>common noun, singular</i>	former boyfriend, girlfriend, husband, or wife (informal)
love life	<i>phrase</i>	romantic social life
it's not the end of the world	<i>phrase</i>	don't worry, it is not so serious

## Upper-Intermediate - Emergency Room (D0046)

A: Help! Are you a doctor? My poor little Frankie has stopped breathing! Oh my gosh, Help me! I tried to perform CPR, but I just don't know if I could get any air into his lungs! Oh, Frankie!

B: Ellen, get him hooked up to a monitor! Someone page Dr. Howser. Get the patient to hold still, I can't get a pulse! Okay, he's on the monitor. His BP is falling! He's flatlining!

A: NOOOOOO! Frankie! Nurse! Do something!

B: Someone get her out of here! Get me the defibrillator. Okay, clear! Again! Clear! Come on! dammit! I'm not letting you go! Clear! I've got a pulse!

C: Okay, what's happening?

B: The patient is in acute respiratory failure, I think we're going to have to intubate!

C: Alright! Tube's in! Bag him! Someone give him 10 cc's of adrenaline! Let's go, people move, move!

A: Doctor, oh, thank god! How is he?

B: We managed to stabilize Frankie, but he's not out of the woods yet; he's still in critical condition. We're moving him to intensive care, but...

A: Doctor, just do whatever it takes. I just want my little Frankie to be okay. I couldn't imagine life without my little hamster!

### Key Vocabulary

intensive care

*common  
noun, singular*

place in the hospital  
where very ill patients  
are treated

critical condition	<i>Adjective</i>	state where a person is very sick or injured, and has a risk of dying
	<i>phrase</i>	out trouble or danger,
stabilize	<i>verb</i>	stop a patient from getting worse
intubate	<i>verb</i>	place a plastic tube in a persons mouth to facilitate breathing
	<i>common noun, singular</i>	condition in which a person stops breathing
	<i>common noun, singular</i>	electric machine that shocks the heart and makes it start working again
BP	<i>common noun, singular</i>	blood pressure
flatline	<i>verb</i>	condition where the heart stops working

pulse	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the number of times your heart beats per minute
hold still	<i>phrase</i>	not move
hook up	<i>phrase</i>	connect someone or something to a machine
CPR	<i>common noun, singular</i>	procedure in which air is blown into another persons lungs though their mouth

### Supplementary Vocabulary

chest compressions	<i>common noun, plural</i>	act of pushing on someone's chest to restart their heart
resuscitate	<i>verb</i>	make someone who stopped breathing start breathing again
defibrillator	<i>common noun, singular</i>	machine that uses electricity to shock and restart the heart

ER	<i>phrase</i>	Emergency Room; place in the hospital where you bring sick or injured people in an emergency
ICU	<i>phrase</i>	Intensive Care Unit; place in the hospital where very sick or severely injured people are taken care of

## Advanced - Just In Time Strategy (E0047)

A: I called this meeting today in order to discuss our manufacturing plan. As I'm sure you're all aware, with the credit crunch, and the global financial crisis, we're obligated to look for more cost efficient ways of producing our goods. We don't want to have to be looking at redundancies. So, we've outlined a brief plan to implement the just-in-time philosophy.

B: We have two basic points that we want to focus on. First of all, we want to reduce our lead time.

C: Why would want to do that? I think this is not an area that really needs to be worked on.

B: Well, we want to reduce production and delivery lead timesfor better overall efficiency.

A: Right, production lead times can be reduced by moving work stations closer together, reducing queue length, like for example, reducing the number of jobs waiting to be processed at a given machine, and improving the coordination and cooperation between successive processes. Delivery lead times can be reduced through close cooperation with suppliers, possibly by inducing suppliers to locate closer to the factory or working with a faster shipping company.

C: I see... That makes sense.

B: The second point is that we want to require supplier quality assurance and implement a zero defects quality program. We currently have far too many errors that lead to defective items and therefore, they must be eliminated. A quality control at the source program must be implemented to give workers the personal responsibility for the quality of the work they do, and the authority to stop production when something goes wrong.

C: I'm with you on this one. It's essential that we reduce these errors; we've got to force our suppliers to reduce their mistakes.

A: Exactly. Well, let's look at how we're going to put this plan into action. First...(fade out)

### Key Vocabulary

<b>obligate</b>	<i>verb</i>	make a person do something because it is the right thing to do
<b>cost efficient</b>	<i>phrase</i>	cheap, not expensive
<b>redundancy</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	layo <small>ut</small> , the ending of workers' employment
<b>implement</b>	<i>verb</i>	put a plan into action
<b>lead time</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the time between the beginning of a process and its end
<b>efficiency</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the ability to produce something more quickly

work station	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an area where a person works and does his job
given	<i>Adjective</i>	used to refer to a specific time, place or thing
defective	<i>Adjective</i>	having a mistake or error that makes something not perfect
defect	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a mistake or error that makes something not perfect

### Supplementary Vocabulary

inventory	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	supply of goods stored in a place
carrying cost	<i>phrase</i>	the cost of holding inventory
warehouse	<i>common noun, singular</i>	large building where products or goods are stored



Learn English on your Terms

stock	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the supply of goods for sale, or available
bottleneck	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that slows a process down

## Intermediate - Carnival in Rio! (C0048)

A: I can't believe we're here! Carnival in Rio! Seriously, this is like a once in a lifetime opportunity! Can you believe it? We're here at the biggest party in the world!

B: I know! We're so lucky that we found tickets for the Sambadrome! Good thing we found that ticket scalper.

A: Look! It's starting! Wow, this is amazing! Look at how many dancers there are. Oh my gosh! The costumes are so colorful! This is so cool!

B: It says here that the school that is dancing now is one of the oldest and most prestigious samba schools in Rio.

A: No kidding! Look at them, they're amazing! Look at that girl on the top of that float! She must be the carnival queen! Move over there so I can get a picture of you!

B: Ok. Hurry up take the picture!

C: join us! come and dance!

B: Oh really.... no I can't. No really, I don't know how to dance! Honey I'll see you later!

A: Patrick! Don't just leave me here!

### Key Vocabulary

prestigious	<i>Adjective</i>	being respected and admired for being successful or important
ticket scalper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person that buys and re-sells tickets at a higher price
once in a life-time	<i>phrase</i>	something that happens very rarely, not common

float		a vehicle with a platform used to carry an exhibit in a parade
good thing	<i>phrase</i>	it is good that something happened

### Supplementary Vocabulary

stadium	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large structure where sport events are held
festival	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a special time or event when people gather to celebrate something
Brasilia		the capital of Brazil
take a chance	<i>phrase</i>	take a risk, do something that you would not usually do
ditch	<i>verb</i>	leave someone on purpose (informal)

## Daily Life - Daddy Please! (C0049)

A: Hey daddy! You look great today; I like your tie!  
By the way, I was wondering can I...

B: NO!

A: I haven't even told you what it is yet!

B: Okay, okay, what do you want?

A: Do you think I could borrow the car? I'm going to a concert tonight.

B: Um.. I don't think so. I need the car tonight to pick up your mother.

A: Ugg! I told you about it last week! Smelly Toes is playing, and Eric asked if I would go with him!

B: Who's this Eric guy?

A: Duh! He's like the hottest and most popular guy at school! Come on, dad! Please!

B: No can do... sorry.

A: Fine then! Would you mind giving me 100 bucks?

B: No way!

A: That's so unfair!

### Key Vocabulary

by the way                    *phrase*                    used to change the topic of a conversation

wonder                    *verb*                    think about if something is possible

concert	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a public performance of music
pick up	<i>verb</i>	go and get
popular	<i>Adjective</i>	very well known and well liked
bucks	<i>common noun, plural</i>	informal word for dollars
unfair	<i>Adjective</i>	not fair, not just

### Supplementary Vocabulary

suit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a set of clothes that usually consists of a jacket and a skirt or pair of pants that are made out of the same material
play	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece of writing that tells a story through the actions and words of characters and that is performed on a stage

drop off	<i>phrase</i>	to go and leave someone at a certain place
no way	<i>phrase</i>	I cannot do it, it is not possible
lend	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to give (something) to (someone) to be used for a period of time and then returned

## Daily Life - New Guy In Town III (C0050)

A: Please make yourselves at home. Let me take your coats. Dinner is almost ready; I hope you brought your appetite

B: Your house is lovely, Armand! Very interesting decor...very...Gothic.

C: I think it's amazing! You have such good taste, Armand. I'm thinking of re-decorating my house; maybe you could give me a few pointers?

A: It would be my pleasure. Please have a seat. Can I offer you a glass of wine?

C: We would love some!

A: Here you are. A very special merlot brought directly from my home country. It has a unique ingredient which gives it a pleasant aroma and superior flavor.

C: Mmm... it's delicious!

B: It's a bit bitter for my taste... almost tastes like... like...

C: Ellen! Ellen! Are you okay?

A: Did she pass out?

C: Yeah...

A: I hope that you didn't poison her drink too much!  
You'll ruin our meal!

## Key Vocabulary

flavor

*common*

the way something

*noun, singular*

tastes

aroma	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the way something smells
pointer	<i>common noun, plural</i>	tips, advice, hints
make yourselves at home	<i>phrase</i>	get comfortable and feel like you are in your own home
good taste	<i>phrase</i>	refers to liking nice things
bitter	<i>Adjective</i>	opposite of sweet
pass out	<i>verb</i>	faint, loss consciousness

### Supplementary Vocabulary

sweet	<i>Adjective</i>	containing a lot of sugar
have a seat	<i>phrase</i>	sit down, take a seat
spike	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to add alcohol or drugs to (food or drink)



SOUR	<i>Adjective</i>	having an acid taste that is like the taste of a lemon
exclusive	<i>Adjective</i>	only allowing in people from a high social class

## The Weekend - What a Bargain! (C0051)

A: Hello. May I help you?

B: Yeah, this dress is really nice! How much is it?

A: That one is one hundred and fifty dollars.

B: One hundred and fifty dollars? What about this other one over here?

A: That's one hundred and forty dollars.

B: Hmm...that's a bit out of my price range. Can you give me a better deal?

A: This is an exclusive design by DaMarco! It's a bargain at that price.

B: Well, I don't know. I think I'll shop around.

A: Okay, okay, how about one hundred dollars?

B: That's still more than I wanted to spend. What if I take both dresses?

A: Okay, I can give you a special discount, just because you seem like a nice person. One hundred and ninety dollars for both.

B: I don't know... It's still a bit pricey.... Thanks anyway.

A: Okay, my final price! One hundred dollars for both! That's two for the price of one. That's my last offer!

B: Great! You've got a deal!

## Key Vocabulary

bargain	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a good deal, a cheap price
shop around	<i>phrase</i>	look in many stores and try to find the best price
discount	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a lowering of the price of something
exclusive	<i>Adjective</i>	not common, unique
out of my price range	<i>phrase</i>	too expensive, can't afford it
offer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an opportunity to buy something at a low price
pricey	<i>Adjective</i>	expensive
deal	<i>common noun, singular</i>	agreement to buy something

## Supplementary Vocabulary

promotion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a special discount or offer on goods and services
cash	<i>common noun, singular</i>	money in the form of coins and bills
credit card	<i>common noun, singular</i>	card that is used to buy things and pay at a later time
negotiate	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to discuss and fight for a better price
freebie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a free item that is usually given to promote a product

## Daily Life - Pizza Delivery (C0052)

A: Good evening, Pizza House. This is Marty speaking. May I take your order?

B: Um yes... I'd like a medium pizza with pepperoni, olives, and extra cheese.

A: We have a two-for-one special on large pizzas. Would you like a large pizza instead?

B: Sure, that sounds good.

A: Great! Would you like your second pizza to be the same as the first?

B: No, make the second one with ham, pineapple and green peppers. Oh, and make it thin crust.

A: Okay, thin crust. Your total is \$21.50 and your order will arrive in thirty minutes or it's free!

B: Perfect. Thank you. Bye..

A: Sir, wait!! I need your address!

### Key Vocabulary

medium	<i>Adjective</i>	an average size, not too big or small
total	<i>Adjective</i>	complete amount you must pay
instead	<i>General Adverb</i>	in replacement of
sounds good	<i>verb</i>	seems or appears to be okay, I agree
pepperoni	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a spicy sausage usually on pizza

olive	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a small, egg-shaped black or green fruit that is used as food or for making oil
crust	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the border of a pizza, or bread
two-for-one	<i>phrase</i>	pay for one and get another one free

### Supplementary Vocabulary

total	<i>common noun, singular</i>	sum of everything
fast food	<i>common noun, singular</i>	food that is quickly made and convenient if you are in a hurry
delivery	<i>common noun, singular</i>	transported or taken to your house
dough	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mix of flour and water that is used to make the base of a pizza



Learn English on your Terms

**take-out**

*Adjective*

food you take away  
from the restaurant to  
eat (AmE)

## The Weekend - Head Chef (C0053)

A: ...Right away sir, your order will be ready shortly. Jean Pierre, we have another special for table seven!

B: I'm working as fast as I can! We're really in the weeds! Where is my sous chef? Luc! I need you to peel more potatoes. Marie, chop some onions and carrots for the stew.

A: Jean Pierre another special! We're really packed tonight! We're running low on wine. Is there any left in the cellar?

C: Sorry I'm late, everyone. Wow, we are doing really well tonight!

B: Harry, stop talking and get over here I need this sauce stirred and the fish needs to be butchered and buttered.

C: Ok, I'm on it!

A: Jean Pierre, table seven has requested to see the chef! I think they are food critics from Cuisine Magazine

### Key Vocabulary

butter	<i>Adjective</i>	put butter on something
butcher	<i>Adjective</i>	cut meat into pieces taking out bones and organs
Right away	<i>phrase</i>	quickly, as soon as possible
in the weeds	<i>phrase</i>	in a difficult situation
sous chef	<i>common noun, singular</i>	chef that helps and assists the head chef
peel	<i>verb</i>	remove the outer skin of a fruit or vegetable
chop	<i>verb</i>	cut into small pieces

running	low	<i>phrase</i>	to not have so much, having not enough
stir		<i>Adjective</i>	move or mix something; usually with a spoon

### Supplementary Vocabulary

bake	<i>verb</i>	to cook food at very high and dry heat
pan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a usually shallow and open metal container that has a handle and that is used for cooking or baking
pot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a deep, round container that is used for cooking
dice	<i>verb</i>	to cut something into small cubes
stove	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a flat piece of kitchen equipment for cooking with fire

## Intermediate - I'm Sorry I Love You V (C0054)

A: Honey, of course I forgive you! I love you so much! I've really missed you. I was wrong to get upset over nothing.

B: I'm sorry I haven't called or anything, but right after you decided you wanted a break, I was called up north to put out some major forest fires! I was in the middle of nowhere, working day and night, trying to prevent the blaze from spreading! It was pretty intense.

A: Oh, honey, I'm glad you're okay! But I have some exciting news... I think I'm pregnant!

B: Really? Wow, that's amazing! This is great news! I've always wanted to be a father! We'll go to the doctor first thing in the morning!

C: We have your test results back and, indeed, you are pregnant. Let's see here... everything seems to be in order. Your approximate due date is October twenty-seventh two thousand and nine, so that means that the baby was conceived on February third, two thousand and nine.

B: Are you sure? Are these things accurate?

C: Well, yes sir, they are.

A: What's wrong? Why are you asking these questions?

B: This baby isn't mine! I was away the first week of February at a training seminar!

A: I... I... no, it can't be...

## Key Vocabulary

accurate	<i>Adjective</i>	having no mistakes or errors
conceived	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	be created
due date	<i>phrase</i>	date when the doctor thinks the baby will be born
everything seems to be in order	<i>phrase</i>	everything is okay, everything is normal
first thing in the morning	<i>phrase</i>	early in the morning
break	<i>common noun, singular</i>	temporary stop in a romantic relationship
in the middle of nowhere	<i>phrase</i>	far from a city or town
blaze	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large, strong, dangerous fire

## Supplementary Vocabulary

firefighter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person whose job is to put out fires (male or female)
the boonies	<i>phrase</i>	a place far from cities or towns (informal)
first thing in the afternoon	<i>phrase</i>	early in the afternoon, before anything else
pregnancy test	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a medical test done to see if a woman is pregnant
check-up	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an appointment to see the doctor to make sure the person is healthy

## Intermediate - Hockey (C0055)

A: Hello everyone! I'm Rick Fields, and here with me is Bob Copeland.

B: Howdy folks, and welcome to today's game! You know, Rick, today is a key game between Russia and Canada. As you know, the winner will move on to the finals.

A: That's right, and it looks like we're just about ready to start the match. The ref is calling the players for the face-off... and here we go! The Russians win possession and immediately set up their attack! Federov gets checked hard into the boards!

B: Maurice Richard has the puck now, and passes it to the center. He shoots! Wow what a save by the goalie!

A: Alright, the puck is back in play now. Pavel Bure is on a breakaway! He is flying down the ice! The defenders can't keep up! Slap shot! He scores

## B: What an amazing goal!

### Key Vocabulary

goalie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	position in hockey; person who tries to stop the puck from going in the net
breakaway	<i>common noun, singular</i>	state of becoming separated from a large group (especially in sports)
save	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of preventing a ball or puck from going in the net
puck	<i>common noun, singular</i>	small, round, black object that is used to play hockey
win possession	<i>phrase</i>	get control
check	<i>verb</i>	use your body to push someone in hockey

ref	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who makes sure the players follow the rules in a game
face-off	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a way of beginning a game by dropping the puck between two players
key	<i>Adjective</i>	very important
finals	<i>common noun, plural</i>	last game or series of games in a tournament or championship

### Supplementary Vocabulary

hockey stick	<i>common noun, singular</i>	long wooden stick shaped like an L; used for playing hockey
arena	<i>common noun, singular</i>	large building where sports are played
rink	<i>common noun, singular</i>	ice surface used to play hockey or skate on

**NHL****National Hockey**

League; group of professional hockey teams that play in Canada and the US

**league**

*common  
noun, singular*

a group of sports teams that play against each other

## Daily Life - Planning a Bank Robbery (C0056)

A: All right, so this is what we are going to do. I've carefully mapped this out, so don't screw it up. Mr. Rabbit, you and Mr. Fox will go into the bank wearing these uniforms. We managed to get replicas of the one the guards wear when they pick up the money.

B: Got it.

C: No problem, boss.

A: When you get inside, tell them that you are filling in for Carl and Tom, and say that they are on another route today. Don't lose your cool. Just act natural.

B: What if they want to call and confirm?

A: You let him.

C: What!?

A: Don't worry, we have the phones tapped, so the call will be patched through to me, and I'll pretend to be the transport company.

B: Ha ha, you are so clever boss!

A: Okay, shut up. Only take as much money as you can fit in these bags. Don't get greedy! Are you ready? Let's go.

### Key Vocabulary

screw up	<i>verb</i>	mess up, make a mistake, fail
map out	<i>verb</i>	planned, thought of
patch (someone) through	<i>phrase</i>	connect or communicate over the telephone

<b>tap</b>	<i>verb</i>	attach a device to a phone line to listen secretly
<b>greedy</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	want too much; always wanting more
<b>loose (some- one's) cool</b>	<i>phrase</i>	to not control your feeling or emotions
<b>clever</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	smart, intelligent
<b>replica</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a reproduction or copy of a product

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>heist</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of stealing something from a shop or a bank (AmE, Informal)
<b>bust</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an event where the police catch people doing a crime
<b>bandit</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	criminal who attacks and steals from people who travel



Learn English on your Terms

burglary	<i>common noun, singular</i>	illegally entering a house or building to steal
escape route	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a planned way of going from one place to another and escaping

## The Office - Malfunction (C0057)

- A: Hey Carl, can you make a copy of this contract for me please? When you have it ready, send it out ASAP to our subbranch.
- B: Sure! Um... I think I broke this thing. Maxine, can you help me out here? I'm not really a tech guy.
- C: Yeah, sure. I think it's just out of toner. You can go use the other one upstairs. On your way up, can you fax this while I try and fix this thing?
- B: Sure! Dammit! Everything in this office seems to be breaking down! Never mind. I'll send this stupid fax later. Oh great! Is someone playing a practical joke on me? This is ridiculous!
- D: The elevator has some sort of malfunction. Just take the stairs dude. What floor are you going to?

B: I have to go up fifteen floors! Never mind. Made it! There is the copier!

### Key Vocabulary

ASAP	<i>phrase</i>	as soon as possible
tech	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	technology
toner	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	ink used in a printer or photocopier
on (some-one's) way	<i>phrase</i>	while moving from one place to another
break down	<i>verb</i>	suddenly stop working
never mind	<i>phrase</i>	forget the last thing I said; don't worry about it
practical joke	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a joke where something is done, rather than said
ridiculous	<i>Adjective</i>	very unreasonable or silly

malfunction	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a problem causing a thing to stop working properly
-------------	------------------------------	--

### Supplementary Vocabulary

bug	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a technical problem that causes a computer or system to not work properly
office equipment	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	tools used in an office
paper jam	<i>common noun, singular</i>	paper getting stuck in a photocopier, fax machine, or printer
damage	<i>verb</i>	break or harm something, make something not work properly, or not look perfect
power surge	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an increase in electrical current that can damage electric equipment



Learn English on your Terms

## breakdown

*common noun, singular*

the act of a machine suddenly not working properly

## Daily Life - This Is Your Captain Speaking (C0058)

A: And the next thing you know, we're running towards the... Oh...did you feel that?

B: Yeah, don't worry about it; we're just going through a bit of turbulence.

C: Ladies and gentlemen, this is your captain speaking. It looks like we've hit a patch of rough air, so we're going to have a bit of a bumpy ride for the next several minutes, and...

A: This why I hate flying... Oh!

C: At this time, I'd like to remind all of our passengers to fasten their seat belts and remain seated until the fasten seat belt sign is turned off. Please ensure that all cabin baggage is carefully stowed under the seat in front of you. I'll be back to update you in a minute.

A: Did you hear that? Brent!

B: Don't worry about it. This is totally normal. It happens all the

C: Ah, ladies and gentlemen, this is your captain again. We've got quite a large patch of rough air ahead of us, so for your safety, we will be suspending in-flight service. I would ask all in-flight crew to return to their seats at this time. I would also like to ask that all our passengers refrain from using the lavatory until the seat belt sign has been switched off. We can expect...

### Key Vocabulary

turbulence	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	sudden, strong movement of air especially that causes a plane to move up and down in the air
rough	<i>Adjective</i>	having or causing sudden violent movements

patch	<i>common noun, singular</i>	small area
bumpy	<i>Adjective</i>	having sudden up and down movements
fasten		to fasten
cabin gage	bag- <i>common noun, non-variable</i>	suitcases and luggage that travels inside the plane with the passengers
stow		stowed
suspend		will be suspending
refrain	<i>verb</i>	avoid doing
lavatory	<i>common noun, singular</i>	room with a sink and toilet, chiefly on an airplane or train

### Supplementary Vocabulary

overhead bin	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place above the seat in an airplane where you can store luggage
--------------	----------------------------------	---

carry-on	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a suit case that you bring onto the plane
table tray	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a table that folds down from the seat in front of you on a an airplane
life jacket	<i>common noun, singular</i>	piece of clothing that you ware to stay float–ing in water /life jacket
oxygen mask	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mask worn over your mouth and nose so you can breathe

## Advanced - Job Interview I (E0059)

A: Okay, so let's go over everything one more time. I really want you to get this job!

B: I know! It's an amazing growth opportunity! They're true industry leaders, and it would be so interesting to be part of an organization that is the undisputed leader in business process platform development.

A: So, let's see, you did your research on the company, right?

B: Well, I visited their website and read up on what they do. They're an IT service company that offers comprehensive business solutions for large corporations. They provide services such as CRM development, and they also offer custom-designed applications.

A: So what would your role in the company?

B: Well, the position is for an account manager. That basically means that I would be the link between our and our development team.

A: Sounds good, and so, why do you want to work with them?

B: Well, as I said they're the industry leaders, they have a really great growth strategy, amazing development opportunities for employees, and it seems like they have strong corporate governance. They're all about helping companies grow and unleashing potential. I guess their core values and mission really resonated with me. Oh, and they offer six weeks' vacation, stock options and bonuses... I'm totally going to cash in on that.

A: You idiot! Don't say that! Do you want this job, or not?

## Key Vocabulary

CRM	<i>common noun, singular</i>	processes, services, technology, and people used to attract and keep customers
custom	<i>Adjective</i>	specially made to fit the needs of a person or organization
core values	<i>common noun, plural</i>	most important beliefs
growth opportunity	<i>phrase</i>	chance to gain new skills
industry leader	<i>phrase</i>	being the best in that particular field or industry
undisputed	<i>Adjective</i>	definitely true, not doubted
read up	<i>verb</i>	read to gain the most recent information on a subject
unleash	<i>verb</i>	release; allow something to happen

resonate	<i>verb</i>	have a special meaning or importance for someone
----------	-------------	--

### Supplementary Vocabulary

integrated solutions	<i>phrase</i>	combine things to find a plan or a way to deal with a problem (esp. in business)
	<i>phrase</i>	something that places a company above the competition
optimize	<i>verb</i>	make something as effective as possible
align	<i>verb</i>	join a group in supporting something
platform	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a program that tells a computer how to work

## Intermediate - New Guy in Town IV (C0060)

A: All right, drag her over here, and help me tie her up.

B: I can't believe she fell for it! She is a lot more gullible than I thought!

A: Well, you gotta admit, my acting was brilliant!

B: Whatever. I was the one that convinced her to come. Look, she's waking up!

C: What's going on? Ellen? What are you doing?

A: The cat's out of the bag, you witch! You can stop pretending, now!

B: Yeah Lois , we know who you are! Now, we want some answers! Why are you here?

C: Fools! You don't know who you're dealing with!  
You can't stop me!

B: Run!

### Key Vocabulary

drag	<i>Verb, Present Simple</i>	move something usually heavy
tie up	<i>Phrase</i>	to attach someone or something with a rope or string
fall for it	<i>Phrase</i>	believe a lie
gullible	<i>Adjective</i>	easily believing something that is not true, easily fooled
	<i>Phrase</i>	the truth is revealed,

### Supplementary Vocabulary

wizard	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	the male form of a witch; man that practices magic
spill the beans	<i>Phrase</i>	tell the truth when you don't really want to; tell someone everything
disoriented	<i>Adjective</i>	state of not knowing where you are, confused
	<i>Noun (singular)</i>	person that can't tell the truth, lies about anything
	<i>compulsive liar</i>	compulsive liar
frank	<i>Adjective</i>	used to say that someone is speaking or writing in a very direct and honest way

## The Weekend - Swim faster! (C0061)

- A: This is such a beautiful day! Great for sailing!
- B: It sure is! The water looks so nice! Anchor the boat for a little while. I'm going to take a dip.
- A: Why are you doggy-paddling? I taught you how to swim! Do your breast stroke!
- B: I get too tired! I'll just backstroke, it's easier!
- A: Try kicking your legs more. That's good. Don't go out too far!
- B: It's Jump in!
- A: Kathy! Get back here! I see a shark!

B: Ahhhh!!!! Help me! Help! Bring the boat closer!  
The shark is coming straight towards me!

A: It's right under you! Kathy!!!!

### Key Vocabulary

sail	<i>verb</i>	travel in a boat that is powered by wind
for a little while	<i>phrase</i>	for a short amount of time
a dip	<i>phrase</i>	a swim
doggy-paddle	<i>verb</i>	swim like a dog
breast stroke	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	way of swimming where the person moves the arms and legs in a half-circle in front of them; like a frog
backstroke	<i>verb</i>	swim on your back with arms moving up and down in a circle

**straight towards** to- *phrase* directly in the direction of something

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>swim suit</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	clothes you wear when you go swimming (AmE)
<b>swimming costume</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	clothes you wear when you go swimming (BrE)
<b>towel</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	piece of soft cloth you use to dry yourself after swimming or bathing
<b>tan</b>	<i>verb</i>	lie in the sun and try to make your skin more brown
<b>dive</b>	<i>verb</i>	jump into the water with your head first

## The Office - Job Interview II (C0062)

A: Thanks for coming in today, did you have any trouble finding us? Please take a seat.

B: Thank you.

A: So, let's get started; tell me a bit about your educational background.

B: Sure! Well, I graduated with honors from Chesterton University with a major in Business Administration, with a specialization in Information Management, and I minored in psychology. I chose this course of study for two reasons: I wanted to gain some practical, marketable skills, which the information management track provided, and I also feel that interpersonal skills are essential for professional success, hence the minor in psychology.

A: Interesting. And, your postgraduate studies?

B: Well, I am really passionate about consumer behavior, so I pursued a master's in that area. I also strive to keep my professional skills current, so I continuously attend seminars and conferences related management and customer service.

A: Very good. Now, tell me a little bit about your work experience. I see here that you previously worked at Oracle.

B: Yeah, I worked as their customer support manager, which brought me a breadth of experience in both client care, and process management. I supervised and coordinated the customer support team as well as implemented new strategies to achieve better customer satisfaction.

A: Interesting...

B: Yes, in this position I was able to make some pretty significant contributions to the overall success of the company. With the different initiatives that we implemented, we lowered our churn rate to about five percent, which had a direct impact on revenue.

### Key Vocabulary

educational background	<i>phrase</i>	the history of the education you've had
with honors	<i>phrase</i>	with special recognition for receiving very high marks
major	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the main field of study in an undergraduate degree
specialization	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a limited area of study
minor	<i>verb</i>	to have a secondary area of study in an undergraduate program

course study	<i>phrase</i>	the combination of courses taken in a degree program
track	<i>common noun, singular</i>	course of study
postgraduate	<i>Adjective</i>	masters or Ph.D; education above the bachelor's degree level
hence	<i>General Adverb</i>	for that reason
pursue	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	try to do something over a longer period of time
strive	<i>verb</i>	try hard to do something
breadth	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a wide range or scope of something
significant	<i>Adjective</i>	important and large enough to have a noticeable effect

contribution	<i>common noun, plural</i>	adding or giving something
--------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

tertiary education	<i>phrase</i>	university education
take initiative	<i>phrase</i>	take the chance to do something before others do
distinguish	<i>verb</i>	make something different in a special way
attribute	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a good quality or feature that someone has
scrutinize	<i>verb</i>	examine something in a careful and critical way

## The Office - Receptionist (C0063)

A: Good afternoon. May I help you?

B: Yes, I'm here to see Joanna Stevens. I have an appointment at four.

A: Certainly, may I take your name? I'll let her know you've arrived.

B: Sure, it's Josh O'Neil.

A: Ms. Stevens will be with you momentarily. Can I offer you something to drink?

B: Yes, a coffee would be nice, thank you.

A: Here you are. Ms. Stevens is ready for you now. I'll show you to her office, right this way.

A: Just watch your step here...

### Key Vocabulary

certainly	<i>General Adverb</i>	with out doubt; of course
may I take your name	<i>phrase</i>	polite way to ask for someone's name
let (someone) know	<i>phrase</i>	tell someone
momentarily	<i>General Adverb</i>	in a very short time
be ready for you	<i>phrase</i>	is prepared to meet with you
show (someone) to	<i>phrase</i>	show a person the way to a place
right this way	<i>phrase</i>	phrase you use to show someone the direction to walk

### Supplementary Vocabulary

administrative assistant	<i>common noun, singular</i>	secretary
lobby	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the waiting area of a building
front desk	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the desk at the entrance of a building where the receptionist sits
field calls	<i>phrase</i>	receive and direct phone calls
switchboard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a system used to connect phone calls to many different phone lines within a building

## Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You VI (C0064)

A: This is ridiculous! I can't believe you've been sleeping with someone else! How could you do this! You know what? I'm out of here!

B: Wait! Doctor how is this possible? I haven't cheated on my boyfriend!

C: I have something to confess... I'm sorry Veronica, I lied.

B: Wait... what? What do you mean?

C: I lied. You aren't even pregnant; there's no bun in the oven. I was just so overwhelmed with jealousy that I couldn't help myself. Veronica I love you!

B: What are you talking about!!! Who are you?

C: It's me! Daniel, don't you remember me? From high school. I sat behind you every day in class! I used to go to every football game and watch you in the cheerleading squad!

B: You are insane! We never even spoke! Why did you lie like that to my boyfriend?

C: Because Veronica... It's not fair! I love you; I have since the first day we met! Everything was going fine until that jerk came into the picture and ruined everything! I went to med school and became a doctor for you! You always said how you wanted to marry a doctor! You will be mine now... one way or another...

A: I heard everything, you lying bastard! Get your hands off her!

### Key Vocabulary

ruin

*principle*

destroy

*verb, past*

*simple*

bastard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an cruel or unkind person
jealousy	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a feeling of being supplanted; apprehensive of losing affection or position.
insane	<i>Adjective</i>	very crazy
overwhelmed	<i>Adjective</i>	state of being affected deeply in mind or emotion
bun in the oven	<i>phrase</i>	informal way of saying: pregnant
confess	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	to admit (a fault or crime)
ridiculous	<i>Adjective</i>	absurd, not logical

### Supplementary Vocabulary

eavesdrop	<i>verb</i>	listen to another person's conversation
split up with	<i>phrase</i>	end a relationship with

deceit	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	dishonest behavior
a home-wrecker	<i>phrase</i>	a person who has a relationship with a married man or a married woman
a fraud	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who is not who they seem; a person who lies
unfaithful	<i>Adjective</i>	to have a sexual relationship with someone who is not your husband, wife, boyfriend, or girlfriend

## The Office - Job Interview III (C0065)

A: Very good. Now, I have a couple of final questions.

B: I hope they're not too hard!

A: Well, why should we hire you?

B: I think that I would be a perfect fit in this company. I have a unique combination of strong technical acumen, and outstanding soft skills; you know, I excel at building strong, long-term customer relationships. For example, when I headed the customer support department in my previous company, our team solved about seventy percent of our customers' problems. I decided that we needed better information and technical preparation on our products, so after I implemented a series of training sessions in coordination with our technical department, we were able to solve ninety percent of our customers' issues. Given the opportunity, I could bring this kind of success to this company.

A: Impressive! So, what would you consider to be your greatest weakness?

B: To be honest, I struggle with organization and time management. Punctuality has never been a strength of mine. I find it hard to organize my time efficiently. I have actually addressed this weakness recently, by attending a workshop on efficient time management. It helped me a lot, by providing me with great insights on how to get organized and use my time efficiently, so I think I'm getting better now.

A: Great... Well, let me tell you that I am very pleased with this interview. We are short-listing our candidates this week, and next week we will inform our short listed candidates of the day and time for a second interview with our CEO.

B: Great, thanks a lot! I hope to hear from you! Good bye.

## Key Vocabulary

a perfect fit	<i>phrase</i>	the right person for the job
acumen	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the ability to think clearly and make good decisions
excel	<i>verb</i>	be superior to, among the best
head	<i>verb</i>	to be the leader of something
implement	<i>verb</i>	to make something active or effective
training session	<i>phrase</i>	a meeting where people acquire skills and knowledge about a subject
struggle	<i>verb</i>	have a difficult time
punctuality	<i>Adjective</i>	arriving or doing something at the expected or planned time
address	<i>verb</i>	to deal with (a matter, issue, problem, etc.)

short list	<i>verb</i>	to select a few candidates in order to make a final selection or decision
------------	-------------	---

### Supplementary Vocabulary

prospect	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone or something that is likely to succeed or to be chosen
CV	<i>common noun, singular</i>	curriculum vitae; a short document that describes your education, work experience, etc.
shortcoming	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a weakness that someone has
asset	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a valuable or beneficial thing or ability that a person has
triumph	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a great success or achievement a person has/ triumph

## The Office - Calling The Office (C0066)

A: Ello-hay, Aniel-day eaking-spay, ow-hay ay-may I elp-hay ou-yay

B: Ay-hay, Aniel-day, Ulie-jay ere-hay

A: Ay-hay, Ulie-jay, ow-hay are ou-yay?

B: Actually, I' m eeling-fay ite-quay ill otday-tay.

A: I' m orry-say oo-tay ear-hay, at-they. ut-way is ong-wray?

B: I ink-thay I' m oming-cay own-day ith-way uh-they oo-flay. I ave-hay a eadache-hay, a ore-say oat-thray and I' m eeling-fay ighly-slay everish-fay.

A: I ee-say. O-say ou' re-yay alling-cay in ick-say?

B: Es-yay, I uz-way oping-hay oo-tay ake-tay uh-they  
ay-day off oo-tay eecover-ray.

A: Ok, en-they. Ay-tray and et-gay ome-say est-ray.

### Key Vocabulary

### Supplementary Vocabulary

## The Weekend - Soccer (C0067)

A: Welcome back, soccer fans. My name is Rick Fields and, as always, I am joined by my commentating wingman, Bob Copeland.

B: And we're on the brink of soccer history today, as Ecuador and Brazil are tied one-one as we begin the second half of the 2022 World Cup!

A: The ref calls the players for the kick off, and here we go! Ecuador quickly passes the ball to the midfield, but, ohhh, it's out of bounds.

B: That will be a throw in for Brazil. Adriano has the ball and makes a long pass to Robinho, and the ref has called him offside.

A: No question about it. He was offside by a mile! We have a goal kick for Ecuador. Edison Mendez heads it to Valenica, he shoots! Deflected by the defender and we have a corner kick.

B: Delgado takes the corner. We have a foul! Oh no, Dida, the goalkeeper, has fouled the Ecuadorian player! He gets a yellow card and that will be a penalty kick!

A: This is the perfect opportunity for Ecuador to get ahead in this match and become World Champions! He gets ready for the kick. He shoots! and he...

### Key Vocabulary

wingman	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who provides help, support, or protection
on the brink	<i>phrase</i>	at a critical point
tied	<i>Adjective</i>	having the same score
kick off	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the first movement or kick of the ball to begin the game

throw in	<i>common noun, singular</i>	action of throwing the ball onto the field with your hands to restart the game
no question about it	<i>phrase</i>	there is no doubt, it is correct
by a mile	<i>phrase</i>	a lot
foul	<i>common noun, singular</i>	illegal action committed against a player
penalty kick	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a kick against only the goalkeeper as a reward for a foul
goal kick	<i>common noun, singular</i>	when the goalie kicks the ball to re-start play
corner kick	<i>common noun, singular</i>	when a player kicks the ball from a corner after a penalty
out of bounds	<i>phrase</i>	outside the area that is allowed for play

offside	<i>Adjective</i>	a position on the opponent's part of the field where you are not allowed to be
---------	------------------	--

## Supplementary Vocabulary

goalkeeper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who prevents the ball from going into the net (BrE)
defender	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who prevents the other team from getting near the net
match	<i>common noun, singular</i>	game (BrE) match
pitch	<i>common noun, singular</i>	soccer field (BrE) pitch
championship	<i>common noun, singular</i>	final game in a series that determines the overall winner

## The Office - Groundbreaking Research (C0068)

A: We've been over this a thousand times. The data is irrefutable! Look, we've done extensive research, built studies, and read the literature, and there is conclusive evidence to support my theory!

B: Horowitz, I beg to differ. Even in your most recent study, the investigative approach was flawed! You know as well as I do that the collection of data was not systematic, and there is a large margin of error. To draw a definitive conclusion based on that data would be misleading

A: That is preposterous!

B: You are trying to single-handedly solve one of the world's greatest mysteries, and yet you are oblivious to the fact that you are wrong!

A: I am not wrong! The chicken came first!

B: No! The egg came first!

### Key Vocabulary

definitive conclusion	<i>phrase</i>	a final judgment that is not able to be changed; that is final
single-handedly	<i>Adjective</i>	do something on your own, without help
investigative approach	<i>phrase</i>	way of looking for information
flawed	<i>Adjective</i>	having errors or mistake
preposterous	<i>Adjective</i>	crazy, foolish, or silly
oblivious to	<i>phrase</i>	unaware or don't know
extensive research	<i>phrase</i>	very full and complete study to find information
systematic	<i>Adjective</i>	using a careful system or method
irrefutable	<i>Adjective</i>	correct; not able to be proved wrong

## Supplementary Vocabulary

associated with	<i>phrase</i>	linked or connected with
circumstantial evidence	<i>phrase</i>	a collection of facts that implies or suggests something to be true, but does not prove it
indicate	<i>verb</i>	show something to be true
a compelling case	<i>phrase</i>	an argument that is ca- pable of making peo- ple believe that point of view
determine	<i>verb</i>	find out if something is true

## Daily Life - How Would You Like Your Eggs? (C0069)

A: Wow, you're up early today! What's for breakfast?

B: Well, I felt like baking, so I made some muffins.

A: Smells good! I'll make some coffee. Do you want me to make you some eggs?

B: Sure, I'll take mine, sunny side up.

A: Eww, I don't know how you can eat your eggs like that! Ever since I was small, I've had eggs and soldiers.

B: You know, my dad had scrambled eggs every morning for twenty years. It drove my mom crazy!

A: You know what really drives me crazy? When I ask for soft boiled eggs, and they overcook them, so they come out hard boiled! How can you dip your toast into a hard boiled egg?

B: You're so picky sometimes.

A: Here you go, honey, fried eggs.

B: Dammit! I asked for sunny side up! How many times do I have to tell you.

## Key Vocabulary

bake		cook in the oven
muffin	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a small break or cake people usually eat for breakfast
sunny-side up	<i>phrase</i>	with egg fried on only one side

eggs and soldiers	<i>phrase</i>	soft-boiled eggs with strips of buttered toast on it which people usually eat for breakfast
scrambled eggs	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a way of cooking eggs by mixing them in a pan
soft boiled egg	<i>phrase</i>	eggs cooked in the shell so the yellow part is still soft and wet
hard boiled egg	<i>phrase</i>	egg cooked in the shell until the inside becomes solid
picky	<i>Adjective</i>	too careful at selecting things and usually hard to please
egg	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the egg of a bird (especially a chicken or a duck) people usually eat as food

## Supplementary Vocabulary

hen	<i>common noun, singular</i>	female chicken
over-easy	<i>Adjective</i>	an egg fried on both sides; cooked so the yolk is still soft
	<i>common noun, singular</i>	eggs mixed, then cooked, and then folded in half;
yolk	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the yellow part of the egg
egg white	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the white part of the egg
frying pan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large, flat pot used for cooking eggs and other things

## Advanced Media - Buying Underwear (F0070)

A: This sucks; I hate buying lingerie. Okay, just find something and get out of here. Alright, these are fine. Oh, no, don't come over here, don't come over here.

B: You look a little lost, can I help you?

A: Um, I'm just having a look around. It's my girl-friend's birthday tomorrow. I'm trying to find her something.

B: Well, you can't give her granny panties. Have you thought about getting her some sleepwear? We've got these lovely, silky nighties. Or, how about a nice panty-and-and-bra set. Look, here's a nice satin push-up bra, and you can choose a few different styles of undies to go with it.

A: Sure that's fine.

A: This is so awkward...what ones do I pick? What size is she?

B: Well, do you want a thong, some bikini briefs, maybe this nice pair of lacy boy shorts?

A: Just pick something and get the hell out of here.

A: Um, I'll go with these two.

A: This is mortifying; I just want to get this over with. She better thank me for this...

Here you are, sir. I'm sure she'll enjoy them.

B: Finally!

A: I'm sorry, sir. I'm going to have to take a look inside your bag.

## Key Vocabulary

mortifying	<i>Adjective</i>	extremely embarrassing
boy shorts	<i>common noun, plural</i>	women's underwear that looks like little, tight shorts
bikini briefs	<i>common noun, singular</i>	women's underwear worn on the lower part of the body
undies	<i>common noun, plural</i>	informal way of saying underwear
push-up bra	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a bra that raises the breasts so as to add additional size through padding
nighties	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a night dress, night gown
get out of here	<i>phrase</i>	leave this place

<b>sleepwear</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	clothes you use for sleeping
<b>lingerie</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	women's underwear
<b>panties</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	women's underwear
<b>bra</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	clothes a women wears to support her breasts

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>going commando</b>	<i>phrase</i>	term used to describe when a person is not wearing any underwear
<b>briefs</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	normal or traditional underwear for men, similar to the shape and size of panties
<b>boxer shorts</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	type of underwear that men use which are similar to shorts

corset	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a garment worn under the clothing used to mold and shape the torso into a desired shape for aesthetic or medical purposes
knickers	<i>common noun, plural</i>	BrE. same as panties

## The Weekend - Happy Hour (C0071)

A: Hey man, what do you have on tap?

B: Heineken and Budweiser. We have a two-for-one happy hour special.

A: Cool, gimme a pint of Heineken and half a pint of Bud.

B: Okay...A pint of Heineken and and half a pint of bud for table six! And what about some appetizers?

A: Sure! Let's have some nachos and mozzarella sticks.

B: Okay. That'll be 80 bucks.

A: Wait... What!

## Key Vocabulary

buck	<i>common noun, plural</i>	dollar (informal)
	<i>phrase</i>	fried Italian cheese
nachos	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a dish with tortilla chips and melted cheese cooked together
appetizer	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a small dish served before meal
pint	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a measuring unit which is equal to 0.473 litres
special	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a sale; a special price
happy hour	<i>phrase</i>	a period of time at a bar when drinks are sold cheaper than usual

two-for-one	<i>phrase</i>	buy one and take one free
on tap	<i>phrase</i>	beer served from a barrel; not in a bottle or can

### Supplementary Vocabulary

drinks list	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a menu or list of drinks served in a restaurant or bar
	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a relaxed, casual bar where beer is served
	<i>common noun, singular</i>	alcoholic drink made from one or more liqueur and other ingredients
liqueur	<i>common noun, singular</i>	strong alcohol drink such as gin, rum, vodka, etc
bar stool	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a chair with no back used for sitting on at a bar

## Intermediate - You Are Fired! (C0072)

A: Hi Isabel! You wanted to see me?

B: Yes Anthony, come on in. Have a seat.

A: Is everything okay? You seem a bit preoccupied.

B: Well, Anthony, this is not going to be an easy conversation. The company has made some decisions which will have a direct impact on your employment.

A: Okay...

B: I don't want to beat around the bush so I'm just gonna come out with it. We are going to have to let you go.

A: What? Why? I mean... just like that? I'm fired?

B: I'm sorry but, to be honest, you are a terrible employee!

A: What! I resent that!

B: Anthony, you were caught making international calls from the office phone, you called in sick in eight times this month and you smell like alcohol!

### Key Vocabulary

preoccupied	<i>Adjective</i>	worried; thinking about something else
direct	<i>Adjective</i>	connected to, related to
impact	<i>common noun, singular</i>	strong influence or effect
beat around the bush	<i>phrase</i>	avoid saying something by talking about other things

come out with it	<i>phrase</i>	say something directly
let (someone) go	<i>phrase</i>	have someone fired or dismissed
to be honest	<i>phrase</i>	used to say something directly
resent	<i>phrase</i>	find something very insulting
call in sick	<i>verb</i>	call the office to say you can't come to work because you're sick

### Supplementary Vocabulary

severance package	<i>phrase</i>	money or benefits you give someone when they are fired
lay off	<i>verb</i>	end an employment because of business reasons, not performance
layoffs	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the action of ending employment because of business reasons



dismissal	let- ter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a letter written to tell an employee he is fired
terminate		<i>verb</i>	end the employment of a person; fire

## Daily Life - Which Finger? (C0073)

A: ...The rings please. May this ring be blessed so he who gives it and she who wears it may abide in peace, and continue in love until life's end.

B: With this ring I thee wed. Wear it as a symbol of our love and commitment

A: Honey, that's my pinkie. The ring goes on the ring finger!

B: This one?

A: That's my index finger!

B: Oh, right. This one, right?

A: Umm... that's the thumb, Nick.

B: Okay, Okay, I got it! This is the ring finger!

A: That's my middle finger, Nick. This is my ring finger!

### Key Vocabulary

bless	<i>verb</i>	give good wishes to something or someone
abide	<i>verb</i>	live
thee	<i>Pronoun, singular</i>	you (old use or formal use )
wed	<i>verb</i>	get married (old use or formal use )
symbol	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that represents a certain idea
pinkie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	little finger

index finger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the finger beside the thumb
thumb	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the short, thick finger on the side of a hand
middle finger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the finger which is in the middle of five
ring finger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the finger between middle finger and little finger

### Supplementary Vocabulary

wedding band	<i>common noun, singular</i>	ring you receive when you get married
toe	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the fingers on the feet
baby finger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	smallest finger on your hand; synonym for pinkie

engagement ring	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a ring a man gives to his girlfriend when he asks her to marry him
finger nail	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the hard part at the end of your finger that keeps growing

## Daily Life - What Am I Thinking! (C0074)

A: Miss, your salad.

B: Mmm, looks good! I'm positively famished.

A: And for you, sir...

C: Thank you.

A: Enjoy.

B,C: Thank you.

C: I can't believe she's on a date with me! I'm so lucky! I must be the luckiest guy in the world! I want to scream at the top of my lungs, "I'm the luckiest dude in the world!" Oh, shut up! Don't be such a dumb ass. She's so hot. Wait, I can't say that. That's sexist. She's so hot, She's making me sexist. Oh my god! I'm such a tool. Okay, get it together. Uhh, she's eating salad. Oh right, I have a salad. Oh, crap! Which fork do I use? Dammit! She's going to think I'm a moron. What the hell are all these forks for? Which one did she use? Okay, chill... be cool, be cool. Just take a fork... eat your salad...

B: Um... I...

C: Yrmf? Mmmm. Sorry, you were saying?

B: You're eating my salad.

C: Oh, yes... it's delicious...

## Key Vocabulary

salad	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a dish made of raw vegetables
positively	<i>General Adverb</i>	truly
famished	<i>Adjective</i>	very hungry
at the top of one's lungs	<i>phrase</i>	to be as loud as possible
dumbass	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an impolite way of calling someone foolish
sexy	<i>Adjective</i>	sexy to the greatest degree
tool	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who is stupid or useless
get it together	<i>phrase</i>	control your emotions
crap	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	an impolite way of saying something is bad

moron	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who is very stupid
chill	<i>verb</i>	calm down; relax

### Supplementary Vocabulary

feminism	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the belief that men and women should have equal rights and opportunities
blind date	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a romantic outing with someone that you have not met before
spaz	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who is very clumsy or awkward
first impression	<i>phrase</i>	the way people see or perceive you the first time you meet
blow it	<i>phrase</i>	to miss an opportunity or chance

## Daily Life - Going To The Dentist (C0075)

A: Hey, Gary, great to see you again. Please have a seat. So tell me, what seems to be the problem?

B: Thanks, doc. I've got a really bad toothache! I can't eat anything, and look, my face is all swollen. I think it might be my wisdom tooth.

A: Well, let's have a look. Open wide. Hmm... this doesn't look good. Well, it looks like you have a cavity and your crown is loose. We'll need to put in a filling before it gets any worse, and the crown probably needs to be refitted. I'm going to order some x-rays.

B: Is it gonna hurt?

A: No, not at all! Just lay back and relax.

A: Ok, spit.

## Key Vocabulary

have a seat	<i>phrase</i>	sit down
toothache	<i>common noun, singular</i>	tooth pain
swollen	<i>Adjective</i>	some parts are bigger than others due to a certain disease
wisdom tooth	<i>common noun, singular</i>	big tooth at the back of your mouth which grows in one's adulthood
have a look	<i>phrase</i>	take a glance
cavity	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a hole in a tooth
crown	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the part of the tooth which can be seen

<b>filling</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that fills the hole of the tooth
<b>x-rays</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a medical examination that takes a picture of your bones

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>floss</b>	<i>verb</i>	to use a thin thread or string to clean between your teeth
<b>mouthwash</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a liquid that is used to clean your mouth and teeth and to make your breath smell better
<b>gingivitis</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a disease in which the gums become red, swollen, and sore
<b>plaque</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a thin coating that forms on teeth and contains bacteria
<b>dog breath</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	used to describe when somebody has very bad breath



## Daily Life - Learning Simple Math (C0076)

A: Alright, children, let's review. Tommy! Pay attention!

B: Sorry Miss Kadlec.

A: Okay, Crystal, now tell me, what's four plus eleven?

C: Um...fifteen!

B: Miss Kadlec always asks Crystal; she's such a teacher's pet.

A: Okay...and what about fifty six minus sixty?

C: Um... negative four!

A: Very good... twelve times twelve?

B: Very good. Suck up.

C: One hundred and forty four!

A: Zero divided by one?

C: Zero!

A: How did you know that? Okay, smarty pants, the square root of two!

B: Bet you're not going to get that one, know-it-all.

C: Um...one point four one four two one three five...

## Key Vocabulary

review	<i>verb</i>	go over what have been learned
plus	<i>Preposition</i>	add (+)
teacher's pet	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the student a teacher likes best
minus	<i>Preposition</i>	take away; subtract (-)
times	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	multiply; (x)
suck up	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who always tries to make the teacher or boss like him or her
divided by	<i>verb</i>	separate to some parts
smarty pants	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a person who tries to show he is so smart

square root	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the number got when a number is multiplied by itself
I'll bet	<i>phrase</i>	I think something is likely to happen
know-it-all	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the person claims or pretends to know everything

### Supplementary Vocabulary

equation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a math problem where each side is equal ( $3+6=9$ )
operation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mathematical process such as +, x, -, etc.
multiplication	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the process of adding a number to itself a certain number of times
addition	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the process of adding two numbers together

subtraction	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the process of taking one number away from another
division	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the process of dividing something into parts

## The Weekend - F1 Racing (C0077)

A: Welcome back racing fans! My name is Rick Fields and, as always, I am joined by my partner in crime, Bob Copeland.

B: We're in the last stretch of this very exciting race, and Kimi Rikknen is leading the pack with only four laps to go! They are heading to turn three and Lewis Hamilton tries to pass Rikknen! It's a close one and, oh no! Hamilton hits the wall!

A: He came in too fast, jammed on the breaks and spun out. We have a yellow flag and the pace car is making its way onto the track.

B: The cleanup crew is towing the heavily damaged car and the green flag drops! Rikknen is still in the lead with only two laps to go!

A: Smoke is coming out of his car! He seems to be having engine trouble! He makes his way into the pit, and Fernando Alonso takes the lead!

B: How unlucky for Rikknen, and this race is over ladies and gentlemen, Alonso takes the checkered flag!

### Key Vocabulary

partner	in	<i>phrase</i>	a person you always do things together with
crime			
stretch		<i>common noun, singular</i>	the final time period
to go		<i>phrase</i>	left to complete
jam on the breaks		<i>phrase</i>	to hit or step on the breaks quickly and forcefully
spin out		<i>phrase</i>	(a car) slides and makes a turn rapidly in an uncontrolled way

pace car	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the car used when accidents happen which leads other cars but is not a competitor in the race
yellow flag	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the sign use in F1 race to show there is an accident on the track
cleanup crew	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the group of people who clean the track
green flag	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the sign used in an F1 race to show that the race is back to the normal state
take the lead	<i>phrase</i>	be in the first position
checkered flag	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a flag with black and white squares showing someone has won

## Supplementary Vocabulary

rev	<i>verb</i>	cause an engine to run very quickly
-----	-------------	-------------------------------------

<b>title</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the status of winning a championship in a sport
<b>aerodynamic</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	the quality of moving easily through the air
<b>motorhead</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who loves cars and car racing (Am.E)
<b>qualifying round</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the race that determines who will be able to participate in the main race
<b>pole position</b>	<i>phrase</i>	the front position in a car race

## The Weekend - International Workers Day (C0078)

A: Alright everyone settle down. Let's get started. As you know, an important aspect of becoming a good citizen is understanding the genesis of our legal system. It is not enough to simply memorize our laws, it is necessary that we comprehend why and how they were formed. This brings me to our topic for today. Does anyone know what we celebrate on May first?

B: Cinco de mayo?

A: No, that's May fifth in Spanish, James, no wonder you are failing my Spanish class. No, May first is International Workers' Day.

B: Do we get a day off from school then?

A: No! It is not considered to be a national holiday here in the US, but in other countries it is.

B: Aww, man!

A: In the nineteenth century, working conditions were appalling, with workers being forced to work ten, twelve, and fourteen hours a day. Support for the eight-hour work day movement was growing rapidly, despite the indifference and hostility of many union leaders, and by April 1886, 250,000 workers were involved in the May Day movement. Previous legislative attempts to improve working conditions had failed, so labor organizers took drastic measures. They passed a resolution stating that eight hours would constitute a legal day's work. And, on May First 1886, the resolution took effect.

B: Cool! Is that why we only work eight hours now?

A: Yes! But the happy ending came at a high price. On May third, 1886, police fired into a crowd of strikers at the McCormick Reaper Works Factory, killing four and wounding many. A mass meeting was called for the next day to protest the brutality.

B: And then what happened?

A: Well, as we say, the rest is history...

### Key Vocabulary

national holiday	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The day that all people in a country will be on holiday
comprehend	<i>verb</i>	understand deeply
settle down	<i>phrase</i>	relax, become calm
aspect	<i>common noun, singular</i>	part
genesis	<i>common noun, singular</i>	origin; beginning
appalling	<i>Adjective</i>	terrible, horrible, shocking
indifference	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	showing no interest in

hostility	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the attitude of treating something as enemy
legislative	<i>Adjective</i>	relating to legal system
drastic	<i>Adjective</i>	sudden and severe
resolution	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a formal document stating the wishes of a group
constitute	<i>verb</i>	form, consist
brutality	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	violent treatment or behavior
fire into	<i>phrase</i>	shoot guns into a place

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<i>phrase</i>	describing an event that is done to honor and remember a person or event in history/ in commemoration of
---------------	--

proletariat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the lowest socioeconomic class; workers
rally	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a public meeting of a large group of people to support or oppose something
proclamation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an official statement made by a person who has power
memorial	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something like a statue, built to remember a person or event from history

## The Weekend - Funky Galaxy Battles (C0079)

- A: They are breaking through! Set your blasters to full power!
- B: Excellent job. Search the ship, she's gotta be in here somewhere... bring her to me!
- C: Lord Hater, we have a survivor here...
- B: Where is she? Don't make me destroy you, tell me where she is!
- D: Not so fast! She will no longer be your prisoner! It's time you and I settled this once and for all!
- B: You are unwise to think you can defeat me. You know nothing of the power of the obscure side!
- D: We will stop you...

C: Lord Hater! We have an unidentified spacecraft taking off from the rear dock! They somehow managed to escape our tractor beam!

B: After them!

C: They are accelerating towards the speed of light  
We lost them, sir...

### Key Vocabulary

break through	<i>phrase</i>	get through by force
blaster	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the parts of a spaceship that are used for emitting bombs
settle	<i>verb</i>	finish, end
once and for all	<i>phrase</i>	forever
unwise	<i>Adjective</i>	not wise, silly

manage	<i>verb</i>	be able to do
tractor beam	<i>phrase</i>	a device used for attracting one project to another from a distance
speed of light	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the rate at which light travels. 299 792 458 meters per second

### Supplementary Vocabulary

android	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a robot that looks like a person
galaxy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	any one of the very large groups of stars that make up the universe
constellation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a group of celestial bodies (usually stars) that appear to form a pattern in the sky or appear visibly related to each other.

parsec	<i>common noun, singular</i>	is a unit of length, equal to just under 31 trillion kilometres or about 3.26 light-years
light-year	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the distance traveled in one year traveling at the speed of light

## Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You VII (c0080)

A: Thank god you showed up when you did! He's insane! Do you think we should call the police?

B: Don't worry about it, I'll call my friend and have him take care of it. I can't believe he was stalking you all these years. What a nut job!

A: I know! Well... he said I'm not pregnant. I'm sorry if I got you all worked up over nothing. I want you to know that I didn't do it on purpose...

B: Don't apologize! From the moment I met you, not a day has gone by when I haven't thought of you. And now that I'm with you again, I'm... I'm just scared, Veronica. The closer I get to you, the worse it gets. The thought of not being with you, I mean, I just can't handle it! We were made for each other, Veronica. You are my everything, my soul mate. What can I do?

A: Just hold me... I'll always be here for you, no matter what. And together, we can tackle whatever life throws at us. I believe in us, Veronica.

B: I'm so happy to hear that! I knew we belong together. I love you so much.

### Key Vocabulary

tackle	<i>verb</i>	deal with something that is difficult
no matter what	<i>phrase</i>	despite of anything may happen
soul mate	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a close friend who has a deep understanding of you
not a day goes by	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to show you always do something
on purpose	<i>phrase</i>	with intention
get worked up	<i>phrase</i>	angry, excited, or upset about something

nut job	<i>phrase</i>	crazy person (informal)
stalk	<i>verb</i>	follow and watch a person (usually dangerous)
show up	<i>phrase</i>	appear; come to a place
insane	<i>Adjective</i>	crazy, not normal

### Supplementary Vocabulary

stalker	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who follows someone for a long period of time in a way that is dangerous
perpetrator	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who commits a crime
threaten	<i>verb</i>	say that you will do something to hurt or cause harm to a person
harass	<i>verb</i>	to annoy or bother someone many times
insanity	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	severe mental illness; the state of being crazy

## Daily Life - Getting A Hair Cut (C0081)

A: Hello there! Come on in! Don't just stand there!  
Come and take a seat!

B: Um, okay. Well, I just want a trim. Nothing too fancy.

A: Oh my gosh! Your hair is amazing! So silky, so shiny! I am going to work my magic on your hair! You hear me? You are going to look like a million bucks!

B: Okay. Um... can you make sure my sideburns are even and you just take a little off the top.

A: Don't you worry, I'll take care of everything! (starts cutting) Oh my god! I just love your curly hair! It's so fluffy and cute! You should totally let it grow out. An afro would look great on you!

B: Um... no.

A: Okay, but you are going to be my masterpiece!

### Key Vocabulary

Don't just stand there	<i>phrase</i>	Do something. An action is required
take a seat	<i>phrase</i>	choose a place to sit
trim	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a short cut of hair to make one look clean
fancy	<i>Adjective</i>	very fashionable
silky	<i>Adjective</i>	resembling silk, very smooth
shiny	<i>Adjective</i>	having a smooth and bright appearance
a million bucks	<i>phrase</i>	Very good. To look great
sideburns	<i>common noun, plural</i>	hair that grows on the sides of man

curly	<i>Adjective</i>	hair in form of round shape
fluffy	<i>Adjective</i>	soft
grow out	<i>phrase</i>	grow long
afro	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a kind of hairstyle which very curly hair is formed into round ball

### Supplementary Vocabulary

buzz cut	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a type of hairstyle where the hair is cut very short with an electric razor
Mohawk	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a hairstyle which consists of shaving both sides of the head, leaving a strip of noticeably longer hair on top
flat top	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a type of hairstyle where the hair on top is left a bit long and styled upwards, resulting in square looking haircut

pony tail	<i>common noun, singular</i>	in which most or all of the hair on the head is pulled away from the face, gathered and secured at the back of the head with a hair tie or clip and allowed to hang freely from that point
braid	<i>common noun, singular</i>	formed by intertwining three or more strands of hair so that the result is similar to a woven textile.

## Daily Life - New Guy In Town V (c0082)

A: What the heck is going on! Did you see that? What was that thing?

B: I don't know! I'm just glad we made it out! Look, there is a police car! Help! Help! Please stop!

C: Howdy man. What seems to be the problem? Is this man bothering you?

A: Officer, officer, there is, like, a witch creature back there! We tied her up but she broke free, and she was about to have us for dinner!

C: Okay, calm down, calm down. Lemme see your eyes please. Have you been drinking tonight, son?

B: We are telling the truth! She's in there! We suspected her of being a kidnapper or rapist but it turns out she's an alien or something.

C: Okay, calm down, calm down. Lemme see your eyes please...

B: Ugg! Seriously! Are you gonna help us or not?

C: Okay, let's go have a look, shall we? Hello? Is anyone in here?

A: Be careful! She might be hiding!

C: It's perfectly safe... there isn't anyone...

### Key Vocabulary

heck	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	hell in a more polite form
make it out	<i>phrase</i>	able to escape or flee

creature	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a living thing
break free	<i>phrase</i>	get out of something
lemme	<i>Contraction</i>	let me
suspect	<i>verb</i>	regard someone as a criminal or to be guilty
kidnapper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the kind of criminal that catches someone and asks the family for money
rapist	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the kind of criminal who forces someone to have sex
have a look	<i>phrase</i>	take a glance

### Supplementary Vocabulary

larceny	<i>common noun, singular</i>	act of stealing something
---------	------------------------------	---------------------------

<b>homicide</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of killing another person
<b>wanna</b>	<i>Contraction</i>	want to
<b>gonna</b>	<i>Contraction</i>	going to
<b>DUI</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	abbreviation for Driving Under the Influence. To drive while being intoxicated

## Daily Life - Using The ATM (C0083)

A: Stupid girl, making me spend so much money, now I have to get it from the ATM...

B: Hello, welcome to Universal Bank. Please insert your card into the slot.

A: I know where to put my card! Stupid machine, talking to me like I'm an idiot...

B: Please input your 6 digit PIN code followed by the pound key. Thank you. Please select an option. Thank you. You have selected withdrawal.

A: Yeah, yeah, I know what I selected. Just gimme my money!

B: Please type the amount you would like to withdraw. Thank you, you want to transfer 10000 USD to the World Wildlife Foundation. If this is correct please press 1.

A: No, no! Stupid machine, what are you doing! No!

B: Confirmed. Thank you for using our bank! Please remove your card from the slot. Goodbye!

C: Danger, danger! The exits have been sealed and the doors will remain locked in until the local authorities arrive. Thank you for using our bank. Have a nice day.

A: No!

### Key Vocabulary

ATM

a machine outside a bank which people use to get money from their account

insert

*verb*

put something into something

slot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a narrow place to put in a card or paper
PIN	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	personal identity number
pound key	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the pushbutton marked with #
withdrawal	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the action of getting money from account
withdraw	<i>verb</i>	get money from account
transfer	<i>verb</i>	to move money from your account into others'
authority	<i>common noun, plural</i>	government organization which keeps the order of certain place

## Supplementary Vocabulary

deposit	<i>verb</i>	to put money into a bank account
---------	-------------	----------------------------------

fund	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an amount of money that is used for a special purpose
safe	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a strong metal box with a lock that is used to store money or valuable things
balance	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of money that is left in your bank account
inquiry	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a request for information

## Daily Life - At The Pharmacy (C0084)

A: Hello sir, how can I help you?

B: Yes, I need this prescription please.

A: Let's see. Okay, so 50 mg of Prozac, would you prefer this in capsule or tablet?

B: Capsules are fine.

A: Okay, you should take 1 capsule 3 times a day. Be sure not to take it on an empty stomach, and also, don't ever mix it with alcohol!

B: Yes, I know. It's not the first time I'm taking this! Don't worry, I won't overdose!

A: Okay, anything else I can get you?

B: Oh, yes, I almost forgot! Can I also get some eye drops and um, some condoms?

A: Sure. Darn condoms aren't registered in our system.

B: Oh, well that's okay, I'll get some later, thanks... Really it's no problem.

A: Just hang on there a sec. Can I get a price check on "Fun Times Ribbed Condoms" please!

## Key Vocabulary

prescription	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a list of drugs written by doctor
--------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------------

milligram	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a unit for measuring weight
-----------	----------------------------	-----------------------------

<b>capsule</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	(drug) contained in a plastic container
<b>tablet</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	(drug) formed in round hard shape
<b>overdose</b>	<i>verb</i>	take more drugs than suggested
<b>eye drop</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	liquid used to drop into eyes to treat eye diseases
<b>hang on</b>	<i>phrase</i>	hold on
<b>get a price check</b>	<i>phrase</i>	type in the number of something to check it's price

## Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>syringe</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device made of a hollow tube and a needle that is used to force fluids into or take fluids out of the body
----------------	------------------------------	--

cough syrup	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a usually sweet liquid that contains medicine used to stop coughing —called also cough medicine
bandage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a covering (such as a strip of cloth) that protects or supports part of the body that has been hurt
hydrogen peroxide	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a liquid that is used to make things lighter in color or to kill bacteria
ointment	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a smooth substance that is rubbed on the skin to help heal a wound or to reduce pain or discomfort

## The Weekend - Baseball (c0085)

A: Hello baseball fans, and welcome back to today's game! My name is Rick Fields and of course, I am here, once again, with the man that seals the deal, Bob Copeland.

B: It's a beautiful day to see two world class teams face each other and fight for their right to be called champions.

A: Well, the national anthem has just been sung, and the umpire has started the game. It's time to play ball!

B: Roger Vargas is up at bat. The pitcher winds up and strike one!

A: A very nice curve ball by the pitcher. The catcher gives him the sign, he winds up and Vargas gets a line drive!

B: The players are scrambling to get the ball. Vargas gets to first base and he's still going! The outfielder throws it to second! Vargas slides! He's safe!

A: Great play!

B: We have a runner on third and up at bat is Brian Okami! There's the pitch, he hits it! It's going, going, that ball is gone!

A: Home run by Okami! That puts this team ahead by two as we are at the bottom of the fifth inning here at Richie Stadium!

## Key Vocabulary

world class	<i>Adjective</i>	ranking with the best in the whole world
national an- them	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the song that represents a country and is played in ceremonies

umpire	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who controls and judges a baseball game
up at bat	<i>phrase</i>	get ready to hit the ball
wind up	<i>phrase</i>	get the energy to throw the ball
curve ball	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a ball thrown on a curve (i.e. not straight) that is hard to hit
pitcher	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the player who throws the ball to the batter
catcher	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the player behind home plate who catches the ball without being hit
line drive	<i>phrase</i>	a hit that travels low along the baseline
scramble	<i>verb</i>	do something quickly and in a disorganized way

outfielder	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a player who plays in the area that is relatively far from the pitch
safe	<i>Adjective</i>	successfully gets to the base
home run	<i>phrase</i>	a hit that strikes the ball out of the field
inning	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a set of baseball containing a turn at bat and a turn in field for each side

### Supplementary Vocabulary

up to bat	<i>phrase</i>	the next in line to do something
ballpark figure	<i>phrase</i>	an approximate number
hit it out of the park	<i>phrase</i>	to do something very well, or very successfully
off the bat	<i>phrase</i>	immediately, with out delay



Learn English on your Terms

screwball

*common*

an unusual, crazy, or ec-

*noun, singular*

centric person

## Daily Life - Looking for an Apartment (C0086)

A: Hi! We are the Christianson's! We are here to see the apartment.

B: Oh, hi! Sure, come on in! Well, as you can see, the place has just been renovated. The previous tenants left a huge mess here, so the landlord has redone everything.

A: It looks great. It's so bright and airy! What great light! I really like these hardwood floors. What's the square footage of this place?

B: Well, it's about 120 square meters, or 1300 square feet, more or less. Oh, the landlord has also installed new kitchen appliances. There's a new dishwasher, and a professional-grade gas range. Really, at this price, this place is an amazing deal!

A: I love it! But what are the payment terms?

B: First and last month rent as deposit and rent is due on the 1st of every month. Considering the amount of money invested into the apartment, it's a very good deal!

A: Yes, it is! Too good to be true...

B: The living room and dinning room are quite spacious as you can see, and down this hall, here's the master bedroom. It has a huge walk-in closet and an en suit bathroom. We can't go in there yet as the police... I mean the clean up crew hasn't finished.

A: What do you mean? What's in here?

### Key Vocabulary

come on in                    *phrase*                    please come in

tenant                    *common noun, plural*                    the person that rents a house

<b>mess</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	disorder, unorganized
<b>landlord</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the owner of the apartment
<b>airy</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	spacious so that air moves freely
<b>square footage</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	showing how big one space is measured in feet
<b>appliance</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	electric equipment found in a house
<b>professional-grade</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	good enough to satisfy professional use
<b>gas range</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a stove that uses gas to cook
<b>spacious</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	large; having lots of space

walk-in closet	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a room contained in a bedroom for storing clothes
en suite bathroom	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a bathroom within the main bedroom

### Supplementary Vocabulary

attic	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a room or space that is just below the roof of a building and that is often used to store things
basement	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the part of a building that is entirely or partly below the ground
lawn	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an area of ground (such as the ground around a house or in a garden or park) that is covered with short grass
real estate	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the business of selling land and buildings



Learn English on your Terms

**lease**

*verb*

to allow someone to use  
(something) for a pe-  
riod of time in return  
for payment

## The Weekend - Star Trek The Lost Generation (C0087)

A: Captain, we're under attack by an unidentified ship.

B: Damage report.

A: We've sustained heavy damage to the engines. We've lost our warp drive.

B: We'll have to attempt to make contact. This is Captain Picard of the Starship Enterprise. We don't wish to engage. What is the nature of this attack?

C: I am Captain Kor of the ship Kloths. Your ship attacked our search party...

B: No! You're not doing it right! Kor doesn't sound like that. His voice is deeper!

C: I am Captain Kor of the ship Klothos. Your sh...

B: No! If you can't do a Klingon voice, I'll have to find a more serious Star Trek fan actor who actually can, OK?

C: But... but... I already bought the Klingon suit! And the wig...

### Key Vocabulary

under attack	<i>phrase</i>	being attacked
unidentified	<i>Adjective</i>	not known, having no identity
sustain	<i>verb</i>	to experience or suffer
warp drive	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the engine system used by a spacecraft to travel faster than the speed of light
engage	<i>verb</i>	to start fighting

nature	<i>common noun, singular</i>	basic reason
search party	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an organized group of people sent to look for someone or something that is missing or lost
deep voice	<i>Adjective</i>	Low in pitch; resonant
wig	<i>common noun, singular</i>	artificial hair

### Supplementary Vocabulary

phaser	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a fictitious, futuristic weapon that can stun or kill an enemy
bridge	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the central point of the ship where the captain commands and orders are taken
holodeck	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a virtual reality simulation room where places and scenarios can be loaded



Learn English on your Terms

beam up	<i>verb</i>	the action of transporting a person immediately from one place to another in less than a second
ensign	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a member of the crew with the lowest rank

## Daily Life - Will You Be My Girlfriend? (C0088)

A: Hey, you're early! Where's everyone?

B: Well... I told them not to come. I made a reservation just for the two of us. I thought we could have an quiet evening all to ourselves.

A: Oh... why?

B: Jennifer, there's something I wanna ask you.

A: Sure. What is it?

B: Hmm... okay, here's the thing. I've always seen you as more than just a friend, and I can't take it any more. I know you better than anyone, I know the pros and cons of your personality, I even know what side of the bed is yours! I think we would be great together, don't you?

A: Are you serious? We've been friends for years!  
We can't just change that overnight!

B: I know! I never had the guts to tell you... until today. So, what do you say? Are you willing to give me a shot?

A: I... I...

### Key Vocabulary

two of us	<i>phrase</i>	you and me
all to our selves	<i>phrase</i>	just for us and no one else
here is the thing	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to begin explaining a situation or problem
pros and cons	<i>phrase</i>	good things and bad things about a person

guts	<i>common noun, plural</i>	courage, brave
give (someone) a shot	<i>phrase</i>	to let someone have a try

### Supplementary Vocabulary

going out	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to indicate that you are dating someone
get with	<i>verb</i>	to become someone's boyfriend/girlfriend
ask out	<i>verb</i>	to ask someone to join you on a romantic date
intimate	<i>Adjective</i>	having a very close relationship; very warm and friendly
make-out	<i>verb</i>	to kiss

## Daily Life - At The Airport (C0089)

A: Next please! Hello sir, may I see your passport please?

B: Yes, here you go.

A: Will you be checking any bags.

B: Yes, I'd like to check three pieces.

A: I'm sorry, sir. Airline policy allows only two pieces of checked luggage, at twenty kilograms each, plus one piece of carry-on luggage. I will have to charge you extra for the additional suitcase.

B: What? Why! I am taking an intercontinental flight! I'm flying sixteen thousand kms! How am I supposed to only take two, twenty kilo bags? That's absurd!

A: I am sorry, sir, there's nothing I can do. You cannot board the flight with that large bag either. Carry-on bags must fit in the over-head compartment or under your seat. That bag is clearly too big.

B: Now I see. You charge next to nothing for an international ticket, but when it comes to charging for any other small thing, you charge an arm and a leg! So tell me, miss, how much will I have to pay for all of this.

A: Let's see... six hundred and twenty-five US dollars.

B: That's more than my round-trip ticket!

### Key Vocabulary

next to nothing      *phrase*      very cheap, inexpensive

board      *verb*      get on the plane

intercontinental	<i>Adjective</i>	between continents
carry-on luggage	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the bags that one can carry onto the plane
piece	<i>common noun, plural</i>	piece of luggage; one bag
check	<i>verb</i>	register bags with the airline and give them to be put on the plane
passport	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a document showing the identity of someone when outside his country
an arm and a leg	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to indicate that something is very expensive

## Supplementary Vocabulary

metal detector	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A device that senses the presence of metal
----------------	------------------------------	--

boarding pass	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A pass that authorizes a passenger to get on an airplane
scale	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An instrument or machine for weighing
layover	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A short stop or break in a journey, usually imposed by scheduling requirements
round trip	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A trip from one place to another and back, usually over the same route

## Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You VIII (c0090)

A: Veronica! Veronica! Veronica! Are you OK?

B: Steven! What's going on! Who were those guys? I didn't know you have a gun! What's going on!

A: I will come clean as soon as we get to safety, OK? For now, you have to trust me, please! I would never do anything to hurt you.

B: Steven, I...

A: Okay, run! I haven't been completely honest with you Veronica, I'm sorry. I'm not a fireman. I'm not even from the United States. I'm a spy for the Indian government.

B: What? Why didn't you tell me before? What are you doing here?

A: When I was a young boy, I used to play cricket my father back in my hometown of Hyderabad. It was a peaceful town, and my father was a renowned chemist. One day, he was approached by members of the CIA, claiming that my father had made the discovery of the millennium in his small lab back at the university where he taught bio-chemistry. I never saw him again. I vowed to discover the whereabouts of my father and consequently joined the Indian Intelligence Bureau.

B: What does that have to do with those men shooting at us? Most importantly, why did you lie to me!

A: I'm sorry, I wasn't supposed to meet you. I wasn't supposed to fall in love with you, but you have to believe me when I tell you that what I feel for you is real.

B: I can't believe this! Why are all these things happening to me! I can't take it anymore! Let me out of the car!

A: Veronica, wait!

### Key Vocabulary

whereabouts	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the approximate place, where a person or thing is
vow	<i>verb</i>	promised
millennium		1000 years
renowned	<i>Adjective</i>	well known
claim		to assert as a fact
spy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person employed to find out secret information about other countries or organizations
honest	<i>Adjective</i>	truthful and moral in behaviour; trustworthy
go on	<i>verb</i>	happening
come clean	<i>phrase</i>	confess, tell everything, tell the truth

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**FBI**

Federal Bureau of Investigation

**undercover***Adjective*

done or acting in secret

**notorious***Adjective*

well known for some bad reason

**white lie***common noun, singular*

an unimportant, small lie

**pull (some-  
one's) leg***phrase*

tell false information to for fun

## The Weekend - Aliens! (C0091)

A: Oh honey, this is so romantic! I have never seen so many stars before! It's beautiful!

B: See that constellation there? That's Orion! And the very bright star? Well, it's not a star since it doesn't blink. That's actually Venus.

A: What's that big flashy one?

B: I don't know... I think it's a UFO!

C: Greetings earthlings. I come from afar, from a distant galaxy known only to a few.

A: Why are you here? Where did you come from?

C: We have been observing you for the last three thousand years. We have seen the amazing capacity that humans have to create such wonders as the Taj Mahal or masterpieces such as the Haffner symphony. Unfortunately, your intelligence and creativity does not come without consequence. Your ambition and desire for more will be your downfall, and we are here to save your planet from you.

B: You think you have us figured out? What gives you the right to come and judge us? Who are you to play God with our fate?

C: Silence human! It is that belligerent attitude that has caused years of pain and anguish among yourselves! Now you will pay the price!

### Key Vocabulary

constellation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a particular shape formed by a group of stars
blink	<i>verb</i>	produce light every several seconds

UFO		unidentified flying object
earthlings	<i>common noun, plural</i>	human beings that live on earth
from afar	<i>General Adverb</i>	from a long distance
galaxy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	any of numerous large-scale collections of stars, gas, and dust that make up the visible universe.
capacity	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the ability to do something
wonder	<i>common noun, plural</i>	A monumental human creation that is amazing
masterpiece	<i>common noun, singular</i>	wonderful pieces of work

consequence	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a logical result or effect of an action
ambition	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the desire to achieve more
downfall	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that brings failure
figure out	<i>verb</i>	completely understand, comprehend.
play God	<i>phrase</i>	decide the fate of someone or something
belligerent	<i>Adjective</i>	angry, aggressive, wanting to fight
anguish	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	very strong and terrible physical or mental pain; torment

### Supplementary Vocabulary

spacecraft	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a vehicle that travels in space
------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------

hoax	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an event when people do something to play a joke on or fool others
astronomy	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the study of the stars and space
supernatural	<i>Adjective</i>	unable to be explained by science
flying saucer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a name for a UFO

## The Weekend - 1950's (C0092)

A: Heya, Tracy. How are you doin'?

B: I'm swell, Sandy!

A: Hey listen, you wanna go to the sock hop with me this Friday? It'll be a blast!

B: First of all it's the Sadie Hawkins dance. The girls gotta ask the guys. Also...

A: Oh, right. So when are you gonna ask me? I've had my eye on you for a while.

C: Hey, buddy. Ease off my girl, man. Or do you want a knuckle-sandwich?

B: Cool it, guys.

A: Your girl? Says who?

C: Says me, pipsqueak!

### Key Vocabulary

heya	<i>Interjection</i>	hi, you (informal)
swell	<i>Adjective</i>	really good (old-fashioned)
sock hop	<i>common noun, singular</i>	dances held usually in high school gym or cafeteria
a blast	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a very fun time
Sadie Hawkins dance		an informal dance usually in high school with girls invite boys
have one's eye on (someone)	<i>phrase</i>	focus your attention on something you want

ease off	<i>phrase</i>	stop putting pressure on someone
knuckle-sandwich	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a punch
cool it	<i>phrase</i>	relax, take it easy
pipsqueak	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who is not important

### Supplementary Vocabulary

go ape	<i>phrase</i>	get really angry and explode
be on cloud nine	<i>phrase</i>	be really happy
cool cat	<i>phrase</i>	a very cool person
flick	<i>common noun, singular</i>	movie, film
party pooper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who is not fun



Learn English on your Terms

no sweat

*phrase*

it's no problem

## Intermediate - Volleyball (C0093)

A: It's a beautiful day here in New Zealand at the Men's Volleyball world championship. My name is Rick Fields and I'm joined by the man with the plan, Bob Copeland.

B: Thank you, Rick. We've got a very exciting encounter ahead of us today as two powerhouse teams, Brazil and China, face off against each other and try to qualify for the next round. Without a doubt, both teams are in top shape and this will prove to be a competitive match.

A: The ref signals the start of the game and here we go. Ribeiro serves and China quickly receives the ball. Chen bumps it to the setter, and... a very nice set by Chen!

B: Xu spikes it! Wow, what a great hit! The Brazilian blockers anticipated the play and tried to block him but he managed to get the ball in! Great play.

A: It's China's service now. What a superb jump serve by Li, oh, and we have a let serve. The ball was coming in fast and almost made it over the net.

B: Brazil calls for a time out and we'll be right back, after a short commercial break.

### Key Vocabulary

encounter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	meet for a game or battle
ahead of (someone)	<i>Preposition</i>	in the future
powerhouse	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a highly energetic, strong team
qualify	<i>verb</i>	to reach the later stages of a selection process or contest by competing successfully in earlier rounds
in top shape	<i>phrase</i>	in their best condition

serve	<i>verb</i>	hits the ball to start a set of the game
bump	<i>verb</i>	to pass (a volleyball) by redirecting it with the forearms
set	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the action of putting ball in the air so as to be driven to opponents' court
spike	<i>verb</i>	strongly hit the ball to opponents' court using the palm of the hand
anticipate	<i>verb</i>	to foresee and act in advance of
jump serve	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a serve with the ball firstly thrown overhead and then the player jumping to hit it
let serve	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the ball touches the net in a serve but still crosses into the opponents' court

time out	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a pause during a game
----------	----------------------------------	-----------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

side out	<i>common noun, singular</i>	when the team that served the ball loses the rally, causing the other team to serve the next point.
whiff	<i>phrase</i>	a mishit — when a player attempts to hit (or spike) the ball with the open hand and nearly misses the ball
dig	<i>phrase</i>	the ability to prevent the ball from touching one's court after a spike or attack, particularly a ball that is nearly touching the ground
coin toss	<i>common noun, singular</i>	is the practice of throwing a coin in the air to resolve a dispute between two parties



Learn English on your Terms

draw

*common  
noun, singular*

a contest or game ending in a tie

## Global View - Big Bang Theory (C0094)

A: What's up? You don't look too good.

B: Yeah, my head hurts, that's all. I've been in physics class all day. It's killer!

A: I liked physics. It's all math, really; arcs, curves, velocity, cool stuff.

B: Yeah, yeah, but today's lesson was all about the creation of the universe.

A: A physics class about the creation of the universe? That's some pretty unscientific language there. Sounds more religious to me.

B: It's all religion. Take the theory of the Big Bang. How is it possible that all of the stuff in the universe comes from an explosion? That's no better than Atlas carrying the globe on his back or African myths about turtles and stuff.

A: Turtles? Whatever... Look, all that's required for the creation of matter an imbalance of particles and anti-particles. At least, that's what the math says.

B: Math, shmath. What's the evidence?

A: There is evidence! You know Edwin Hubble? He's the guy who in the early twentieth century was the first scientist to measure the drift of matter in the universe, thus advancing notions of an expanding universe. What would it be expanding from? Well, the Big Bang... DUH!

B: Anyway, it's just a theory. Why do people go around touting theories? Where's the scientific rigor in that?

A: Dude, don't equivocate. A theory only becomes a theory after withstanding rigorous testing. You slept through class, didn't you?

B: Agh! You're making my head hurt again! Quit with the questions!

### Key Vocabulary

what's up	<i>phrase</i>	what is happening
killer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Something that is extremely difficult to deal with or withstand
theory	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a set of statements or principles devised to explain a group of facts or phenomena
Big Bang		the theory that a cosmic explosion caused the origin of the universe
matter	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the substance of which something is made; material

imbalance	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the situation where there is an unequal amount of different things
particle	<i>common noun, plural</i>	any one tiny part of matter
anti-particle	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a particle that has the same mass as another particle but has opposite values for its other properties
notion	<i>common noun, plural</i>	ideas or concepts
rigor	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the state of something being very exact
equivocate	<i>verb</i>	use vague language so as to deceive someone
withstand		surviving a difficult experience or trouble

## Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>astronomy</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The scientific study of matter in outer space, especially the positions, dimensions, distribution, motion, composition, energy, and evolution of celestial bodies and phenomena
<b>black hole</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a region of space resulting from the collapse of a star with extremely high gravitational field
<b>white dwarf</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a small, faint, very dense star
<b>entropy</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The tendency for all matter and energy in the universe to evolve toward a state of inert uniformity

singularity	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A point of infinite density and infinitesimal volume, at which space and time become infinitely distorted according to the theory of General Relativity
paradox	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A seemingly contradictory statement that may nonetheless be true

## Daily Life - Talking About a Past Event (C0095)

A: Mike! Hey, how are you, man! Long time no see!

B: Hey, Pat! Yeah, I haven't seen you in ages! How are you?

A: I'm doing great! It's funny running into you like this. Just last week I ran into Matt as well.

B: Yeah? How's he doing?

A: He's doing well. We went out for a couple of beers and the funniest thing happened.

B: Oh yeah?

A: Well, we were talking and catching up on what we've been doing, talking about work and family, when all of a sudden, Matt saw a mouse run under his chair and he completely lost it! He started freaking out, and screaming...

B: Ha ha, really?

A: Yeah, and the funniest thing was, that he jumped on to his chair and started shrieking like a girl. You had to be there! Everyone was staring and laughing... it was hilarious!

## Key Vocabulary

how are you	<i>phrase</i>	a greeting phrase
man	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an informal way of calling a person
long time no see	<i>phrase</i>	a greeting phrase used after two friends have not seen each other for a long time

in ages	<i>phrase</i>	for a long time
I am doing great	<i>phrase</i>	a phrase you use to respond to a greeting
run into	<i>phrase</i>	meeting someone accidentally
catch up on	<i>phrase</i>	learn about recent past events
freak out	<i>verb</i>	show a lot of emotion; be not able to control emotions
shriek		screaming in a very high voice
stare	<i>verb</i>	look at something for a long time with great attention
hilarious	<i>Adjective</i>	very amusing
lose it	<i>verb</i>	lose control of your emotions; show strong, negative emotions

## Supplementary Vocabulary

go nuts	<i>verb</i>	go crazy; lose control of yourself
a riot	<i>phrase</i>	a very fun time; or a funny event
ridiculous	<i>Adjective</i>	very silly or unreasonable
bizarre	<i>Adjective</i>	very strange or unusual
anecdote	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a short, amusing story

## The Weekend - 1960's English (C0096)

A: Hey man... I really like your pad. Those lava lamps are far out! Thanks for letting me crash here tonight.

B: It's no problem, brother! I wanted a pad where people could come, listen to music and just hang loose, you dig what I'm saying?

A: I dig it man! We could throw a bash here and make it a really happening scene!

B: Yeah man, that would be groovy! Hey, I gotta split for a while, are you OK here by yourself?

A: Don't worry about me brother... You go take care of business.

B: Alright, peace out.

## Key Vocabulary

pad	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a place where a person lives
dig	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	appreciate, like
far out	<i>Adjective</i>	the latest, cool
crash	<i>verb</i>	sleep (informal)
brother	<i>common noun, singular</i>	buddy, informal way to call a close friend
hang loose	<i>phrase</i>	relax
bash	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a big party
happening scene	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an extremely exciting moment
groovy	<i>Adjective</i>	really cool

split	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	leave here
peace out	<i>phrase</i>	see you later
man	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an informal way to call a friend
throw		hold (a party)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

a gas	<i>phrase</i>	a really fun time
hip	<i>Adjective</i>	very cool
nifty	<i>Adjective</i>	cool, neat
blitzed	<i>Adjective</i>	very drunk
bitchen	<i>Adjective</i>	awesome, really cool

## Daily Life - Weather Forecast (C0097)

A: ...And now, let's go to Kenny Williams for today's weather forecast.

B: Thank you Bill, and good morning Salt Lake City!

A: What's the weather looking like today, Kenny?

B: Well, it's a bit of a mixed bag in Utah today; we've got heavy cloud cover here in Northern Utah, and we're calling for scattered showers throughout the day, with a day-time high of forty-five degrees. Now, if we move down to the south of the state, we can see that a cold front is moving in. We can expect clear skies, but it will be quite cold, with temperatures hovering around the thirty degree mark.

A: It's a chilly day folks, so don't forget your coats! What about tomorrow Kenny? Do you have good news for us?

B: Well, it'll be a rainy day for Northern Utah; we can expect some isolated downpours in the morning. Winds will be coming in from the North East, with gusts reaching twenty-three miles per hour. Salt Lake City can expect the rain to turn to sleet in the evening. Things are looking a bit better for the South; we'll see cloudy skies with a chance of showers. Later in the day, we can expect partly-cloudy skies, with a forecast high of thirty-eight degrees.

A: You heard it folks! It's gonna be a cold one!

B: That's right Bill. We will have more later on today on the six o'clock news. That's the weather forecast for this morning.

### Key Vocabulary

scattered	<i>Adjective</i>	something that is spread all over an area
hover around	<i>phrase</i>	stay near a certain level or place

come in from	<i>phrase</i>	to enter or arrive from somewhere
forecast	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a statement of what will happen in the future
mixed bag	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a collection of different kinds of things
cloud cover	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the amount of sky that is covered with cloud
call for	<i>phrase</i>	saying that some type of weather will happen
shower	<i>common noun, plural</i>	rainfall in a short time
cold front	<i>common noun, singular</i>	leading edge of a cooler and drier mass of air
chilly	<i>Adjective</i>	very cold
isolated	<i>Adjective</i>	limited to one area

downpour	<i>common noun, plural</i>	strong, sudden rain storm
gust	<i>common noun, singular</i>	strong, sudden increase in wind speed
sleet	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a mix of rain and snow
partly-cloudy skies	<i>phrase</i>	having some cloud and some sun

### Supplementary Vocabulary

hail	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	small balls of ice that fall from the sky
drizzle	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	light rain
hazy	<i>Adjective</i>	describes when air is not clear because of fog or smog



Learn English on your Terms

fog	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	small drops of water that float in the air
blizzard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a very strong snow storm

## Daily Life - Flattering (C0098)

A: Valerie! Hi! Wow how are you? It's been such a long time!

B: Darlene! Indeed, it's been a while! How have you been? Wow, you look amazing! I love what you've done with your hair!

A: Really? Thanks! I went to that hair salon that you told me about, but enough about me! Look at you! You haven't aged a day since the last time I saw you! What is your secret?

B: Ha ha, come on! Well, I've been watching what I eat, and working out three times a week. By the way, I heard your son recently graduated!

A: Yes, my little Paul is finally a doctor. They grow up so fast you know.

B: He is such a handsome guy. He gets his looks from his mother of course!

A: Thank you! What about your daughter, Pamela? I heard she has passed the bar exam and married recently.

B: Oh yes. She had a beautiful wedding in Cozumel Mexico and we all attended.

A: Such a lovely girl. I hope my Paul is lucky enough to find a girl like that someday!

B: But of course! Well, it's been great talking to you, but I have to get going.

A: Same here! We will catch up soon, maybe over coffee!

B: That would be great! Give me a call!

A: See you soon! Bye! Ugg... I can't stand that woman or her obnoxious son.

### Key Vocabulary

I love what you have done with	<i>phrase</i>	I really like the design or the change you made
you haven't aged a day	<i>verb</i>	you haven't gotten older; you look young
work out	<i>phrase</i>	do physical exercises
by the way	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used to shift to another topic
bar exam	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the exam to qualify as a lawyer
get going	<i>phrase</i>	leave
obnoxious	<i>Adjective</i>	really annoying

### Supplementary Vocabulary

small talk	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	short, friendly, unimportant conversations
talk behind (somone's) back	<i>phrase</i>	speak badly of someone with out them knowing
two-faced	<i>Adjective</i>	pretend to like someone when you don't; be hypocritical
stab (somone) in the back	<i>phrase</i>	do something unkind to a friend
gossip	<i>verb</i>	talk about the details of other people's lives

## Global View - Movie Review (C0099)

A: Welcome back movie lovers to another " Premier Movie Review". My name is Richard Clarke and I am joined today by the very erudite David Watson.

B: Thank you Dick. Today we are going to talk about the movie " Lion King". Tell me Dave, what is your impression of this film?

A: Well, I think this film is simply a fable, depicting man's eternal greed for power, and in my opinion, it's a very fine film. Even despite the accusations of plagiarism traditional folk tales from other countries. The musical score was amazing, the animation was very well done, and the story was simply enchanting.

B: I think otherwise. Even though the animation was technically strong, and as you say, the score and songs performed by Elton John were great, the film lacks a certain originality; it lacked heart. And I would dare to say, it was too predictable.

A: Predictable! How! Come on Dick, It's a G-rated movie! It's for the kids! It's not a thriller!

B: Well, that's just it. It did have some very dramatic and intense scenes For example when Mufasa dies, or the dark, grim portrayal of Scar. Even so, the film is linear. Mufasa dies, Simba runs away thinking it's his fault. Falls in love and returns to retake what is rightfully his. It's just too cliché.

A: How can it be cliché? It's a fable! It's telling a time-honoured story! The movie make a point of how the hunger for power leads to corruption, and teaches children the value of respect, life and love.

B: You have always been so soft, Dave!

A: Open your heart Dick. Don't shut us out.

B: Anyway... That's all for today folks! Join us next time as we talk about "How to lose a guy in 10 days" I'm sure you'll love that one Dave!

## Key Vocabulary

dare to say	<i>phrase</i>	have the confidence to say
rightfully	<i>General Adverb</i>	according to law
erudite	<i>Adjective</i>	having a lot of knowledge; especially gained from studying
impression	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the feelings one has after a specific event
depict		describe, show, especially in art or pictures
fable	<i>common noun, singular</i>	beautiful story about animals that has a moral or lesson
eternal	<i>Adjective</i>	lasting forever

accusation	<i>common noun, plural</i>	action of caliming something is wrong
plagiarism	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	practice of copying others' ideas
enchanting	<i>Adjective</i>	attractive, holding one's attention
score	<i>common noun, singular</i>	written work showing notes of music
predictable	<i>Adjective</i>	easy for others to foresee what is going to happen
portrayal	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of showing or describing somehting, especially in art
grim	<i>Adjective</i>	unpleasant
linear	<i>Adjective</i>	moving in logical way, from start to end

cliche	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that is too often used so that it loses meaning or importance
time-honoured	<i>Adjective</i>	something that survives the testing of time
soft	<i>Adjective</i>	not critical enough

### Supplementary Vocabulary

screen play	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the written words from a film
performance	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the activity of an actor in a play
central character	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the main person in a movie
plot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	story in a movie or book



Learn English on your Terms

## cinematography

*common  
noun, non-  
variable*

used to describe the  
camera work in a movie

## Daily Life - Where are you from? (C0100)

A: Where to, miss?

B: Hi! Crenshaw and Hawthorne, at the Holiday Inn that is on that corner.

A: Sure thing. So, where are you flying in from?

B: From China.

A: Really? You don't look very Chinese to me, if you don't mind me saying so.

B: It's fine. I am actually from Mexico. I was in China on a business trip, visiting some local companies that manufacture bathroom products.

A: Wow sounds interesting! Excuse me if I am being a bit nosy but, how old are you?

B: Don't you know it's rude to ask a lady her age?

A: Don't get me wrong! It's just that you seem so young and already doing business overseas!

B: Well thank you! In that case, I am 26 years old, and what about yourself?

A: I am 40 years old and was born and raised here in the good old U.S of A, although I have some Colombian heritage.

B: Really? That's great! Do you speak some Spanish?

A: Uh... yeah.. of course!

B: Que bien! Entonces podemos hablar en espanol!

## Key Vocabulary

if you don't mind me saying so	<i>phrase</i>	a polite phrase to use where you are saying something sensitive
come in from	<i>phrase</i>	arrive
nosy	<i>Adjective</i>	too interested in others' private matters
in that case	<i>phrase</i>	because of that
don't get me wrong	<i>phrase</i>	do not misunderstand me
where to	<i>phrase</i>	where would you like to go
overseas	<i>General Adverb</i>	in foreign countries
to be born and raised	<i>phrase</i>	to live in a place your whole life
the good old U.S of A	<i>phrase</i>	the United States

## Supplementary Vocabulary

mind your own business	<i>phrase</i>	that subject is too personal (impolite)
that's personal	<i>phrase</i>	phrase you use when you don't want to answer a question
TMI	<i>phrase</i>	too much information
personal	<i>Adjective</i>	about a person's private thoughts, feelings, etc.
snoop	<i>verb</i>	to look for private information about someone

## The Weekend - 1970's (C0101)

A: Hey man! How's it hanging?

B: Hey man! Everything is just groovy baby!

A: Did you go to the roller rink on Saturday? I heard it was far out, man!

B: I wanted to, but I ran into this foxy lady that just moved to my block! I was chatting her up a bit and then we mellowed out at her place.

A: Right on, right on! Well, Jim went to the rink with Sherry and he said it was dy-no-mite! He was low on bread, but Sherry paid for everything.

B: Gravy! Jim is such a jive turkey man. He is always hitting me up for cash. Anyway, you wanna book and go grab some grub?

A: Yeah man, I'm starving!

### Key Vocabulary

right on	<i>phrase</i>	used to say that something that makes sense
how is it hanging	<i>phrase</i>	how's it going, how are you
groovy	<i>Adjective</i>	cool, excellent, enjoyable
roller rink	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an enclosed place for roller skating
far out	<i>Adjective</i>	the latest, cool
foxy	<i>Adjective</i>	sexy, attractive
block	<i>common noun, singular</i>	part of a neighborhood surrounded by four streets
chat (some-one) up	<i>verb</i>	talk informally to a person you're attracted to
mellow out	<i>verb</i>	relax

bread	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	money (informal and old fashioned)
gravy	<i>Adjective</i>	alright, cool
jive turkey	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who is unreliable or irresponsible
hit someone up for	<i>phrase</i>	ask someone for money
book	<i>verb</i>	leave quickly
grub	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	food (informal)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Disco	<i>common noun, singular</i>	popular dance music, especially of the late 1970s
crib	<i>common noun, singular</i>	house



Learn English on your Terms

<b>gig</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a performance especially by a band
<b>the man</b>	<i>phrase</i>	an authority figure, like the boss or government
<b>bummer</b>		a negative situation

## Global View - Global Warming (C0102)

A: And therefore, global warming is the greatest deception of the early 21st century. Questions?

B: Uh... yeah. In the lecture you said there's more evidence in the scientific record supporting global cooling?

A: Well, yes, essentially, the historical record supports a theory of climate cycles. Warming and cooling are cooperating processes in the planetary eco-system.

B: If that's true and the planet is getting cooler, what explains the rapid melting of the polar ice caps and the dramatic rise in the global average temperatures?

A: But are global temperatures rising? If you look at the data from nineteen seventy-five you'll...

B: You'll be misled. If you were serious, you would look at the record starting in the 1880's. Then you would see how dramatically the earth's temperature has changed.

A: Young lady, I beg to differ. Look, the point of the lecture was to emphasize that there is evidence for both sides, and I'm putting forth the argument that there's greater evidence in support of the global cooling hypothesis. Look, it's an indisputable fact that the public is being manipulated and scared into believing there's some kind of climate crisis; this scaremongering is done, quite simply, for political reasons.

B: But even without the uncomfortable reality that greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide contribute to global warming, isn't the topic appropriate for politicians to discuss?

A: Not if they want to use your tax dollars and mine to fund completely unnecessary initiatives.

B: Yeah, like conservation, protecting endangered species and investing in renewable energy. At the very least, you have to concede that this debate has the potential to end our dependence on foreign oil. Buying oil supports autocratic countries that use these revenues to devastating ends.

A: Why, I've never been so disrespected in all of my days. I'm a professor, a scientist and researcher of high regard.

B: Yeah, and a duplicitous one at that. Everyone knows you're in the pocket of the oil lobby. Why should we trust your so-called findings more than tobacco institute studies which say smoking doesn't harm health? You're full of it.

A: Some people just cannot handle civil debate!

### Key Vocabulary

planetary

*Adjective*

of or relating to planets

eco-system	<i>common noun, singular</i>	everything that exists in a certain environment
mislead	<i>verb</i>	be led to make believe something not true
global warming	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the increase of the world's temperature due to po
beg to differ	<i>phrase</i>	a polite way to show you do not agree with someone
deception	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of making others believe something false
polar ice cap	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the thick layer of ice or snow on the poles
emphasize	<i>verb</i>	highlight
put forth	<i>verb</i>	give out, announce the public

indisputable	<i>Adjective</i>	so true that does not need to be discussed anymore
manipulate	<i>verb</i>	influence someone's ideas for your own benefit
scaremongering	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	saying something so as to frighten people
greenhouse gas	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a gas that increases the global temperature
endangered species	<i>common noun, plural</i>	type of animal in danger of dying out
concede	<i>verb</i>	to say that you do not deny something's true
autocratic	<i>Adjective</i>	with total power
end	<i>common noun, plural</i>	result or outcome
duplicitous	<i>Adjective</i>	deceiving, dishonest

in the pocket of	<i>phrase</i>	being illegally bribed or paid by someone
so-called	<i>Adjective</i>	used to show the name is not really suitable

### Supplementary Vocabulary

climate change	<i>common noun, non- variable</i>	the change in the world's temperature and weather patterns
fossil fuel	<i>common noun, sin- gular</i>	fuel made with dead an- imals or plants such as oil, gas, natural gas
deforestation	<i>common noun, non- variable</i>	the action of cutting down forests
emission	<i>common noun, sin- gular</i>	the act of producing gas
endorse	<i>verb</i>	support a point of view

## Daily Life - Baby, I'm Sorry (C0103)

A: Can we talk?

B: Sure, honey, we're talking now, aren't we?

A: You know what I mean.

B: Yeah. I know.

A: I want to know where this relationship is going. I'm in love with you and I need to know...

B: You know, I think you're awesome.

A: I'm awesome. Well, I guess that's my answer, isn't it.

B: Honey...

A: Look, if you don't love me, it's not a thing, alright, we've had our laughs, but I don't appreciate... maybe it's just time we...

B: Baby, I love you so much.

A: You do?

B: I love you. And I think you're awesome.

A: Oh, I love you too!

B: Come on. Put the gun down.

A: Oh baby, I'm so sorry.

## Key Vocabulary

maybe it is time we	<i>phrase</i>	perhaps it is time for us to do something
don't appreciate	<i>phrase</i>	don't like
where this (relationship) is going	<i>phrase</i>	what stage this relationship is in
we have had our (laughs)	<i>phrase</i>	we have experienced (our happy days)
love	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	have strong affection to someone
awesome	<i>Adjective</i>	amazing, great
in love with	<i>phrase</i>	feel strong romantic affection for someone
can we talk	<i>phrase</i>	phrase used if one must talk about serious things

## Supplementary Vocabulary

dump (some-one)	<i>verb</i>	end a relationship with someone
break (some-one's) heart	<i>phrase</i>	hurt someone's feelings very badly; hurt someone emotionally
a heart to heart	<i>phrase</i>	a honest, emotional talk
ex	<i>common noun, singular</i>	former boyfriend, girlfriend, husband or wife
partner	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who you are in a long-term relationship with

## The Weekend - Skiing (C0104)

A: Welcome ski lovers of all ages! My name is Rick Fields and here with me is the man that needs no introduction, Bob Copeland.

B: Thank you, Rick! What a beautiful day here in Aspen, Colorado where the sun is shinning, and we've got twelve inches of fresh powder. It doesn't get much better than this.

A: That's right, Bob, but today we have a special treat for our viewers. We're joined here by Ian Roussy, the four-time giant slalom champion. And on this special edition of the show, Ian is going to teach us the basics of skiing! So, let's hit the slopes!

C: Well, first off, let's get those boots on. You're going to want to make sure your boots fit snugly. That's right; now snap them into your bindings. And you're also going to want a good pair of goggles to protect your eyes. It's a bright day today, so there's going to be a lot of glare out there on the slopes. We don't want you hitting any of those moguls!

- A: Bob, since you're a beginner skier and might take a few spills, it is a good idea to have a good warm pair of dry ski gloves.
- C: Easy there, Rick! Well, let's head on over to the chairlift, and test your skills! All right, we're up here on the bunny hill, so, Bob, why don't you do a few snow-plow turns. Gnarly run, Rick! Nice carving! You've got some mad skills! That was sick!
- A: You wanna see gnarley? Well, see that bump over there, I'm going to catch some major air.
- C: Butt plant!
- B: Ha ha ha! He lost his skis! Yard sale!!!

A: Ahem, well. Thanks for joining us here today, I think that about does it. Bob, Ian, time for some après-ski?

C: No way, man! We're off to grab some freshies!!!

### Key Vocabulary

slalom	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a skiing race where you must go through flags
champion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	winner
hit the slopes	<i>phrase</i>	start skiing
snugly	<i>General Adverb</i>	fitting very tightly
snap	<i>principle verb, imperative</i>	make something attach by pressing down
binding	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a bottom part that attaches the boot to a ski

<b>goggles</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a pair of glasses used to protect one's eyes
<b>glare</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	bright light that is reflected by the snow
<b>slopes</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a space on the mountain which is used for skiing
<b>mogul</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a bump on a ski hill
<b>ski glove</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a covering of hands with each finger separated tha
<b>snow-plow turn</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a slow, easy turn where you make a V with the skis
<b>carving</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	turn on your skis with your edges

chairlift	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a line of chairs tha moving cable that carries peo
apres-ski	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a party or drinks after skiing
grab some freshies	<i>phrase</i>	ski on the area that has never been skied before
yard sale	<i>phrase</i>	falling so hard that you lose all your ski equipment
catch some major air	<i>phrase</i>	used to describe a skier jumps really really high
bump	<i>common noun, singular</i>	small hill
gnarley	<i>Adjective</i>	awesome, cool (used by ski lovers)
take a spill	<i>principle verb, subjunctive</i>	fall

that about *phrase* it's finished; it's almost done  
does it

### Supplementary Vocabulary

lodge	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the building that has restaurants and stores on the ski hill
pow	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	(powder) soft, light snow
avy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	(avalanche) lots of snow falling off the mountain
liftie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who operates the chairlift
bowl	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a steep hill with high sides, shaped like a bowl

## The Office - Job Well Done (C0105)

A: And so, that concludes my outline for our marketing strategy next year. Thank you very much for your time.

B: Hey, that was quite the presentation! Honestly, I was completely blown away by your strategy outline. I've gotta say, Alex, you really wowed me today.

A: Aw, come on; it was nothing. I'm just doing my job.

B: No, I think you deserve some recognition here; I mean, if I look back on your previous presentations, this is a huge improvement.

A: Well, Kristin did give me a hand with the slides. She's a real wiz on PowerPoint.

B: And I saw that you took on board my feedback about pricing strategies. I really appreciate you taking the time to think though my suggestions.

A: Yeah, well, that was some good advice. You made some really good points.

B: Well, I just wanted to say well done. Really you did a great job.

### Key Vocabulary

quite (noun)	the <i>phrase</i>	used to say it was good
presentation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	speech, demo, a meeting where you present something
honestly	<i>General Adverb</i>	to tell the truth, frankly speaking
blow (some- one) away	<i>verb</i>	impressed by

wow (some-one)	<i>verb</i>	amaze, impress
it was nothing	<i>phrase</i>	use to show humbleness
deserve	<i>verb</i>	are entitled to
recognition	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	praises, credit
look back on	<i>verb</i>	recall the past
improvement	<i>common noun, singular</i>	advance, progress
give someone a hand	<i>phrase</i>	help someone
wiz	<i>common noun, singular</i>	genius
take on board	<i>verb</i>	adopt
feedback	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	other people's opinions

think through	<i>verb</i>	to carefully consider and think about it
well done	<i>phrase</i>	good job

### Supplementary Vocabulary

constructive criticism	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	suggestions for improvement
recognize	<i>verb</i>	to publicly give special attention to someone for doing a good job
praise	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the action of saying a person did a good job
encourage	<i>verb</i>	make someone confident; help them do better
give credit	<i>phrase</i>	praise given to someone for doing a good job

## Daily Life - Mobile Phone Plan (C0106)

B: Yeah, I've just moved here, and I'd like to activate my cell phone, and I'm not sure if I should go with a prepaid plan, or a monthly rate plan.

A: I see. Well, can I have a look at your phone? Unfortunately, this phone can't be used in the US; it's not compatible with our 3G network.

B: What? Really? I don't really want to have to buy a new phone.

A: Well, you're in luck! You see, if you sign up for our three-year plan, we'll throw in a handset for free.

B: Really? What's the catch?

A: There's no catch! You just choose a plan, sign a three-year contract and, that's it! Actually, we're running a special promotion right now, and we're giving away a Blackberry Curve with our special Mega Value forty dollar plan.

B: So what does this plan include?

A: Well, you get nine hundred anytime minutes, and you can also enjoy free mobile to mobile calling to other Tel-Mobile clients, one thousand text messages per month, and unlimited evening and weekend minutes. Oh, and we also offer a rollover option.

B: Wow, all this for forty dollars per month?

A: That's right, plus the activation fee, the emergency services fee, the monthly service fee, oh, and any charges for extra minutes, and...

## Key Vocabulary

in luck	<i>verb</i>	you are lucky right now; we have what you need
compatible with	<i>phrase</i>	able to work well together
monthly rate plan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a program that needs you to pay every month
activate	<i>verb</i>	cause something to start working
prepaid rate plan	<i>Adjective</i>	a program where you pay for cell phone time in advance
throw in	<i>verb</i>	give something extra for free
what is the catch	<i>phrase</i>	what is the hidden drawback
any time minutes	<i>phrase</i>	cell phone time you can use at any time
text message	<i>common noun, plural</i>	short messages sent by mobile phone

unlimited	<i>Adjective</i>	with out limit; as much as you want
evening and weekend minutes	<i>phrase</i>	cell phone minutes you can use on evenings and wee
rollover	<i>Adjective</i>	allow unused minutes to be used the next month
handset	<i>common noun, singular</i>	mobile phone
fee	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of money you need to pay
charge	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the amount of money you need to pay

### Supplementary Vocabulary

device	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an object or machine made for a specific purpose
--------	------------------------------	--

data package	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a part of a cell phone package that lets you go on the internet
text	<i>verb</i>	write and send a text message
landline	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a phone that attaches to the network by a wire
SIM card	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a computer chip you put in your cell phone

## Daily Life - Complaining at a Restaurant (C0107)

A: Excuse me, waiter? Waiter!

B: Yes, sir? What can I do for you?

A: I've been sitting here for the past twenty minutes and no one has offered me a glass of water, brought any bread to the table and our appetizers haven't been served yet! You know, in this kind of establishment, I'd expect much better service.

B: I am sorry, sir. I'll check on your order right away.

C: Relax honey, the place is busy tonight, but I've heard the food is amazing. Anyway...

B: Here you are, sir. The foie gras for the lady, and a mushroom soup for you.

A: Waiter, I ordered a cream of mushroom soup with asparagus. This soup is obviously too runny, and it's over-seasoned. It's completely inedible!

B: Okay, I do apologize for that. Can I bring you another soup, or would you like to order something else?

A: Take this foie gras back as well, it's rubbery and completely overcooked. And look at the portion size! How can you charge twenty-five dollars for a sliver of duck liver?

B: Right away... sir.

C: Honey come on! The foie gras was fine, why are you making such a big deal? Are you trying to get our meal comped again?

A: What do you mean? We are paying for this. If I'm shelling out my hard earned bucks, I expect value for money!

B: Here you are, sir. I hope it is alright now. The chef has prepared it specially for you.

A: Yes, fine.

C: Honey, are you alright?

### Key Vocabulary

appetizer	<i>common noun, plural</i>	little dish people have before meal
establishment	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place of business like a restaurant or hotel
service	<i>common noun, singular</i>	work done by someone to serve customers
order	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the list containing your choices of dishes

foie gras	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a food made from the livers of geese
runny	<i>Adjective</i>	more liquid than expected
over-seasoned	<i>Adjective</i>	too salty
inedible	<i>Adjective</i>	can not be eaten
rubbery	<i>Adjective</i>	difficult to chew
overcooked	<i>Adjective</i>	be cooked overtime
portion size	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of food that is served to a person
sliver	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a small, thin piece
make a big deal	<i>phrase</i>	get very upset about something small
comp	<i>verb</i>	be given to customers for free

shell out                    *phrase*                    to spend money

hard earned                    *phrase*                    money you work hard for

### Supplementary Vocabulary

a bad after-taste            *phrase*                    a bad second taste

bitter                         *Adjective*                    a strong, unpleasant taste that is opposite of sweet

rank                         *Adjective*                    a strong, unpleasant smell

rancid                        *Adjective*                    a rotten taste or smell

unappealing                    *Adjective*                    not appealing; not attractive or tasty

## The Office - Bad news, boss. (C0108)

A: ... Now that we have been over the gory details of our disastrous first quarter, Ed! Give us some good news. How are things looking for us in terms of sales this month?

B: Uh well...would you like the bad news first or the really bad news?

A: What? Ed, don't tell me you only have bad news!

B: Well sir, our sales have dropped, no plunged, fifty percent in the past month alone. We are currently overstocked and overstuffed and our profits are falling fast. The market is in recession and we have no way of moving our inventory, or getting rid of our staff. If we consider redundancies, it would cost us a fortune because of the new regulations governing compensation packages. It's a real mess.

A: For crying out loud... How fast are we losing money?

B: Um...how can I put this? Let's just say that at this pace, we will be filing for Chapter eleven in less than three months.

A: What! Geez! How could this have happened? So what's the bad news?

B: Oh, that's the really bad news. Our supplier suffered QC problems and, well, half of our production is faulty. We're going to have to recall all items sold in the last quarter. And the worst part? We're going to have to shoulder this cost.

A: Are you joking? Get the supplier on the line now! They have to assume the costs of this mess!

B: We tried that, sir. The factory has gone under and the owner apparently has fled the country.

A: We're doomed!

B: There is some really good news though!

A: Really? What!

B: I got offered a new job!

### Key Vocabulary

gory details	<i>phrase</i>	all the small details
lay it on me	<i>phrase</i>	tell me the bad news
plunge	<i>verb</i>	drop down suddenly and quickly
disastrous	<i>Adjective</i>	very bad; having bad results
in terms of	<i>phrase</i>	regarding, about

(be) over-stocked	<i>verb</i>	having too many things to sell
(be) over-staffed	<i>verb</i>	have too many employees
inventory	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the amount of products you have to sell
get rid of		remove or take away something that is annoying
redundancies	<i>common noun, plural</i>	lay-offs; ending employment of staff for money reasons
shoulder the cost	<i>verb</i>	be responsible for the cost
govern	<i>verb</i>	rule
for crying out loud	<i>phrase</i>	used to express anger or annoyance
chapter eleven	<i>phrase</i>	bankruptcy; owing more money than you can pay

**quality control**

the process of controlling the quality of production (quality control)

**Supplementary Vocabulary**

<b>broke</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	having no money( informal)
<b>hit rock bottom</b>	<i>phrase</i>	The lowest possible level or absolute bottom
<b>margin</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the minimum return below which an enterprise becomes unprofitable
<b>revenue</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the entire amount of income before any deductions are made
<b>skyrocket</b>	<i>verb</i>	cause to rise rapidly and suddenly

## The Weekend - Breaking Up (C0109)

A: Honey, do you have a second?

B: Sure! Are you okay? You seem a bit worried. What's on your mind?

A: We need to talk.

B: Okay...

A: I've been thinking, and well, I think we need to start seeing other people.

B: What? Why? I mean, we've had our ups and downs, and we have the occasional disagreement, but we're happy together, aren't we?

A: That's just it, I'm not happy anymore, Tim. It's not you, it's me. I know that I can be hard to deal with, and you are a great guy! You are the type of guy that any woman would kill for!

B: So, what are you saying? You're breaking up with me because I'm perfect?

A: Tim, you are too good for me. You deserve someone who can make you smile and make you happy the way that you made me happy. Oh, I could say that I'll be all you need, but that would be a lie. I know I'd only hurt you, I know I'd only make you cry.

B: Baby, come on. Don't do this to me! Whatever it is, we can work it out. Just give me another chance! I know that we can get through this, but we gotta stick together! Don't leave me.

A: I can't, Tim. I hope someday you can find some way to understand I'm only doing this for you. I don't really wanna go but, deep in my heart I know this is the kindest thing to do.

B: Laura...

A: Here are your keys. I'll send my sister to pick up the rest of my things next week. I'm sorry, Tim. I wish you all the best, and I hope that one day we can meet again. I'll always love you. Goodbye.

### Key Vocabulary

ups downs	<i>and</i> <i>phrase</i>	good times and bad times
break up	<i>verb</i>	end the romantic relationship
work out	<i>phrase</i>	solve, overcome
get through	<i>phrase</i>	solve, overcome
stick together	<i>phrase</i>	stay together and help each other

### Supplementary Vocabulary

call off	<i>verb</i>	to cancel or postpone
----------	-------------	-----------------------

settle down	<i>verb</i>	to begin living a stable and orderly life
cohabit	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to live together in a sexual relationship, especially when not legally married.
propose	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To form or make a proposal, especially of marriage.
cheat on	<i>phrase</i>	be sexually unfaithful to one's partner in marriage

## Daily Life - Registering for University (C0110)

A: Excuse me? Is this where I register? I'd like to sign up for my courses for next semester.

B: Yes, of course. I need your student ID please.

A: Here you are.

B: Okay, Susan. It says here that you are a business major and you are in your second year. Is this information correct?

A: Yes. I do want to take some additional credits this year to get a minor in psychology.

B: Sure. That's not a problem. Do you have the list of courses you want to take this semester?

A: Yeah. Here's my list. I'm not sure if the class schedule will allow me to take all of them though.

B: Yeah, that's perfect. What about the subjects for your minor?

A: Oh yeah! Almost forgot! I need to take fundamental linguistics, consumer psychology and neuroanatomy.

B: Wow, you are going to be busy this semester! Okay, here you go. You are registered now; you'll have to make your first tuition payment before classes start.

## Key Vocabulary

sign up for	<i>phrase</i>	officially put your name on a list for something
major	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the field one studies in university

credit	<i>common noun, plural</i>	points you count towards your degree in university
schedule	<i>common noun, singular</i>	timetable; list of appointments and times
tuition	<i>common noun, singular</i>	educational fees

### Supplementary Vocabulary

enroll	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To place one's name on a roll or register; sign up
essay	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a short piece of writing that argues one point of view
term paper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a long piece of writing you must write at the end of a course
midterm	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a exam or big test given halfway though the course



Learn English on your Terms

**finals**

*common*

the last exams at the

*noun, plural*

end of a semester

## The Weekend - Golf (C0111)

A: Good morning golf aficionados! My name is Rick Fields, and you guessed it, I am here with my main man, Bob Copeland.

B: Thank you, Rick! As you can see, ladies and gentleman, we are here in beautiful Pebble Beach where the top golfers in the world are trying to win the grand prize of one million dollars!

A: Whoa, that's a lot of cash! Let's go to the course and see how Tiger Woods is doing.

B: All right, we're here at the eighth hole. It's a par four, and has some very difficult hazards which many golfers find difficult to avoid. Although, I did see Jack Nicklaus hit a hole in one on this very same hole!

A: Tiger Woods is about to tee off, and let's see if he has the same luck as Jack. Tiger is asking his caddie for his driver and, he seems to be very nervous.

B: Oh no! Not a good swing at all! It's definitely not his day today. On the seventh hole he got a bogey and before that he barely made par. He will definitely not get a birdie on this shot.

A: It seems that his ball has flown somewhere deep in the trees. He is having a hard time finding it and even his caddie has climbed a tree to try and spot it.

B: Oh no! A bear! Run, Tiger, run! Somebody call animal control!

### Key Vocabulary

aficionado	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an enthusiastic admirer or follower; a fan.
------------	----------------------------	---

main man	<i>phrase</i>	my right hand man, my important helper
cash	<i>common noun, singular</i>	money in the form of bills or coins
par	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the number of strokes considered necessary to complete
hazard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an obstacle, such as some water, found on a golf course
hole in one	<i>common noun, singular</i>	using only one shot to put the ball in the hole
tee off	<i>verb</i>	hit the ball for the first time on a hole
caddie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who carries the golf clubs and gives advice
driver	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the club you use to hit the ball long distances

swing	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the action of hitting the golf ball
not (some-one's) day	<i>phrase</i>	not a good day for that person
bogey	<i>common noun, singular</i>	score that is one higher than it should be in golf
make par	<i>phrase</i>	get the score you should for a certain hole
birdie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	one point lower than the score you should get
shot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the action of hitting the ball
hard time	<i>phrase</i>	a difficult time doing something; difficulty

## Supplementary Vocabulary

putt	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>simple</i>	light golf stroke made on the putting green in an effort to place the ball into the hole.
green	<i>common</i> <i>noun, singular</i>	an area of short cut grass around the hole on a golf course
break	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>simple</i>	the action of a ball moving away from its straight path
sand trap	<i>common</i> <i>noun, singular</i>	a hazard on a golf course consisting of a depression partly filled with sand.
iron	<i>common</i> <i>noun, singular</i>	golf a club with an angled metal head

## Daily Life - Dr. Plumber (C0112)

A: Good afternoon! Did you call for a plumber?

B: Yes, yes I did. Please come in! I'm so glad you came! This old house is falling apart! Come on into the bathroom. See, here, there's water leaking everywhere!

A: I see. Let me have a look. It seems that your toilet is clogged, and that's why it won't flush. Let me just get my plunger. No, that's not working either. I suspect that there's some sort of foreign object in the pipes that's causing a blockage. That's what's making your toilet overflow.

B: Oh, that must be because of my four-year-old daughter. She is always flushing things down the toilet. You know how kids are.

A: Yeah, I have a little one myself. Anyway, these water pipes are really rusty, so they also should be changed. That could be causing water to not drain completely; that might lead to more problems in the future. I would also suggest fixing this faucet that isn't shutting off properly. I could have it all finished by today if it's urgent.

B: That would be great! Is it expensive?

A: Let's see... I would say about eight hundred dollars.

B: What? That's more than I make in a day and I'm a heart surgeon!

### Key Vocabulary

clog	<i>verb</i>	slowly forming a block in something
------	-------------	--

blockage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that stops another thing from passing through
----------	------------------------------	---

shut off	<i>verb</i>	to cause a machine to stop operating
falling apart	<i>phrase</i>	slowly break
leak	<i>verb</i>	liquid or gas escaping from its container through
plumber	<i>common noun, singular</i>	plumber
flush	<i>verb</i>	to cause water to clean a toilet
plunger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a tool for unclogging toilets
suspect	<i>verb</i>	have an idea about the reason for something
foreign	<i>Adjective</i>	something that doesn't belong
overflow	<i>verb</i>	to flow over the edge of something

rusty	<i>Adjective</i>	covered with a reddish brown color
drain	<i>verb</i>	to remove liquid from something by letting it flow
faucet	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device that controls the flow that comes out of
shutting off	<i>verb</i>	to cause a machine to stop operating

### Supplementary Vocabulary

pump	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a machine that moves liquid from one place to another
burst	<i>verb</i>	break apart suddenly
tap	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the part of the sink that water comes out of
appliance	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an electric machine with a special purpose



Learn English on your Terms

flood

*verb*

water coming into a  
place where it shouldn't

## The Office - Sorry I'm Late (C0113)

- A: Where is everyone? We were supposed to start fifteen minutes ago!
- B: Jo called and said she'd be here in a sec. She said she got tied up with a client.
- C: Sorry I'm late everyone. There was a huge traffic jam on the highway this morning.
- D: Morning everyone! Were you stuck in traffic as well, Jess? There was a huge pileup on the highway and traffic was backed up for miles.
- B: Scott just called and said that he's running late. His last meeting ran over, but he's on his way now.

A: Guys, this is not acceptable. If I say the meeting starts at ten, the meeting starts at ten. Not ten-oh-one! And definitely not ten-ten! All right. Let's get started. So the first thing I want to talk about is our...

E: I'm really sorry, everyone! I know I'm late. But really, it's not my fault. I was getting a coffee at Starbucks, and the line was way too long. I was waiting for twenty minutes to get my coffee!

### Key Vocabulary

backed up	<i>verb</i>	blocked so you can't move forward
get tied up	<i>phrase</i>	became busy; unable to leave
running late	<i>verb</i>	going to be late
run over	<i>verb</i>	to go beyond a limit
stuck in traffic	<i>phrase</i>	so many cars on the road that you can not drive or move forward
in a sec	<i>phrase</i>	soon

<b>huge</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	very big
<b>traffic jam</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a lot of cars stopped from moving
<b>pileup</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an accident where many cars crash into each other

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>punctual</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	the quality of always being on time
<b>behind schedule</b>		later than planned; late
<b>sleep in</b>	<i>verb</i>	sleep later than planned
<b>tardiness</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	the quality of often being late
<b>hustle</b>	<i>verb</i>	move very quickly

## The Weekend - 1980's (C0114)

A: Jim! What's up man!

B: Charlie! Is that your ride? It's butt ugly, dude!

A: Don't be a airhead! This is a nineteen sixty-nine Chevy Impala! I just need to fix it up a bit. In a couple of months, this baby is gonna be wicked!

B: Not even! Check it out! Now that's a fresh ride!

A: Too bad the driver is a major dweeb. Anyone can have a car like that if their daddy is loaded like his.

B: He's coming this way, be cool.

C: Hey guys! What do you think of my automobile? Isn't it bad to the bone?

A: Word! The ladies are gonna be lining up to get with you when they see you driving around in that car.

C: You really think so?

B: For sure!

C: Awesome!

A: Psych! haha.. you totally fell for it.

C: You are a real scumbag, Charlie. When I do the nasty with the prom queen, we'll see who has the last laugh.

B: Dude, don't have a cow!

## Key Vocabulary

dweeb	<i>common noun, singular</i>	nerd, loser
to get with	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	to be romantic with (slang)
airhead	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a silly or stupid person
wicked	<i>Adjective</i>	very good (slang)
loaded	<i>Adjective</i>	rich
butt ugly	<i>Adjective</i>	very ugly
ride	<i>common noun, singular</i>	car (slang)
dude	<i>common noun, singular</i>	man (slang)
fresh	<i>Adjective</i>	new, cool (slang)

bad to the bones      *phrase*      completely cool

psych      *Interjection*      just kidding; I was joking

have a cow      *phrase*      get angry

### Supplementary Vocabulary

411      *phrase*      information

take a chill pill      *phrase*      relax; chill out

jock      *common noun, singular*      a male who plays a lot of sport

jet      *verb*      leave a place quickly

bite me      *phrase*      leave me alone; go away; I don't care

## Daily Life - I Don't Feel So Good (C0115)

A: Are you okay, man? You don't look very well.

B: Ugh, I feel terrible. I went out last night with Trevor and things got a little out of hand.

A: Nice! So, where did you guys go?

B: We hit a couple of local bars, and met up with some friends. Everything was cool until Mike came along, and it turned out that it was his birthday yesterday!

A: Oh no! Mike's birthday is a drinkfest for sure!

B: Tell me about it! We drank everything in the bar!

A: Is that why you missed work today?

B: Yeah. I woke up this morning feeling really nauseous. I threw up like five times.

A: Eww!

B: I was so dehydrated that I drank like a gallon of water, and my head has been pounding all day. I swear, I'm never gonna drink again!

A: Too bad man, tonight is Tracy's going away party and she asked if you were gonna go.

B: Oh, yeah. I'm there!

### Key Vocabulary

got a little out of hand      *phrase*      become out of control

hit      *principle*      to go to (a place)  
*verb, past*  
*simple*

turned out	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to happen a certain way
tell me about it	<i>phrase</i>	I agree; I understand
nauseous	<i>Adjective</i>	feel like you are going to vomit
threw up	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	vomit
dehydrated	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	lacking water
pounding	<i>principle verb, past perfect progressive</i>	to beat loudly and quickly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

wasted	<i>Adjective</i>	very drunk (slang)
barf	<i>verb</i>	to vomit

pain killers	<i>common noun, plural</i>	medicine you take to cure a headache
I feel like death	<i>phrase</i>	I feel very bad
hair of the dog	<i>phrase</i>	drink alcohol when you have a hangover to cure it

## The Office - You Missed The Deadline! (C0116)

A: And so, I just wanted to check in with you and find out where we are with this project. As you know, you've missed a fairly significant deadline last week, and this will negatively impact the team's ability to move forward with the next stages of this project.

B: I know, I'm really sorry that I missed the deadline. But really, it wasn't my fault. You see, we had all of these unexpected technical problems at the last minute, and that I couldn't get into the database and extract the kind of information that I needed for the data analysis. You know, if the tech guys would have done their job and kept the CRM stable, then I wouldn't have missed my deadline.

A: Oh, come on! An excuse like that is tantamount to lying. You're essentially blaming the tech team for your time management issues, rather than accepting responsibility for the fact that you were procrastinating for the past two weeks.

B: No, I'm not trying to pass the buck here; I know that it was me who is ultimately responsible for getting this done. But the thing is, I could have finished on time if the system hadn't gone down. And you know, with everything I've got going on now, I can't afford to waste time dealing with technical problems. I've got a lot on my plate and there are only twenty-four hours in a day...

A: I'm not going to accept this excuse. You're using these small technical glitches as a crutch and trying to rationalize the fact that you've missed your deadline. Look, we have standards and I expect you to live up to those standards. No more phoney excuses. If you're in over your head, you tell me. No more missed deadlines. Now, I want that data on my desk by nine am!

### Key Vocabulary

tantamount	<i>Adjective</i>	same as, equivalent to
fairly significant	<i>phrase</i>	very important or very relevant
essentially	<i>General Adverb</i>	in essence, basically

as a crutch	<i>phrase</i>	used to indicate you justify failure with excuses
rationalize	<i>verb</i>	to explain bad behavior in a way that (falsely) makes it seem proper or better
impact	<i>verb</i>	to have an effect on something
move forward	<i>phrase</i>	continue, go on
unexpected	<i>Adjective</i>	coming without warning
last minute	<i>phrase</i>	at the last moment
procrastinate	<i>verb</i>	leave tasks or duties for a later time
pass the buck	<i>phrase</i>	blame someone else, pass on the responsibility
ultimately	<i>General Adverb</i>	at last; in the end; eventually.

on my plate	<i>phrase</i>	another way of saying I have many things to do
phoney	<i>Adjective</i>	not true, fake or false
in over your head	<i>phrase</i>	too much to handle

### Supplementary Vocabulary

behind schedule	<i>phrase</i>	later than expected
procrastination	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the action of delaying one's work
fabricate	<i>verb</i>	to create an untrue story
justify	<i>verb</i>	to give the reasons why you did something wrong
tardiness	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the quality of being late often

## The Weekend - I'm Sorry I Love You IX (C0117)

Steven: Veronica wait! Come on honey, get back in the car. Let's talk it over, okay?

Veronica: No! I'm tired of your lies! I don't know who you are anymore!

Steven: Veronica. It's me, the man that has and always will love you. I'm sorry that I've lied to you. Believe me, it's been so hard for me as well, and time and again, I've thought of coming clean. But, I couldn't put you, or my mission at risk. It's all over now. My assignment is complete and now I have to go back to India.

Veronica: What? Are you kidding? Is there anything else I should know before I never see you again? How could you deceive me like that?

Steven: Yes... Veronica... I know that this isn't the best time and that you probably hate me right now but, I want to be completely forthright with you. I know deep in my heart that you are the best thing that has ever happened to me. Veronica... will you marry me? Come with me to India baby, I can't make up for everything that's happened, but I can promise you my undying love. I will be the most devoted husband, and I will cherish you always.

Veronica: Steven... I can't just leave everything at the drop of a hat! With everything that has happened between us, I just don't know you anymore. I just can't build a relationship on a foundation of lies. I do love you but... I can't go with you. I'm sorry... I love you...

AIRPORT: This is the last call for flight eight one five from Los Angeles to Hyderabad.

Airline worker: I'm sorry sir we can't wait any longer you must board the plane. Are you waiting for someone?

Steven: I was but, I don't think she is coming...

### Key Vocabulary

let's talk it over	<i>phrase</i>	let's talk about this problem and solve it
come clean	<i>verb</i>	confess, tell the truth
time and again	<i>phrase</i>	many times
deceive	<i>verb</i>	To cause to believe what is not true; mislead.
kidding	<i>verb</i>	fool or joke
forthright	<i>Adjective</i>	direct; honest; with no lies
undying	<i>Adjective</i>	endless, lasting forever
devoted	<i>Adjective</i>	showing or feeling strong loyalty or love

cherish	<i>verb</i>	to treat with affection and tenderness
at the drop of a hat	<i>phrase</i>	soon, in this very instant
foundation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the base of a structure

### Supplementary Vocabulary

integrity	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the quality of being honest and fair
cry wolf	<i>phrase</i>	make people think there is danger when there is none
be straight with someone		be honest with someone
level with someone	<i>phrase</i>	speak honestly
give you the lowdown	<i>phrase</i>	tell you true information; tell you the facts

## Daily Life - Baby Talk (C0118)

A: Honey, the baby is up again.

B: It's your turn! I went last night.

A: Fine! Hello widdle baby! Why are you crying widdle baby? Oh, I see, you made a doo-doo!

B: What's going on hun? Why is the baby crying?

A: The widdle baby made a doo -doo!

B: What a good boy! Lets get this icky diaper off you.

A: Looky what I have here! Mickey Mouse jammies! oopsie-daisy! Did the widdle baby just tinkle all over daddy?

B: Yes he did! Yes he did! You just made a wee wee all over daddy!

A: Hold still while I change this yucky diaper.

C: What going on in here?

A: Oh look it's nana! Say hi to nana!

C: He's so adorable! I could just eat him up!

A: Ok, say bye to nana! Time to go beddy - bye!

### Key Vocabulary

doo-doo	<i>common noun, singular</i>	solid waste discharged from body (informal)
up	<i>Adjective</i>	awake

your turn	<i>phrase</i>	an opportunity or responsibility to do something
widdle	<i>Adjective</i>	little (baby talk)
icky	<i>Adjective</i>	gross, disgusting (baby talk)
diaper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece of cloth used as underwear that holds body waste
jammies	<i>common noun, plural</i>	pajamas (informal)
tinkle	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to urinate (informal)
wee wee	<i>common noun, singular</i>	urine (informal)
hold still	<i>principle verb, imperative</i>	don't move

yucky	<i>Adjective</i>	gross, disgusting (informal)
nana	<i>common noun, singular</i>	grandma (informal)
I could just eat (something) up	<i>phrase</i>	to enjoy something greatly (informal)
beddy-bye	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	go to sleep (informal)
oopsie-daisy	<i>Interjection</i>	oops; (an informal interjection when a mistake is

### Supplementary Vocabulary

din-din	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	dinner (informal; childish)
binkie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	soother; pacifier; a thing you put in a baby's mouth for it to suck (childish)

booboo	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a small injury; something that hurts (informal, childish)
potty	<i>common noun, singular</i>	toilet (informal; childish)
baba	<i>common noun, singular</i>	bottle (informal; childish)

## The Weekend - Being Scared (C0119)

Shabby: Eddie, why are we at this scary looking mansion? It's like, ultra spooky!

Eddie: I told you already Shabby, the owner of the house says there is a ghost haunting his house so we have to go in and investigate.

Scru↓y I don't like this!  
pu↓y  
poo:

Wilma: Come on guys, stop being such cowards. It's a mystery and an adventure!

Shabby: This place gives me the creeps! Seriously guys, let's get out of here! I'm getting goose-bumps just being here!

Scru↓y: Shabby is a scaredy cat!

Wilma: That laugh came from this room. Let's go and check it out.

Eddie: Look! A ghost! Run!

### Key Vocabulary

spooky	<i>Adjective</i>	strange and a little frightening
scary looking	<i>Adjective</i>	frightening in appearance
scaredy cat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who is always scared of things
coward	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who is too afraid to do what is right
goosebumps	<i>common noun, plural</i>	small bumps on your skin caused by fear, cold, etc

haunt	<i>verb</i>	(a ghost) lives or visit a place
investigate	<i>verb</i>	to try and get information about something
mansion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a very large house

### Supplementary Vocabulary

supernatural	<i>Adjective</i>	unable to be explained by science
terrifying	<i>Adjective</i>	extremly scary
creepy	<i>Adjective</i>	strange or scary (informal)
creep (someone) out	<i>phrase</i>	make someone scared and uncomfortable
chilling	<i>Adjective</i>	very disturbing or frightening

## The Weekend - Boxing (C0120)

A: Welcome back, boxing fans! My name is Rick Fields, and here with me is the man with an iron jaw, Bob Copeland.

B: Thank you, Rick! We are coming to you live from Las Vegas! We're in the beautiful MGM Grand Hotel and Casino where the world heavyweight championship is about to get under way!

A: That's right Bob! We are about to witness the legendary Italian Stallion himself, Rocky Balboa, square off against his lifetime rival, Apollo Creed! This will be a gruesome match for sure.

B: Both fighters are in the ring, and we are about to begin.

C: In the blue corner, weighing in at two hundred and twenty pounds, the former heavyweight champion of the world, "The Master of Disaster", the one and only, Apollo Creed! In the red corner, weighing two hundred and eighteen pounds and with a record of forty-seven wins and thirty-seven knockouts, the undefeated, undisputed, heavyweight champion of the world, the "Italian Stallion", Rocky Balboa!

A: There is the bell and this fight is underway! Apollo quickly attacks Rocky with quick strong jabs! Rocky dodges successfully and counterattacks with a strong right hook!

B: Apollo is cut! Rocky landed a strong blow to his right eyebrow and cut him!

A: This is his chance! Rocky quickly throws a left, right, another left! Apollo is getting pounded!

B: Apollo recovers with a powerful haymaker and catches Rocky off guard! He's down! the ref starts the count!

C: 1,2,3,4,5,.....

### Key Vocabulary

gruesome	<i>Adjective</i>	causes horror or disgust
square off	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to prepare to fight
land	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	land
dodges	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	avoid being hit by something
pounded	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	hit hard multiple times

### Supplementary Vocabulary

mouth guard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a plastic protective piece placed inside the mouth to protect the teeth
trunks	<i>common noun, plural</i>	shorts worn for swimming or athletics
jock strap	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an elasticated belt with a pouch to support the genitals, worn by male athletes
head butt	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a quick strong blow with the head
low blow	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an illegal blow below the waist

## Global View - Presidential Speech (C0121)

A: Good evening, my fellow Americans. Three days from now, after a half-century of service of our country, I shall lay down the responsibilities of office as, in a traditional and solemn ceremony, the authority of the Presidency is vested in my successor. This evening I come to you with a message of leave-taking and farewell, and to share a few final thoughts with you, my countrymen.

A: Like every other citizen, I wish the new President, and all who will labor with him, Godspeed. I pray that the coming years will be blessed with peace and prosperity for all.

A: Our people expect their President and the Congress to find essential agreement on questions of great importance, the wise resolution of which will better shape the future of our great nation. My own relations with Congress began on a remote and tenuous basis when, long ago, a member of the Senate appointed me to West Point. I then had the pleasure of building more intimate relationship with Congress during the war and immediate post-war period. Finally, we have progressed to the mutually interdependent relationship we've had during these past eight years.

### Key Vocabulary

tenuous	<i>Adjective</i>	flimsy, weak, or uncertain
solemn	<i>Adjective</i>	serious, formal
vest	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to give (someone) the legal right or power to do something
Godspeed	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	used to wish success to someone who is going away

resolution	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a formal statement of agreement
------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Congress	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The national legislative body of the United States, consisting of the Senate and the House of Representatives.
Capitol Hill	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a hill in Washington, D.C., where the Capitol Building sits and Congress meets
Bestow	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To present as a gift or an honor; confer:
Arduous	<i>Adjective</i>	difficult to accomplish; strenuous
Prosperity	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an economic state of growth with rising profits and full employment

## Daily Life - Supermarket Cashier (C0122)

A: Excuse me sir, this is the express check-out lane for people that have fifteen items or fewer. It looks like you have more than fifteen items there.

B: Oh, come on! I have sixteen items! Cut me some slack, will ya?

A: Fine! Please place your items on the belt and push your shopping cart through. Do you prefer paper or plastic?

B: Plastic. I also have a couple of coupons.

A: No problem, I'll take those. Sir, these coupons expired yesterday.

B: Darn! Oh, well. I guess it's just not my day. Thanks anyway.

A: Do you have a club card or will it be cash?

B: Yeah I got a club card. Here you go.

A: Will this be debit or credit?

B: Debit please. Also, could I get cash back? Fifty dollars would be great.

A: Yeah, sure. Your total is seventy-eight dollars and thirty-three cents. Here is your receipt. Have a nice day.

### Key Vocabulary

it is just not  
my day

*phrase*

a lot of bad things hap-  
pened to me today

cash back

*common  
noun, non-  
variable*

charging more money  
to your card in order to  
receive cash back

cut me some slack	<i>phrase</i>	don't be so strict, bend the rules
expire	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to no longer be valid after a period of time
check-out lane	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the place you line up to pay for the things you want

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Stock	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To supply (a shop) with merchandise.
Warehouse	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a place where goods are stored prior to their sale or distribution
Poultry	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Domestic birds, such as chickens, turkeys, ducks, or geese, raised for meat or eggs.

Bag boy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A person, usually a teenager that works at a supermarket and places groceries that a person buys in plastic or paper bags
Bar code	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an arrangement of numbers and parallel lines on a package, which can be electronically scanned at a checkout to give the price of the goods

## The Weekend - 1990's (C0123)

A: Hey four-eyes! What's up man, how have you been?

B: Not bad, just went to the mall and picked up some junk. Check out my new Adidas!

A: Those are dope! You are gonna be getting mad props from the gang, man. Anyways, have you seen Betty lately?

B: Dude, don't even go there. That girl started trip-pin' cuz I went to the movies with Veronica the other day. I was like "look, you knew how I was before you got with me".

A: That's right! Your such a playa, man. Dude, there's Mad Max. Let's go say hi.

B: Max! Whassup! Are you okay? You look like you just saw a ghost.

C: I got an F in English class. My life is over...

A: Dude, get over it! You need to lay off the books for a while and have some fun! Come on, let's bounce.

C: Where are we going? Oh, crap. My dad is gonna go postal when he finds out about this.

A: I'm gonna open a can of whopass on you if you don't come with me now!

C: Okay, okay. Geez...

### Key Vocabulary

mad props

*common  
noun, singular*

recognition (informal)

tripping	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	being agitated, upset
bounce	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	informal of saying let's go
go postal	<i>principle verb, Going to Future</i>	to act violently or aggressively
I was like	<i>phrase</i>	an informal way to introduce a piece of dialogue
What's up	<i>phrase</i>	What's up (informal)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

All that and a bag a chips	<i>phrase</i>	Slang way of saying; I'm the best and more
Bling-Bling	<i>phrase</i>	wearing gold or precious stones
The Bomb	<i>phrase</i>	Something is cool, it's great



Learn English on your Terms

My Bad

*phrase*

Expression used to say  
my mistake or I'm sorry

I'm down with  
that

*phrase*

That sounds good to  
me, I agree

## Daily Life - Tools (C0124)

A: Alright, ladies and gentlemen. We've been hired to build a deck on this here house, and turn this boring and drab lawn into a backyard oasis. There is one catch, though. We've only got one day to finish this, so I'm gonna need everyone to give one hundred and ten percent today. It's going to be tough, but we've got a great team here, and I know that together we can tackle this project. That being said, let's get to work!

B: That's right. Now, remember, we've been over the plans, but we really need to make sure that everything is up to code. The home inspectors here are pretty thorough, so please make sure you follow the plans exactly. And remember the carpenter's rule of thumb: measure twice and cut once.

A: Okay, guys. Let's get at it. Bob! Pass me that hammer! The nails won't go in; the wood is too hard. I think I'm gonna need the nail gun. That did it!

C: Do me a favor and help me cut this two-by-four, will ya? Pass me the circular saw, and grab hold of the end of the board. Now help me drill some holes in it so we can place the bolts.

B: I think you should sand the edges. Look at all these splinters, someone could get hurt. Geez...you gotta take pride in your work!

C: Yeah, you're right. Pass me the sander and I'll take care of it.

A: Julia! Get over here with the level, measuring tape and that box of screws!

C: Oh, no! Look out below!

### Key Vocabulary

to give one hundred and ten percent	<i>phrase</i>	to try your best
---	---------------	------------------

two-by-four	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece of wood that is 2 inches thick and 4 inches wide
take pride in your work	<i>phrase</i>	let your effort be a reflection of your skill
plans	<i>common noun, plural</i>	set of actions to complete a task
measuring tape	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a tool used to measure how long something is

### Supplementary Vocabulary

table saw	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a circular saw mounted under a table or bench so that large pieces of wood could be cut
moulding	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a decorative strip used for ornamentation or finishing on the edges of a wall

<b>drywall</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A wall or ceiling constructed of a prefabricated material, such as plasterboard or paneling.
<b>contractor</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person or firm that supplies materials or labour for other companies
<b>carpenter</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who makes or repairs wooden structures

## Daily Life - No Smoking! (C0125)

A: It smells like an ashtray in here!

B: Hi honey! What's wrong? Why do you have that look on your face?

A: What's wrong? I thought we agreed that you were gonna quit smoking.

B: No! I said I was going to cut down which is very different. You can't just expect me to go cold turkey overnight!

A: Look, there are other ways to quit. You can try the nicotine patch, or nicotine chewing gum. We spend a fortune on cigarettes every month and now laws are cracking down and not allowing smoking in any public place. It's not like you can just light up like before.

B: I know, I know. I am trying but, I don't have the willpower to just quit. I can't fight with the urge to reach for my pack of smokes in the morning with coffee or after lunch! Please understand?

A: Fine! I want a divorce!

### Key Vocabulary

pack smokes	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a box of cigarettes
urge	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a strong impulse, inner drive, or yearning
light up	<i>phrase</i>	to start smoking a cigarette
willpower	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the strength of mind to carry out a decision
nicotine chewing gum	<i>common noun, singular</i>	gum that slowly releases nicotine into the body

crack down	<i>phrase</i>	To act more forcefully to regulate or repress
cold turkey	<i>phrase</i>	Immediate, complete withdrawal from something
nicotine patch	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a patch that slowly releases nicotine into the body
ashtray	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A receptacle for tobacco ashes and cigarettes and cigars
cut down	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	reduce the amount taken or used

## Supplementary Vocabulary

drag	<i>common noun, singular</i>	smoking a cigarette once, a pull, share a cigar with someone
------	------------------------------	--

tar	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A solid, sticky substance that remains when tobacco is burned. It accumulates in the lungs of smokers and is considered carcinogenic.
lighter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A mechanical device for lighting a cigarette, cigar, or pipe.
match	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a thin strip of wood or cardboard tipped with a chemical that ignites when scraped against a rough or specially treated surface
stogie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	informal of saying cigarette
butt	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the end of the cigarette which contains the filter and is placed in the mouth to smoke

## The Weekend - That's Funny! (C0126)

Annd Hello everyone, and welcome to open mic night!

You're in for a real treat as we've got a lot of great comics here with us tonight. First up, we have a very funny man coming straight from the state of Montana, Robert Hicks!

A: Thank you, everyone! Well, what a lovely crowd. You know, there's nothing I love better than stand-up comedy! You know, I've been working on my routine for months now, and I've got some real zingers for you tonight. Let's start out with some short jokes, how bout that? Where do you find a one legged dog? Where you left it.

A: Get it? mmm Anyways... What do you call a sheep with no legs? A cloud !

A: Tough crowd... Alright, now you're going to love this joke. It's hilarious! What do cows do for entertainment? They rent mooovies ! mooovies

A: Okay, Okay, we've got a few hecklers in the audience, but this one is good! What does a fish say when it runs into a wall? DAM!

A: Okay, Last one! Why do gorillas have big nostrils? Coz they got big fingers!!!!!!!

Crowd: Get off the stage! You suck!

A: Thanks everyone that was my time.

## Key Vocabulary

open	mic	<i>common noun, singular</i>	when a club or restaurant allows for anyone to sign or perform
night			
stand-up		<i>common noun, singular</i>	when someone performs comedy while standing on a stage
comedy			
routine		<i>common noun, singular</i>	a series of things (such as movements or jokes)

<b>zinger</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a quick and clever comment that criticizes
<b>heckler</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	someone who interrupts (someone, such as a speaker)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>comeback</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A reply to an insult; a witty retort.
<b>dis</b>	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	insulting or in some other way defaming someone or something.
<b>punk</b>	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to play a joke or prank someone
<b>mock</b>	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	make fun of or laugh at someone



Learn English on your Terms

**ad lib**

*General*

*Adverb*

In an unrestrained manner; spontaneously.

## The Weekend - I Love That Song! (C0127)

Host: Welcome back, music lovers, to "I Love That Song"! The game show where we test your musical knowledge to the extreme! Let's get started! Team A... Guess this tune:

Team A: Carrying Your Love With Me by George Straight! The genre is country music!

Host: You are right! one hundred points to team A! Now, for our next cut.

Team B: Thong Song by Sisqo! I believe the genre is R&B?

Host: One hundred big points for team B! For all our viewers the acronym R&B stands for Rhythm and Blues. On that note, DJ, play our next song!

Team B: Superstar by The Carpenters!

Host: And the genre?

Team B: Um... Um... Adult Contemporary?

Host: That's right! A hundred points! Uh oh! That sound means it's double or nothing! The songs are more difficult and the points are doubled! Let's hear our next song!

Team A: Too easy! That song is Kinslayer by the Finnish power metal group, Nightwish!

Host: You are correct! Very impressive team A! And it seems we have a tie! It's time now for the tie-breaker round! Each team will be played three songs and they must tell us the genre of each song in less than five seconds! Team A, are you ready?

Team A: Ready!

Host: Let's hear it!

Team A: Hip Hop, Classical and Gothic metal!

Host: You are right! Team B, the pressure is on, if you get all of them right, we will move on to sudden death. If you miss one, you lose!  
DJ, Let's hear it!

Team B: Rap, Disco and... and...

### Key Vocabulary

genre	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a kind of literary or artistic work
acronym	<i>common noun, singular</i>	abbreviations

sudden death	<i>common noun, singular</i>	extra time to determine a winner after a tie
the pressure is on	<i>phrase</i>	the outcome or result depends on you
double or nothing	<i>phrase</i>	used when you want to bet twice as much

### Supplementary Vocabulary

air guitar	<i>common noun, singular</i>	when a person pretends to play the guitar when listening to music
a capella	<i>Adjective</i>	to sing without any instruments or music
encore	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a demand by an audience for an additional performance at the end of a concert
chorus	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a part of a song repeated after each verse



Learn English on your Terms

hit

*common*

a person or thing that

*noun, singular*

gains wide appeal or  
fame

## Daily Life - I'm Sorry I Love You X (C0128)

Gulam: Steven! Good to see you brother! How are you? How was your trip?

Steven: It was fine. I've been better but, it's great to be home, I've missed you all! How's mom?

Gulam: She's great! All she ever does is talk about you -her little boy that went to the United States. You're her pride and joy, you know that?

Steven: Can't wait to see her. And you? What's new with you?

Gulam: Well, Nisha and I are expecting! You'll have another nephew or niece soon!

Steven: That's great! Wow! Congrats! You two are great together, ya know. You have such a beautiful family. I hope one day I can have that.

Gulam: Of course, man! Come on! I mean, everything was set here for you to marry Shalini! You know, she's still pining after you. I don't think she'll ever get over you.

Steven: What are you talking about? I hardly knew her! How could she be in love with me? I couldn't go through with it even though she is a great woman. No, I left my heart in the United States. I just hope Veronica is happy.

Gulam: Get over it! You're home now. Everyone here thinks so highly of you; there'll be girls throwing themselves at you. You can marry anyone you want!

Steven: I don't want to marry anyone! I want to marry her! Don't you understand?

Gulam: You are incorrigible.

Liliana: Steven! My baby how are you! I've missed you so much!

Steven: Hey, mom! Great to see you!

Liliana: You look so thin! Didn't those Americans feed you? Come come, let's have some chai. By the way... There is a girl here waiting for you.

Veronica: Hi Steven.

Steven: Veronica! How did you get here? How did you know where I live? I waited for you at the airport but you never showed...

Veronica: I also have some little secrets that I haven't told you about, but we can discuss that later. I realized that I was just scared. Scared of how much I love you and of the commitment that marriage requires. I'm here now. Now there is something I wanna ask you. Steven, will you marry me?

Priest: I now declare you, husband and wife. You may kiss the bride.

### Key Vocabulary

all she ever does	<i>phrase</i>	indicates something (she) does very often
pride and joy	<i>phrase</i>	someone or something that makes you very proud
pine	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	to want or desire (someone or something) very much
go through with	<i>phrase</i>	to do (something that you have thought or talked about)

incorrigible	<i>Adjective</i>	not able to be corrected or changed
--------------	------------------	-------------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

mother-in-law	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the mother of someone's wife
elope	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To run away with a lover, especially with the intention of getting married.
arranged marriage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a marriage arranged by someone other than the persons getting married
dowry	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Money or property brought by a bride to her husband at marriage
spouse	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A marriage partner; a husband or wife.

## Global View - Presidential Speech II (C0129)

A: We now stand ten years past the midpoint of a century that has witnessed four major wars among great nations. Three of these involved our own country. Despite the carnage of these conflicts, America is today the strongest, the most influential and most productive nation in the world. We are understandably proud of this pre-eminence, yet we realize that America's leadership and prestige depend, not merely upon our unmatched material progress, riches and military strength, but on how we use our power in the interests of world peace and human betterment.

A: Throughout America's adventure in free government, such basic purposes have been to keep the peace; to foster progress in human achievement, and to enhance liberty, dignity and integrity among peoples and among nations.

A: We pray that peoples of all faiths, all races, all nations, may have their great human needs satisfied; that those now denied opportunity shall come to enjoy it to the full; that all who yearn for freedom may experience its spiritual blessings; that those who have freedom will understand, also, its heavy responsibilities; that all who are insensitive to the needs of others will learn charity; that the scourges of poverty, disease and ignorance will be made to disappear from the earth, and that, in the goodness of time, all peoples will come to live together in a peace guaranteed by the binding force of mutual respect and love.

A: Now, on Friday noon, I am to become a private citizen. I am proud to do so. I look forward to it. Thank you, and good night.

### Key Vocabulary

foster	<i>principle</i> <i>verb, infinitive</i>	to help (something) grow or develop
yearn	<i>principle</i> <i>verb, present simple</i>	to feel a strong desire or wish for something

pre-eminence	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	more important, skillful, or successful than other
scourge	<i>common noun, plural</i>	someone or something that causes a great amount of trouble
we now stand	<i>phrase</i>	to be in a particular place or position

### Supplementary Vocabulary

stricken	<i>Adjective</i>	badly affected by disease, pain, grief, etc
Democrat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	US politics a member or supporter of the Democratic Party, the more liberal of the two main political parties in the US
Republican	<i>common noun, singular</i>	belonging to the Republican Party, the more conservative of the two main political parties in the US

first lady	<i>common noun, singular</i>	(in the US) the wife of the president elect
campaign	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An operation or series of operations energetically pursued to accomplish a purpose

## Daily Life - Going To The Gym (C0130)

A: Hey there, you look a little lost. Are you new here?

B: Yeah how'd you know?

A: You can always spot the newbies. I can give you a few pointers if you want. Were you trying to use this machine here?

B: Yeah! I just started my training today and I'm not really sure where to begin.

A: It's ok, I know how it is. This machine here will work out your upper body, mainly your triceps and biceps. Are you looking to develop strength or muscle tone and definition?

B: Well, I don't want to be ripped like you! I just want a good physique with weights and cardio.

A: In that case you want to work with less weight. You can start off by working ten to fifteen reps in four sets. Five kilo weights should be enough. Now it's very important that you stretch before pumping iron or you might pull a muscle.

B: Got it! Wow is that the weight you are lifting? My goodness that's a lot of weight!

A: It's not that much. Just watch... I'm ok...

### Key Vocabulary

pump iron	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>progressive</i>	to lift weights in order to make your muscles strong
-----------	--	--

pull a muscle	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>simple</i>	to hurt (a muscle, tendon, or ligament) by stretch
---------------	---	---

pointer	<i>common noun, plural</i>	suggestions, help
physique	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the size and shape of a person's body
ripped	<i>Adjective</i>	having a strong and muscular body or shape

### Supplementary Vocabulary

barbell	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a long metal rod to which heavy discs are attached at each end for weightlifting
treadmill	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an exercise machine that consists of a continuous moving belt on which to walk or jog
spinning	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an aerobic exercise that takes place on a specially designed stationary bicycle

scale	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An instrument or machine for weighing
sit-up	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an excercise performed to work out the abdominal muscles

## Daily Life - What if? Part 1 (C0131)

A: Okay, next question. If Eric asked you out on a date, what would you say?

B: Duh! I would say yes! Eric is the most popular kid in school! Okay, my turn. What would you do if you won the lottery?

A: Let's see.... If I won the lottery, I would buy two tickets for a trip around the world.

B: If you buy me a ticket I will go with you for sure!

A: My dad will freak out if I even mention a trip like that!

B: Alright this is a good one. What would your mom say if you told her you are going to get married?

A: If I told her that, she would faint and have me committed!

### Key Vocabulary

freak out	<i>principle verb, first conditional</i>	to lose one's nerve, become suddenly anxious
ask (some-one) out	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to request a date
commit	<i>principle verb, second conditional</i>	put in a mental hospital
get married	<i>principle verb, Going to Future</i>	to join in marriage
date	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a romantic meeting

### Supplementary Vocabulary

be in your shoes	<i>phrase</i>	to be in the place of someone
------------------	---------------	-------------------------------

sleepover	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An instance of spending the night as a guest at another's home.
hypothetical	<i>Adjective</i>	Suppositional; uncertain
gossip	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Rumor or talk of a personal, sensational, or intimate nature.
daydream	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To have dreamlike musings or fantasies while awake.

## Daily Life - Mechanic (C0132)

A: Howdy! Nice car! What seems to be the problem?

B: I don't know! This stupid old car started spewing white smoke and it just died on me. Luckily, I managed to start it up and drive it here. What do you think it is?

A: Not sure yet. How about you pop the hood and we can take a look. Hmm, it doesn't look good.

B: What do you mean? My daddy gave me this car for my birthday last month. It's brand new!

A: Well missy, the white smoke that you saw is steam from the radiator. You overheated your engine so now the pistons are busted and so is your transmission. You should have called us and we could have towed you over here when your car died.

B: Ugh... So how long is this going to take? An hour?

A: I'm afraid a bit more than that. We need to order the spare parts, take apart your electrical system, fuel pump and engine and then put it back together again. You are going to have to leave it here for at least two weeks.

B: What! How am I supposed to get to school or go shopping? This is not happening!

### Key Vocabulary

spew	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>progressive</i>	to flow out of something in a fast and forceful way
die on	<i>principle</i> <i>verb, past</i> <i>simple</i>	to stop working or running while in use by someone
busted	<i>Adjective</i>	broken
take apart	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>simple</i>	to remove all the pieces

how about                    *phrase*                    introduces request or suggestion

### Supplementary Vocabulary

gearbox	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the metal casing enclosing a set of gears in a motor vehicle
muffler	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a tubular acoustic device inserted in the exhaust system that is designed to reduce noise
cruise control	<i>common noun, singular</i>	control mechanism for keeping an automobile at a set speed
overtake	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To pass after catching up with another vehicle on the road
boot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device that is locked on the wheel of a car by the police to prevent it from moving

## Daily Life - Doing Laundry (C0133)

A: Ok, let's go through this one more time. I don't want anymore ruined or dyed blouses!

B: I know, I know. OK, so I have to separate the colors from the whites and put them in this strange looking contraption so called washing machine.

A: Right. You have to turn it on and program it depending on what type of clothes you are washing. For example for delicates, you should set a shorter washing cycle. Also, be sure to use fabric softener and this detergent when washing.

B: So complicated! Ok, what about this red wine stain? How do I get it out?

A: Since this is a white t-shirt, you can just pour a little bit of bleach on it and it will do the trick.

B: Cool. Then I can just throw everything in the dryer for an hour and its all set right?

A: No! Since you are washing delicates and cotton, you should set the dryer to medium heat and for twenty minutes.

B: You know what? I'll just have everything dry cleaned.

### Key Vocabulary

dye	<i>principle</i> <i>verb, past</i> <i>simple</i>	to change the color of (something, such as hair or clothing)
contraption	<i>common</i> <i>noun, singular</i>	machine
do the trick	<i>phrase</i>	accomplish the desired task
all set	<i>phrase</i>	ready, prepared

dry clean	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	a way to clean clothes without water.
-----------	--	---------------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

laundromat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place with washing machines and dryers, usually coin-operated and self-service
iron	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To press and smooth clothes with a heated iron
starch	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to stiffen clothes with a chemical compound
clothesline	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A cord, rope, or wire on which clothes may be hung to dry or air
clothes hamper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	basket or space where dirty clothes are put

## Daily Life - Buying a TV (C0134)

A: Seriously, I don't know why we need to get a new TV.

B: Honey I told you already. I can't appreciate the graphics level and detail of the games on my Playstation 3 on our old TV.

C: Good afternoon folks! How can I be of service today?

B: I'm looking to upgrade to a newer, bigger television set.

C: You've come to the right place! What size are you looking for?

A: Just a normal sized TV for our living room.

C: I see. Well this set here is on sale. It's a forty six inch HDTV screen and has all the works. Three HDMI connectors, USB, VGA and S - Video ports. It even has a DVI port so you can hook up your PC or laptop! This is without a doubt the complete home theater experience!

B: This is exactly what I need! Can you imagine watching movies or playing video games on this thing?

A: Honey, I think it's a bit too big. I don't even think it will fit in our living room.

C: Not to worry, we will deliver and install it in your home. It comes with a wall mount so you can just hang it on the wall like a picture!

B: This is great! How much will this set me back?

C: Lucky for you, this is the last one we have in stock so it's half off!

B: I'll take it!

### Key Vocabulary

appreciate	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to be grateful for (something)
upgrade	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	get something better, more modern, more useful
hook up	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	connect
set me back	<i>phrase</i>	cost
the works	<i>phrase</i>	the best things ordered

### Supplementary Vocabulary

projector	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A machine for projecting an image onto a screen or other surface.
-----------	----------------------------------	---

plug in	<i>phrase</i>	To connect (an appliance) to an electrical outlet.
speaker	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device that converts electrical signals into sounds loud enough to be heard at a distance
remote control	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A device used to control an apparatus or machine from a distance.
cable television	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a television service in which the subscriber's television is connected to a central receiver by cable

## Daily Life - Cheer Up (C0135)

A: Ok... I'll talk to you later. Bye

B: Carrie, are you ok? You seem a bit down.

A: I just got off the phone with my boyfriend. He is always getting upset and losing his temper over nothing. It's so hard to talk to him at times.

B: Maybe it's just that he is stressed out from work or something. He does have a pretty nerve wracking job you know.

A: Yeah but, he is always in a really foul mood. I try to find out what's bothering him or get him to talk about his day but, he always shuts down and brushes me off.

B: Men are like that you know. They can feel nervous, anxious or on edge and the only way they can express it is by trying to hide it through aggressiveness.

A: I guess you are right. What do you think I should do? He wasn't always this grouchy you know...

B: Talk to him, try to cheer him up when he is down and if that doesn't work, I say get rid of him and get a new one!

A: You are something else you know that?

### Key Vocabulary

**down**                      *Adjective*                      sad or unhappy

**stress out**                *principle*                      to feel very worried or  
                                    *verb, past*                      anxious  
                                    *simple*

**nerve wracking**           *Adjective*                      causing a person to feel  
                                    very nervous

brush me off	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	refuse to talk about something with someone
cheer up	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	to make (someone) happier

### Supplementary Vocabulary

down in the dumps	<i>phrase</i>	feeling sad, not happy
have the blues	<i>phrase</i>	having sad feelings or emotions
rattled	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to fluster, unnerve
grinds my gears	<i>phrase</i>	makes me angry, upsets me
pissed off	<i>phrase</i>	upset, very angry

## Global View - Gambling (C0136)

A: Did you hear? The state is thinking of legalizing gambling in our city! Soon we are gonna have amazing hotels and casinos here which will be good for our business!

B: Are you serious? Gambling is a vice industry built on deception and fed by the intentional exploitation of human weakness for the sole purpose of monetary gain! It disgusts me.

A: What are you talking about? How does it exploit people?

B: Well, to begin with, Gambling is addictive, ruins marriages, destroys families and bankrupts communities. Once you are addicted it is very difficult to stop. People have lost their houses, cars and been left out on the street after becoming addicted. Secondly, it exploits because men become addicted to gambling most often because of the action and risk. Women gamble to escape, and senior citizens will start gambling for the social interaction. Underage gamblers often start gambling on sports with friends and then illegal bookies.

A: Geez! Now that I think about it, maybe legalizing gambling isn't such a good idea! Although, I have been to Las Vegas, and I didn't become addicted or anything like that.

B: You cannot predict who will become addicted to gambling. Now excuse me, I have a protest rally to organize!

## Key Vocabulary

legalize	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	to make (something) legal
vice	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	bad or immoral behavior or habits
exploitation	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	using someone for something unfairly
sole purpose	<i>phrase</i>	only reason
monetary	<i>Adjective</i>	about money
gambling	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the practice of risking money in a game or bet
casino	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a building or room that has games you can bet on
bookie	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a person who organizes bets (informal)

addicted	<i>Adjective</i>	unable to stop doing something that is harmful
----------	------------------	--

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Texas Hold'em	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a variation of poker where there are five community cards and each player has two personal cards.
slot machine	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a machine featuring an electronic game on which to gamble, worked by placing a coin in a slot
roulette	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A gambling game in which the players bet on which slot of a rotating disk a small ball will come to rest in.
odds	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the probability, expressed as a ratio, that something will or will not happen



Learn English on your Terms

online	gam-	<i>common</i>	a form to gamble via
bling		<i>noun, singular</i>	the internet visiting web sites and using a credit card

## Daily Life - Getting Internet Service (C0137)

A: Welcome to Galanet. How can I help you?

B: Hi. I would like to get an internet plan for my house.

A: Of course. We have three different plans with different prices you can choose from. The first one is the cheapest but most basic plan which is thirty dollars a month. This is for broadband internet with a download speed of five hundred and twelve kbps.

B: I have no idea what kbps means. I just want to be able to get online, play games and chat with my friends. Oh, and watch movies online as well.

A: Well, this connection might be a bit too slow for your needs. I suggest you get the premium package for fifty dollars a month which includes a connection speed of two megabytes. That way you can play games online without any lag. This package also includes a wireless router and a personal firewall absolutely free!

B: Do I have to pay an installation fee?

A: Lucky for you, this month we aren't charging our normal installation fee. You are saving yourself 100 bucks right there! And we'll throw in this pen drive!

B: Awesome!

### Key Vocabulary

download	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	act of transferring data between computers
(someone's) needs	<i>phrase</i>	an individual's necessary requirements

wireless	<i>Adjective</i>	not using wires to send and receive data
firewall	<i>common noun, singular</i>	device used to protect a computer against intruders
broadband internet	<i>phrase</i>	fast internet connection
throw in	<i>phrase</i>	to enter for free
installation	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	process of making ready for use
lag	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a delay
online	<i>General Adverb</i>	over the internet

### Supplementary Vocabulary

cable Internet	<i>phrase</i>	form of broadband internet service delivered over cable television network, relatively fast
----------------	---------------	---

digital subscriber line		form of broadband internet service delivered over telephone network, relatively slow
modem	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device that allows data to be transferred between individual computers and networks
antivirus software	<i>phrase</i>	software which detects harmful viruses on a computer

## Daily Life - Renting A Car (C0138)

Man: Hi, I made a reservation for a mid-size vehicle.  
The name is Jimmy Fox.

Agent: I'm sorry, we have no mid-size available at the moment.

Man: I don't understand, I made a reservation, do you have my reservation?

Agent: Yes, we do, unfortunately we ran out of cars.

Man: But the reservation keeps the car here. That's why you have the reservation.

Agent: I know why we have reservations.

Man: I don't think you do. If you did, I'd have a car. See, you know how to take the reservation, you just don't know how to hold the reservation and that's really the most important part of the reservation, the holding. Anybody can just take them.

Agent: But we do have a compact or an SUV if you'd like.

Man: Fine. I'll take the compact.

Agent: Alright. We have a blue Ford Focus for you Mr. Fox. Would you like insurance?

Man: Yeah, you better give me the insurance, because I am gonna beat the hell out of this car.

## Key Vocabulary

make a reservation	<i>phrase</i>	to make an arrangement to hold something for later
--------------------	---------------	--

have no	<i>phrase</i>	to not have any
run out	<i>phrase</i>	to have no more
you better	<i>phrase</i>	you should
beat the hell out of	<i>phrase</i>	to purposefully abuse something
mid-size vehi- cle	<i>phrase</i>	a medium sized car
at the moment	<i>phrase</i>	at the present time
compact	<i>common noun, plu- ral</i>	a small car
SUV		sport utility vehicle
insurance	<i>common noun, non- variable</i>	protection from costs of accidental damage

### Supplementary Vocabulary

rental agree- ment	<i>phrase</i>	contract signed with details of car rental
-----------------------	---------------	---

daily rate	<i>phrase</i>	the amount of money to be paid per day the car is rented
book	<i>verb</i>	to make arrangements for later
coverage	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the protection that is offered by an insurance policy
leave a deposit	<i>phrase</i>	to leave money when you rent a car and that you get back if you return the car in good condition

## The Weekend - Playing Chess (C0139)

Daddy: Bobby! Come here, look what I got you!

Bobby: What is that?

Daddy: A chess board! Daddy is going to teach you how to play!

Bobby: Cool!

Daddy: Ok, each player gets 16 pieces. You can be the white ones and I'll play with the black pieces. Now in the front, you set up the pawns. Those are the least valuable pieces and can only move one space forward. When you are about to capture another piece, it can move one space diagonally.

Bobby: What about all these other pieces?

Daddy: See this one that looks like a tower? It's called the rook. The one with the tall hat is called the bishop. See this little horsey? This is called the knight, it's a very important piece so it's best to not let your opponent capture it.

Bobby: And these two? They are husband and wife?

Daddy: That's right! That's the queen and that's the king. If the other player captures your king, he will say "Check Mate" and the game is over! Doesn't this sound fun?

Bobby: Nah! This is boring! I'm gonna go play Killer Zombies on my PlayStation!

## Key Vocabulary

diagonally

*General  
Adverb*

on a diagonal, forward  
and to the left or right

set up	<i>phrase</i>	make ready for use
valuable	<i>Adjective</i>	very useful or helpful
capture	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to take
pawn	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the weakest piece in chess; a person or group without much power
boring	<i>Adjective</i>	not interesting
Check Mate	<i>phrase</i>	describes situation in which king cannot move

### Supplementary Vocabulary

queen	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a very powerful piece in chess
knight	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a useful piece in chess

bishop	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece in chess that can only move diagonally
king	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the final and most important piece in chess
chess	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a game in which each player moves 16 pieces across a board and tries to capture the opponent's king
rook	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a piece in chess that can only move along straight lines

## Daily Life - Buying a Computer (C0140)

Customer: So can you fix it?

Sales Clerk: I'm sorry sir. This computer is not broken or damaged. It's simply just too old! That's why your programs and applications are running slow. There really isn't much I can do.

Customer: What do you mean? I bought this computer just three years ago!

Sales Clerk: Yes, but technology is ever changing and technology is becoming obsolete faster and faster!

Customer: Ok, I know where this is going. How much will it cost me to get a new computer?

Sales Clerk: Well, this desktop over here is our latest model. It has a four gigahertz processor with sixteen gigabytes in RAM and a hard disk with one terabyte. Of course, it includes a mouse, keyboard and desk speakers.

Customer: I have no idea what you are talking about. I just want to know if it's good and if I will be able to play solitaire without the computer crashing or freezing all the time!

Sales Clerk: This PC is top of the line and I guarantee it will never freeze! If it does, we'll give you your money back!

## Key Vocabulary

I have no idea

*phrase*

to be completely unaware of something

freeze	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to suddenly stop functioning
where (something) is going	<i>phrase</i>	the direction of an event
ever changing	<i>phrase</i>	always becoming different
obsolete	<i>Adjective</i>	no longer useful
program	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a computer application
gigabyte	<i>common noun, plural</i>	unit to measure a computer's storage capacity
random access memory		part of computer that temporarily stores information
hard disk	<i>phrase</i>	part of computer that stores data

<b>gigahertz</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	measurement of computer processor speed
<b>processor</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	device in a computer that manages operations
<b>crash</b>	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	to suddenly stop functioning
<b>guarantee</b>	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to make a written promise

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>warranty</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a written promise that a seller will repair a product if a problem arises
<b>laptop</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a portable computer



Learn English on your Terms

network	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a system for communicating between computers
evolve	<i>verb</i>	to change into a more advanced state
wireless modem	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device that allows computers to communicate without wires

## Daily Life - What If? Part 2 (C0141)

A: This is the good life! We have it good don't you think?

B: Yeah of course! Although, don't you ever wonder what "could have been"?

A: What do you mean?

B: Well, sometimes I think of how things could have turned out if I had done things a little differently.

A: For example?

B: Like for example, if I hadn't studied architecture, I would have become an artist like I wanted to.

A: I see. Yeah now that I think of it, I wouldn't have gotten married if I hadn't moved to this town and met Sally.

B: You see! Everything happens for a reason! We wouldn't even have met if I hadn't been in that car accident ten years ago!

A: Well, I have no regrets!

B: I'll drink to that!

### Key Vocabulary

turn out                      *phrase*                      to end up like

wonder                      *principle*                      to think about  
                                  *verb,*  
                                  *present*  
                                  *simple*

now that I think of it      *phrase*                      used to express a realization

regret	<i>common noun, plural</i>	to feel sad or sorry about something
good life	<i>phrase</i>	a happy and relaxed life
could have been	<i>phrase</i>	an alternative scenario
architecture	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the art and science of designing buildings
accident	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a sudden event that is not planned

### Supplementary Vocabulary

architect	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who designs buildings
wreck	<i>verb</i>	to ruin or destroy something (like a car)
remorse	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a feeling of guilt



Learn English on your Terms

ponder	<i>verb</i>	to think deeply about something
reminisce	<i>verb</i>	to think fondly about the past

## The Weekend - What Do I Wear? (C0142)

A: Honey come on! We are going to be late! Honestly, you take longer getting ready than I do!

B: I was drying my hair and ironing my shirt! Can you come here for a sec? I need your help.

A: What is it? Why are all these clothes on the bed?

B: I don't know what to wear! Ok, give me your opinion. Do you like the way this looks? The striped short sleeved shirt with this checkered sweater and my lucky sandals. I like the cut and hemline of these shorts so I think I'll wear these as well.

A: Are you joking? What am I going to do with you? We are going to a dinner party not the beach! Wear the shirt with the silk tie I bought you and these corduroy pants. It's chilly outside so you can wear this coat.

B: Thanks honey! You have such great fashion sense. Now, what am I going to do with my hair?

### Key Vocabulary

dinner party	<i>phrase</i>	an event where you eat at a friend's house
hemline	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the line formed by the lower edge of clothing
fashion sense	<i>phrase</i>	an idea for what clothing looks good
checkered	<i>Adjective</i>	a pattern with alternating squares
striped	<i>Adjective</i>	having stripes or bands of color
sandal	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a type of footwear with open toes
cut	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the shape and style of a piece of clothing

corduroy	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a ribbed cotton clothing material
----------	--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

sneakers	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	casual tennis shoes
polka dot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a fabric pattern with many circles
denim	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a type of fabric used to make jeans
out of fashion	<i>phrase</i>	used to describe something that is no longer popular
tailor	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who makes clothes, adjusts the fit

## Daily Life - The Butcher (C0143)

Butcher: Hi. What can I get for you?

Gina: I'd like a half a pound of ground beef, please.

Butcher: Good choice! Our ground beef is extra lean, if you know what I mean.

Gina: Could I also have half a dozen pork chops and two pounds of boneless chicken breasts?

Butcher: No, no no no chicken breasts at the moment, but we have some nice chicken thighs.

Gina: No, that won't do. I'll take this smoked ham you have here.

Butcher: Okay, is there anything else?

Gina: Do you have any other cold cuts? Is this salami and bologna you have here?

Butcher: Yes! It's very fine meat! Made it myself...

Gina: Sounds good. Okay, that's it.

Butcher: Wait! We have T-bone, rib eye, and sirloin steaks. They are very fresh! Just came from the slaughter house...

Gina: Mmm... No that's okay, really. I think that's all for today.

Butcher: Okay. That will be thirty-four dollars and fifty cents.

## Key Vocabulary

ground beef	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	beef that has been put through a grinder
if you know what I mean	<i>phrase</i>	used to express the listener is aware of something that is assumed to be known
lean	<i>Adjective</i>	having a low fat content
pork chop	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a cut of pork in an individual size
chicken breast	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the meaty breast portion of a chicken
boneless	<i>Adjective</i>	with the bones removed
chicken thigh	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the upper leg portion of meat on a chicken
smoked ham	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a ham which has been seasoned with smoke

cold cuts	<i>phrase</i>	cold cooked meat, used for sandwiches
salami	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	spicy dry sausage
bologna	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	wide sausage that is sliced
T-bone	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a thick piece of beef with a T shaped bone in it
rib eye	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a tender cut of beef from the outer side of the rib
slaughter house	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the place where animals are killed for their meat
sirloin	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a piece of beef from lower back of the cow
steak	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a slice of beef

## Supplementary Vocabulary

turkey	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a type of meat from a large bird, similar to chicken
hot dog	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a type of small sausage
cleaver	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a type of knife a butcher uses
chopping block	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the table that a butcher works on
butcher paper	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	the waxy paper a butcher uses to wrap meat in

## Global View - Capital Punishment (C0144)

Professor That's all for today's class. We will continue our lecture on crime and punishment tomorrow.

A: Do you think we should be tougher on crime?

B: Well, it depends on what you mean.

A: For example, we could bring back the death penalty for murder, give longer prison sentences for lesser offences and lock up juvenile offenders.

B: Those really sound like Draconian measures. Firstly, what do you do about miscarriages of justice if you've already put innocent people to death?

A: You'd only use capital punishment if you were absolutely sure that you'd convicted the right person.

B: But, there've been many cases of wrongful conviction where people have been imprisoned for many years. The authorities were sure at the time, but later it was shown that the evidence was unreliable. In some cases, it'd been fabricated by the police.

A: Well, no system of justice can be perfect, but surely there's a good case for longer prison sentences to deter serious crime.

B: I doubt whether they could act as an effective deterrent while the detection rate is so low. The best way to prevent crime is to convince people who commit it that they're going to be caught. It doesn't make sense to divert all your resources into the prison system.

A: But if you detect more crimes, you'll still need prisons. In my reckoning, if we could lock up more juvenile criminals, they'd learn that they couldn't get away with it. Soft sentences will merely encourage them to do it again.

B: Yes, but remember that prisons are often schools for criminals. To remove crime from society, you really have to tackle its causes.

A: Well, if I were president, I would impose tougher laws and punishment. I would have a peaceful society based on fear of punishment, not consciousness of doing the right thing.

B: You sound like a dictator!

A: Well if it works, why not?

### Key Vocabulary

death penalty	<i>phrase</i>	the punishment of death
---------------	---------------	-------------------------

prison sentence	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the amount of time to keep criminals in jail
-----------------	----------------------------	--

juvenile offender	<i>common noun, plural</i>	underage criminals
Draconian	<i>Adjective</i>	very strict and severe
miscarriage of justice	<i>phrase</i>	an unjust legal decision
capital punishment	<i>phrase</i>	punishment of death
fabricate	<i>verb</i>	to make something up to trick people
deterrent	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that prevents people from doing something
divert	<i>verb</i>	to move resources from one thing to another
dictator	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who rules with absolute power

## Supplementary Vocabulary

diversion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of changing the direction or use of something
authoritarian	<i>Adjective</i>	expecting or requiring people to obey rules or laws
divisive topic	<i>phrase</i>	an issue that causes disagreement between people and causes them to separate into different groups
recidivist	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who continues to commit crimes even after being caught and punished
rehabilitate	<i>verb</i>	to teach (a criminal in prison) to live a normal and productive life

## Daily Life - Chicken Pox (C0145)

A: What's wrong with you? Why are you scratching so much?

B: I feel itchy! I can't stand it anymore! I think I may be coming down with something. I feel light-headed and weak.

A: Let me have a look. Whoa! Get away from me!

B: What's wrong?

A: I think you have chicken pox! You are contagious! Get away! Don't breathe on me!

B: Maybe it's just a rash or an allergy! We can't be sure until I see a doctor.

A: Well in the meantime you are a biohazard! I didn't get it when I was a kid and I've heard that you can even die if you get it as an adult!

B: Are you serious? You always blow things out of proportion. In any case, I think I'll go take an oatmeal bath.

A: Ewww!

### Key Vocabulary

scratch	<i>principle</i> <i>verb,</i> <i>present</i> <i>progressive</i>	to rub your skin to stop an itch
itchy	<i>Adjective</i>	an unpleasant feeling on your skin, makes you want to scratch
come down with (something)	<i>phrase</i>	to become ill
lightheaded	<i>Adjective</i>	to feel dizzy

chicken pox	<i>phrase</i>	a childhood disease that leaves red spots on the skin
contagious	<i>Adjective</i>	having a sickness that can be passed to someone else
rash	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a skin irritation
allergy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	medical condition that causes someone to become sick after eating, touching, or breathing something
in the mean-time	<i>phrase</i>	for the present time
biohazard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a harmful substance
blow (something) out of proportion	<i>phrase</i>	to make something seem more serious

in the mean-  
time

*phrase*

for the present time

### Supplementary Vocabulary

flu	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	influenza, a contagious virus
cold	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a contagious common sickness
fever	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a high body temperature caused by illness
nauseous	<i>Adjective</i>	feelings of upset stomach and dizziness caused by illness
allergic	<i>Adjective</i>	having allergies to something

## Global View - Animal Rights (C0146)

- A: You should have seen the T.V. show that was on last night, the topic it covered was really interesting; animal rights.
- B: Do you really believe in that? If they are going to focus on something, they should do it on civil rights.
- A: Yes, but we can't deny that animals are vulnerable, defenseless, and are completely at the mercy of human beings.
- B: I understand your point, but we continue to have transgressions against human rights. If so much attention weren't devoted to the topic of animals, we would then concentrate more on saving a human being instead of protecting a koala.

A: You can't compare apples and oranges; I believe that both topics are important and that we can't ignore them, the mistreatment of animals can cause a great environmental imbalance. I believe that governments should prohibit activities like poaching.

B: Well, you are right on that point. This is the reason that I don't buy leather and I try to buy synthetic products.

B: At least you're doing your part. My contribution is to have a pet in the house that I treat like a member of the family.

A: As long as you don't treat it better than your wife, it's fine.

### Key Vocabulary

civil rights                    *phrase*                    the rights people have

vulnerable                    *Adjective*                    easily hurt or harmed

defenseless                    *Adjective*                    defenseless

at the mercy of	<i>phrase</i>	in a position where you can be harmed
transgression	<i>common noun, plural</i>	something that is not allowed
apples and or- anges	<i>phrase</i>	an unfair comparison of two different things
poach	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	to illegally hunt pro- tected animals
synthetic	<i>Adjective</i>	not natural
do your part	<i>phrase</i>	to help accomplish a goal

### Supplementary Vocabulary

biodegradable	<i>Adjective</i>	capable of being decom- posed by natural means
drought	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a prolonged period of time during which no rain falls

famine	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a severe shortage of food
biosphere	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the part of the earth's surface and atmosphere inhabited by living things
cloning	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a general term for the research activity that creates a copy of some biological entity

## Daily Life - The Argument (C0147)

A: Wow, that terrible movie is finally over. Next time I'm picking the film, because I don't want to end up seeing a chick flick.

B: Well you should have picked, in the end you always complain about everything.

A: Not everything, just this film. Even the title is ridiculous; and it's so long, those are the two and a half most wasted hours of my life, so much so that I'm thinking about asking them to give me my money back.

B: I'm thinking of taking you back home. I thought we could have a nice evening, but you're always so negative.

A: I'm only complaining about a movie that I could have rented or bought and then thrown in the garbage.

B: You see, that's what I'm talking about, I can't stand your sarcastic jokes anymore

A: Next time, go with your gay friend who is more in touch with his feelings.

B: Well he's more of a man than you are; at least he appreciates love stories.

A: Love? More like one-night-stands.

B: Don't criticize Mario or else I'll start on those fat, drunk friends of yours; they're no saints.

A: My friends? Fat? What about those whales you call friends?

B: You're unbearable; you can walk home, I'm leaving.

### Key Vocabulary

chick flick      *phrase*      a film that appeals to women

sarcastic      *Adjective*      the use of words to show irritation

in touch with      *phrase*      to be in close contact with

one-night-stand	<i>phrase</i>	a random and temporary romantic encounter
criticize	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to express disapproval
unbearable	<i>Adjective</i>	too bad to be accepted or endured

### Supplementary Vocabulary

intolerable	<i>Adjective</i>	too bad to be accepted or endured
chauvinist	<i>Adjective</i>	Prejudiced belief in the superiority of one's own gender, group, or kind
make fun of	<i>phrase</i>	To mock; ridicule.
brag	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to speak arrogantly and boastfully
discuss		to consider (something) by talking it over



## Daily Life - Paranoid (C0148)

A: Dan, Dan dude. You have to come over to my house right now!

B: Is everything Ok?

A: Just get over here!

A: Come in! Quickly!

B: So, since when is your house a bank?

A: What do you mean?

B: I mean, what's up with the and locks and iron bars on your windows.

A: Security Dan, security! You can never be too safe you know! A lot of sickos out there. Just the other day they caught that peeping tom red handed! Had a high power telescope and binoculars by his window.

B: Whats the matter with you? Why are you acting all paranoid?

A: Paranoid? I'm not paranoid! I'm cautious! You see Dan, we have to be on guard at all time! People just invade your privacy as if they knew you! Telemarketers, solicitors, even your bank! They have way too much information! I like to keep everything on a need to know basis

B: OK, well, what did you want to see me about?

A: You are being watched! Be careful Dan! Be careful!

### Key Vocabulary

sicko	<i>common noun, plural</i>	A deranged, psychotic, or morbidly obsessed person
red handed	<i>phrase</i>	doing something wrong or illegal
invade	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to affect in an unwanted way
paranoid	<i>Adjective</i>	having an feeling that people will harm you

need to *phrase*  
know  
basis

situation where you  
have only the informa-  
tion you need

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**schizophrenia** *common noun,  
singular*

a psychotic disorder  
characterized by with-  
drawal from reality,  
hallucinations, or emo-  
tional instability

**the grid**

informal way of describ-  
ing the network of in-  
formation that can be  
used to keep track of  
someone

**trace** *principle verb,  
present simple*

To locate or discover by  
searching or researching  
evidence

**peeping  
tom** *common noun,  
singular*

A person who gets  
pleasure, from secretly  
watching others; a  
voyeur.



Learn English on your Terms

## delusion

*common noun,  
singular*

A false belief strongly held in spite of invalidating evidence, especially as a symptom of mental illness



## Daily Life - Moving (C0149)

A: Ok, that's fine. Bye.

B: What happened?

A: That's it, my lease is up. I have to move.

B: What? Why? Can't you renew it?

A: The owner apparently is selling this place to make way for the construction of a parking lot

B: Well, I can help you pack. We should start looking for a new place for you ASAP.

A: I think I might move in with my parents for a couple of months until I can find something. You know how hard it is to find a decent place around here. I'm gonna have to put most of my stuff in storage for a while.

B: Well, let me know if there's anything I can do to help out.

A: Actually, would you mind looking after my pet tarantula and snake for a couple of weeks?

B: hehe.. sure

### Key Vocabulary

lease	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A contract granting use of property
renew	<i>verb</i>	to cause something to continue to be effective
pack	<i>verb</i>	wrap up
pack	<i>verb</i>	to put articles in a case or container for moving
place	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A building or an area
storage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A space for storing goods
look after	<i>phrase</i>	take care of
make way for	<i>phrase</i>	to create space for something else
ASAP		as soon as possible
decent	<i>Adjective</i>	good

look after              *phrase*              take care of

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>moving truck</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a big truck that can be hired or rented to carry furniture and boxes to another place
<b>bubble wrap</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	transparent plastic material commonly used for packing fragile items
<b>real estate agent</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	One that is authorized to sell land or property
<b>deposit</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A sum of money given as security for an item acquired for temporary use.
<b>movers</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	One that transports household or office goods from one location to another as an occupation

## The Weekend - Bug Spray (C0150)

A: The mosquitos are biting me!

B: Me too, I can't stop scratching. They are everywhere! Sneaky little jerks.

A: Do you have any bug spray?

B: No, I forgot to buy some.

A: Then we'll have to put up with it.

B: We can cover ourselves with beer! That way if they bite us, they'll get drunk and fall asleep

A: That's without a doubt, the best idea you've had! Let's do it!

B: Run! They are thirsty for more!

### Key Vocabulary

scratch

*principle verb,  
present progressive*

to rub your skin with  
something sharp

sneaky	<i>Adjective</i>	behaving in a secret and usually dishonest manner
put up with	<i>phrase</i>	to allow to exist or happen
bug spray	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a liquid used to prevent being bitten by bugs
mosquito	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a small flying insect that bites the skin

### Supplementary Vocabulary

mosquito net	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a net placed usually around a bed to prevent someone sleeping from being bitten
rash	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an outbreak of spots or patches on the skin, caused by illness or allergy
malaria	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a disease with recurring attacks of fever, caused by the bite of some types of mosquito



Learn English on your Terms

**bug zapper**      *common noun,  
singular*      a device that attracts  
and kills insects that  
are attracted by light

**pesticide**      *common noun,  
singular*      a chemical used to de-  
stroy pests, esp. insects

## Advanced - Darwin's Theory Of Evolution (E0151)

A: It's been a long time since I last saw you. Where have you been?

B: The exams and plans I have to turn in are driving me crazy, I don't even have time to sleep.

A: It's the same for me. I'm up to my neck in work, but at least finals are coming soon and we'll have a vacation. Where are you going now?

B: I'm going to Anthropology class and now with the year anniversary of Darwin, it's the only thing we study. Frankly, I'm sick and tired and tired of hearing about this guy.

A: What? Why? How can you not like Darwin? I mean the man changed the entire perception of how things came to be and his theory is backed by pretty solid evidence!

B: I don't like him. His theory of human evolution and natural selection is full of holes. It lacks the solid evidence of which you speak of.

A: That statement puts you at odds with half of the academy. Not to mention your professors! Furthermore, the explanation proposed by Darwin about the origin of species and the mechanism of natural selection constitutes a grand step toward a coherent understanding of the world and evolutionist ideas.

B: I'm not minimizing his grand contributions, it's just that his theory reminds of the conundrum of the chicken and the egg.

A: What are you talking about?

B: The question is, which was first? The chicken or the egg? I feel the same regarding his theory. How does the first cell of life come to be?

A: Interesting. I think that question is better suited for my philosophy class. In the meantime, how about we settle this... with a due!

### Key Vocabulary

sick and tired	<i>phrase</i>	bored or annoyed
----------------	---------------	------------------

at odds with	<i>phrase</i>	in a state of disagreement
coherent	<i>Adjective</i>	logical and consistent
minimize	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	to make something as small as possible
full of holes	<i>phrase</i>	including many faults
academy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a school that provides training in special subject
natural selection	<i>phrase</i>	a process by which best creatures survive
conundrum	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a confusing or difficult problem

## Supplementary Vocabulary

creationism	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Belief in the literal interpretation of the account of the creation of the universe and of all living things related in the Bible.
-------------	------------------------------	--



Learn English on your Terms

naturalism	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the doctrine that the world can be understood in scientific terms without recourse to spiritual or supernatural explanations
transmutation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the process or act of change, especially from one thing to another

## The Office - Cut It Out (C0152)

Ed: Hey, Mary, can you cut that out?

Mary Cut what out I'm not doing anything.

Ed: The tapping of your pen on your desk. It's driving me crazy.

Mary Fine! By the way would you mind not slurping your coffee every time you have a cup!

Ed: I don't slurp my coffee. And plus, how can you hear it when you're shouting into your phone all the time?

Mary You've got to be kidding me! You're complaining about me talking on the phone when you go out for a cigarette break ten times a day to shoot the breeze?

Ed: Look, we have a lot of accumulated anger from working in these conditions, and it's probably okay to let off steam once in a while But, it's probably not a good idea to keep it up I'm willing to forgive and forget and if you are.

Mary: Fine. Let's call a truce. I'll try to be more considerate  
and to keep the noise down

Ed: Yeah, I'll try to do the same. So, I was wondering  
if you wanna go out to dinner Friday night?

### Key Vocabulary

cut that out	<i>phrase</i>	tell sb to stop
You 've got to be kidding me	<i>phrase</i>	You must be making jokes with me
shoot the breeze	<i>phrase</i>	chat
accumulated	<i>Adjective</i>	gathered
let off steam	<i>phrase</i>	to release excess energy, emotion etc
keep up	<i>phrase</i>	carry on
forgive and forget	<i>phrase</i>	stop feeling anger and decide to let it go



Learn English on your Terms

call	a	<i>phrase</i>	stop fighting
truce			
considerate		<i>Adjective</i>	thinking about the feelings of other people
slurp		<i>verb</i>	eat or drink (something) noisily

### Supplementary Vocabulary



## Daily Life - Homesick (C0153)

Sarah: Tom! How are you? We missed you at the party last night. Are you ok?

Tom: I don't know. I didn't really feel like going out. I guess I'm feeling a little homesick.

Sarah: Come on We've been through this already! Look, I know the adjustment was hard when you first got here, but we agreed that you were gonna try and deal with it.

Tom: I was. It's just that the holidays are coming up and I won't be able to home because I can't afford the airfare. I'm just longing for some of the comforts of home, like my mom's cooking and being around my family.

Sarah: Yeah, it can get pretty lonely over the holidays. When I first got here, I'd get depressed and nostalgic for anything that reminded me of home. I almost let it get to me, but then I started going out, keeping myself busy and before I knew it, I was used to to it.

Tom: I see what you mean, but I 'm still bummed out.



Sarah: Ok how does this sound: let's get you suited up and hit the dance club tonight. I hear that an awesome DJ is playing and there will be a lot of pretty single girls there!

Tom: You know, I could really go for that. You don't mind being my wingman for tonight?

Sarah: Not at all! It be fun! It will be like a boys night out... well kinda...

Tom: Great! I must warn you though, whatever happens, don't let me go on a drinking binge. Trust me, it's not a pretty picture!

## Key Vocabulary

homesick	<i>Adjective</i>	sad because you are away from home
afford	<i>verb</i>	bear the cost of
longing for	<i>phrase</i>	showing a strong desire for something
nostalgic	<i>Adjective</i>	homesick



Learn English on your Terms

bummed  
out

*phrase*

disappointed



## The Weekend - Rock Band (C0154)

A: I'm forming a music band.

B: Do you already know how to play an instrument?

A: Uh... Yeah! I've told you a thousand times that I'm learning to play the drums. Now that I know how to play well, I would like to form a rock band.

B: Aside from yourself, who are the other members of the band?

A: We have a guy who plays guitar, and another who plays bass. Although we still haven't found anyone to be our singer. You told me that you had some musical talent, right?

B: Yes, I'm a singer.

A: Perfect. So you can audition this weekend here at my house.

B: Great! Wait here? You don't have enough room for the amplifiers, microphones or even your drums! By the way where do you keep them or practice?

A: Dude? What are you talking about? It's right here!  
All we need is my Nintendo Wii and we are set!

### Key Vocabulary

instrument	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a device that is used to make music
a thousand times	<i>phrase</i>	many times
form	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	create,organize
audition	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to take part in a trial performance
we are set	<i>phrase</i>	we are ready

## The Weekend - Bachelor Party (C0155)

A: Hi honey! You'll never guess what! My friends Julie and Alex are getting married!

B: Wow that's great news! They're a great couple!

A: I know! Anyways I just talked to Alex's best man and he is organizing the bachelor party It's gonna be gonna be so much fun! All the groomsmen are thinking up all the wacky and crazythings we are going to do that night.

B: You aren't going to a strip club are you? I don't want you getting a lap dance from some stripper with the excuse that it's your friends party.

A: Aw come on! It's just some innocent fun! You know how these things are! We are gonna play drinking games, get him some gag gifts and just have a good time.Nothing too over the top .

B: Well, I don't know.

A: Come on! If one of your friends was getting married I wouldn't mind you going to her bachelorette party!

B: Good, because my friend Wendy is getting married and I'm organizing her party!

A: What!

### Key Vocabulary

you will never guess	<i>phrase</i>	You won't believe
best man	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the principal groomsman at a wedding
You will never gues	<i>phrase</i>	You don't know what news I have
bachelor party	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a party held for a man that is getting married
groomsmen	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a male friend who attends a bridegroom at his wedd
wacky	<i>Adjective</i>	absurdly or amusingly eccentric or irrational

<b>gag gift</b>	<i>common noun, plural</i>	funny or adult type toys or gifts
<b>over the top</b>	<i>phrase</i>	extreme, excessive
<b>bachelorette</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an unmarried woman

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>going away party</b>	<i>phrase</i>	a party held for someone who is leaving home or the country
<b>drinking binge</b>	<i>phrase</i>	drinking alcoholic beverages with the primary intention of becoming intoxicated
<b>passed out</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	to become unconscious
<b>pull an all nighter</b>	<i>phrase</i>	to do something all night, esp. party
<b>stag party</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a bachelor party



## The Weekend - Scary Story (C0156)

A: Oh no! The lights went out! Honey can you light a candle?

B: Sure. What do we do now?

A: Well, we can just talk, you know, like we used to. Hmm... I know! I'll tell you a scary story! It happened to me and my dad when I was a teenager... (fade out - fade in new scene) I was living with my father at the time, when he received a phone call.

Hmm... I know! I'll tell you a scary story! It happened to me and my dad when I was a teenager... (fade out - fade in new scene) I was living with my father at the time, when he received a phone call.

B: Hmm... I know! I'll tell you a scary story! It happened to me and my dad when I was a teenager... (fade out - fade in new scene) I was living with my father at the time, when he received a phone call.

I was living with my father at the time, when he received a phone call.



Father: (phone rings) Hello? Yes this is him. I see, I'm sorry to hear that. Ok no problem. I'll be there shortly. (hang up the phone) Pack some clothes Tony, my great aunt is very ill and no one in the family wants to take care of her. We are going to stay at her house for a few days.

Kid: Aunt? What aunt? I never knew you had a great aunt!

Father: Well, the family doesn't talk about her or get near her, for that matter.

Kid: Why is that?

Father: Come on, we have to go.

B: So we arrived at this old house on the outskirts of our town. There was almost no one around and the house had an eerie look to it. Once inside the house, we walked to her room and I was surprised to find my dad's great aunt in a wheelchair, yelling at someone, but we were alone in the room.

Father: Hi, aunt Ursula! This is my son Tony.

Ursula: Why have you come? Why are you here? Don't you know it isn't safe? My time is near, he is coming for me.

Kid: Who is coming for you?

Ursula: The prince of darkness! The lord of the underworld, the tempter, the old serpent.

Father: Come on, aunt Ursula let's lay you down. You need to get some rest. Tony, help me lay her down.

B: That night, we slept in one of the 12 rooms of that big old mansion. The trees outside seemed to come alive and their shadows formed ghoulish shapes on my bed. All of a sudden, we heard screaming.

Ursula: Ursula: (muffled distant screaming, kid runs towards the sounds - her volume increases) Ahhh! Get off me beast! I won't let you take me! Ahhh!

Kid: Dad! Dad! Something is attacking aunt Ursula!

Ursula: Ursula: Take your claws off me! Go back to the underworld you demon! I shall be judged before you can take me!

Father: The door is jammed! Stand back! (kicks the door down) Aunt Ursula! Where are you?

Kid: Over here! (heavy breathing fx)

B: And as we approached her, she was lying on the floor, with her hands and feet open like the Vitruvian Man, breathing heavily with bloody marks and scratches on her arms, legs and face. Remember how I mentioned that she was in a wheel chair? My aunt had been paralyzed from the neck down for just over a year. After this incident, strange things would happen in the house and my aunt would yell and scream, according to her, warding off the evil that had come to get her. As the days passed, she became very weak and eventually was unable to talk. My dad had to work during the day, so I was left to care for her. When she lost her voice and laid on her death bed, I would hear her breathe, in and out.

Ursula:: (Breathing wheezing fx spaced out between inhale and exhale)

## The Weekend - Trick Or Treat (C0157)

A: Trick - or -treat

B: Tom, aren't you a little too old to be trick-or - treat-ing?

A: What are you talking about? Where is your Hal-loween spirit? Didn't you ever dress up in a costume and go around the neighborhood trick-or-treating with your friends?

B: Of course I did, but when I was ten! Trick -or-treating is for kids, plus, I'm sure people will think you're a kidnapper or something, running around with kids NCP at night.

A: Whatever, I'm going next door! heard Mrs. Robinson is giving out big bags of M&Ms!

### Key Vocabulary

give out                    *verb*                    to give for free, to give something

trick-or - treat            *principle verb,*  
                                *present progressive*            a children's Halloween practice of asking for trea

dress up	<i>phrase</i>	attire in clothes suited to a particular role
kidnapper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	to seize and detain or carry away by unlawful force
run around	<i>phrase</i>	to go all over the place, to move quickly from one place to another

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Goblin	<i>common noun, singular</i>	in folklore and fairy tales, an ugly creature that does evil or mischief to humans.
Haunted	<i>Adjective</i>	inhabited or visited by ghosts.
Mummy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a corpse preserved by embalming, esp. one embalmed and wrapped by or in the manner of the ancient Egyptians.

Potion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mixture for drinking, esp. one that is supposed to have medicinal, magical, or poisonous effects.
jack-o'-lantern	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A pumpkin that is carved to look scary

## Global View - All Saints Day (C0158)

C: The Day of the Dead has arrived All Soul's Day and All Saint's Day!

A: Your neighbor is crazy. Why is he screaming that?

B: Because today is the first of November the Day of the Dead

A: Oh, that's right.

B: This is a very special day among many cultures around the world especially in Latin America

A: Seriously? I thought it was just like any other day, except for the fact that people visit the cemetery and remember their loved ones.

B: Well, that's just part of it. People across the world celebrate in different ways. In Mexico for example it's common to see people building private altars honoring the deceased using sugar skulls, preparing the favorite foods and beverages of the departed and visiting graves with these as gifts. In the Philippines, the tombs are cleaned or repainted, candles are lit and flowers are offered. Entire families camp out in cemeteries and sometimes spend a night or two near their relatives' tombs!

A: Whoa! That's scary! I don't know if I could do that!

B: Why? We should fear the living, not the dead.

### Key Vocabulary

All Soul's Day

November 2 observed in some Christian churches as the day of the dead

among

*Preposition*

among

honor

*principle verb,  
present progressive*

confer honor on

the de-parted

the people who have passed away

### Supplementary Vocabulary

pass away	<i>phrase</i>	to die, to perish
burial	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of burying, esp the interment of a dead body
wake	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A watch over the body of a deceased person be- fore burial, sometimes accompanied by festiv- ity. Also called region- ally viewing.
funeral procession	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A group of persons, vehicles, or objects moving along a casket through the streets
cremate	<i>verb</i>	to burn up (something, esp a corpse) and re- duce to ash



## Daily Life - Getting Flowers (C0159)

A: Hello sir, how may I help you?

B: I would like to buy some flowers, please. Something really nice.

A: I see, may I ask what the occasion is?

B: It's not really an occasion, it's more like I'm sorry.

A: Very well. This arrangement here is very popular among regretful husbands and boyfriends. It has a dozen long stem red roses with a couple of sunflowers and a single orchid that stands out. It includes a small teddy bear to achieve the effect of immediate forgiveness.

B: I think I'm gonna need more than just a dozen red roses and a bear. What else do you recommend?

A: Mmm, well this is our "I'm sorry I cheated on you" package. Two dozen red roses lined with tulips, carnations and lilies. The fragrance and beauty of this flower arrangement is sure to make her forgive you.

B: I don't think that's gonna cut it. I need something bigger and better!

A: I'm sorry sir but, what exactly did you do?

B: Well, I may have accidentally insinuated that she is getting chubbier .

A: Get out of my store you jerk!

### Key Vocabulary

occasion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	occasion
dozen	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a word used to describe twelve units
recommend	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	say something deserves to be chosen
fragrance	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a scent or smell
chubby	<i>Adjective</i>	more polite way of calling someone fat

### Supplementary Vocabulary

vase	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a container for holding flowers, usually made of glass or porcelain
bouquet	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a bunch of flowers tied together
greenery	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the green plants in a bouquet that are not flowers, such as large leaves
centerpiece	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a decorative object found at the center of a table, usually made of flowers
to suck up	<i>phrase</i>	to flatter someone excessively with words and gifts, in order to get on their good side

## Global View - Health Insurance (C0160)

A: Hey honey, how was your day?

B: It was alright. I ran into Bill and we got talking for a while. He's in a bit of a jam.

A: Why? What happened?

B: Well, his son had an accident and Bill doesn't have health insurance. This really got me thinking, and I wondered if we shouldn't look into a couple of different HMO's.

A: Yeah, you're right. We aren't getting any younger and our kids are getting older.

B: Exactly! I searched on the web and found a couple of HMO's with low co-pays and good coverage. The deductibles are low, too.

A: Sounds good, although, do you think we can qualify for insurance? Those insurance companies are real pirates when it comes to money.

B: Well, we don't have any pre-existing illnesses or conditions, so we should be fine.

A: I wish our company or country provided us with healthcare.

B: Not in a million years!

### Key Vocabulary

run into	<i>phrase</i>	meet or encounter
a bit of	<i>phrase</i>	kind of
jam	<i>phrase</i>	a problem or difficult situation
look into	<i>principle verb, Will Future</i>	investigate
health main- taine- nance organiza- tion		Health Maintenance Organization
deductible	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a clause in an insurance policy that relieves the
coverage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the extent of the protection provided by insurance

**when it comes to** *phrase* in terms of, about

**co-pay** *common noun,  
plural* a payment made every-time a medical service is need

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**prescription** *common noun,  
singular* the medicine or remedy ordered by a physician for a patient

**exclusion** *common noun,  
plural* certain services that an insurance company will not cover in the plan

**healthcare** *common noun,  
non-variable* the prevention and treatment of illness and the preservation of well-being through the services offered by the health professions

**premium** *common noun,  
singular* the amount paid for an insurance policy, often in installments



Learn English on your Terms

## coinsurance

*common noun,  
non-variable*

After the deductible is exceeded, it is when the insured must also pay a percentage of the total cost of services while the insurance company pays the rest. It can be used instead of or in addition to copays.

## Daily Life - Computer Games (C0161)

A: MarkWhere have you been? I've been calling you all morning.

B: I've been playing computer games.

A: What? So you blew me off yesterday and today over a stupid video game? What game is so important that you have no time for me anymore? What are you playing?

B: It's called Counter Strike It's a first person shooter game. It's awesome. It's a multi player game where you can go online and compete against players from all over the world.

A: You've been wasting your time on this? I can't believe it! It doesn't even look fun or challenging!

B: My laptop is on my bed. If you think it's so easy then get onlineand try to beat me.

A: Fine!

B: Dammit! Howare you killing me with a single shot? It's not fair! I don't want to play anymore! Let's go get something to eat.

A: Can you bring me something? I am totally hooked on this game!

### Key Vocabulary

blow some- one off	<i>phrase</i>	to ignore someone or not appear to an ap- pointment
challenging	<i>Adjective</i>	difficult in an enjoyable way
beat	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	defeat
hooked	<i>Adjective</i>	addicted
waste	<i>principle verb, present progres- sive</i>	use more than neces- sary

### Supplementary Vocabulary

strategy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a plan to obtain a spe- cific result
simulation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something that imitates reality to seem real

real-time	<i>Adjective</i>	describes when a game is played live
hardcore	<i>Adjective</i>	being extremely dedicated to something
to own	<i>verb</i>	to win a battle and take over the enemy in a game

## Global View - Veteran's Day (C0162)

A: Do you have any plans for Veteran's Day

B: You mean Armistice Day

A: Well, as you know, on November 11th allies signed a peace treaty with the Germans, also known as the Armistice Treaty. This marked the end of WWI and many countries around the world commemorate this date under names such as "day". In Poland it's their independence day! There's a lot going on around the world on this day.

B: Wow, I didn't know! Probably because I flunked history in school.

### Key Vocabulary

armistice	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an agreement to stop a war
treaty	<i>common noun, singular</i>	agreement
commemorate	<i>principle verb, in-finitive</i>	memorize

**flunk**      *principle verb,  
past simple*      fail in exams

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**poppy**      *common noun,  
plural*      a red flower with a black center that grew on the graves of soldiers who died in WWI, worn to commemorate the dead in Commonwealth countries

**to pay  
your respects**      *phrase*      to show respect to someone you are grateful to

**a moment of silence**      *phrase*      the time in a Veteran's Day ceremony when everyone is quiet for one minute as they pay their respects

**salute**      *common noun,  
singular*      to pay respect to or to honor by an outward act



Learn English on your Terms

## The Last Post

the name of a famous salute, a trumpet solo played at most Remembrance Day ceremonies in Commonwealth countries



## Global View - Social Security (C0163)

- A: Well that was an interesting documentary!
- B: For sure! I didn't really understand some of the technical jargon they used in the film when they talked about social security in the US.
- A: Like what?
- B: Well, they mentioned how people put away money in something called a 401K?
- A: Yeah, I know it sounds weird, but a 401k is a type of retirement plan that allows employees to save and invest for their own retirement. Through a you can authorize your employer to deduct a certain amount of money from your paycheck and invest it in the plan. Everyone tries to contribute as much as possible so that when you retire, you can rest peacefully on your nest egg.
- B: That's interesting and logical I guess. In my country, we also have to contribute to a government-run retirement fund, but most people don't really trust it so they just invest in properties or things like that.
- A: That seems a bit unstable don't you think?

B: Yeah, but corrupt governments in the past have created distrust among banks and financial institutions, so now people prefer to have money hidden in a jar or a piggy bank.

A: I've been thinking of doing that lately! I don't want some banker to run off with my money!

### Key Vocabulary

invest	<i>principle      verb, present perfect</i>	spend money on something in order to get back more
--------	---	--

Social Security	<i>proper noun, singular</i>	a US government program to protect certain groups
-----------------	------------------------------	---

### Supplementary Vocabulary

pension	<i>common      noun, singular</i>	money paid at regular intervals from the government or a previous employer to a person following retirement or to their surviving dependents
---------	---------------------------------------	--

disability income insurance	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	financial assistance to people who acquire a disability so that they can maintain a certain income level
survivor benefits	<i>common noun, plural</i>	financial assistance for the families of workers who die
unemployment benefits/ compensation	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	payments made to an unemployed worker by the government or employer during all or part of the period of unemployment
defined benefit plan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a pension plan that pays a defined pension/benefit, but the amount invested may vary
defined contribution plan	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a pension plan that has a defined amount to invest, but whose pension/benefit depends on the success of those investments

## Daily Life - Apology Letter (C0164)

A: Dear Mary, I come here today, in this way, because I need to apologize to you. I failed you. Although I did not lie to you in words, I lied to you with faces that did not belong to me. I never meant to ruin the friendship that meant the world to me. You mean the world to me and now I come to you asking for forgiveness. If in your heart you find you can't, then I will understand and learn from this experience.

A: You came into my life at a time when I needed you the most. We talked about so many things that I started to realize my heart and my soul could actually feel something other than hurt. You placed comfort where there was fear, confidence where there was doubt, a shoulder where tears could fall and completeness where there was emptiness. I wanted to hold onto to this so badly that I did whatever it took for you to notice. What I didn't realize was that I could lose my entire being, all of who I was and all that I had placed in you.

A: I wanted to be the one who would be there when you needed to talk. I wanted to be the comfort for your soul when the world was too much to handle. I wanted to be strong for you when everything else seemed impossible. I wanted to love you in only the way you deserved to be loved, never realizing that I was destroying myself and you. Somehow I needed you to be a part of my life. The only problem was that I was willing to jeopardize everything to get that done.

A: All the things that I told you about how I felt and how you make me feel were true. Nothing else mattered to me except hearing the laughter in your voice when you were happy. You made my days easy to get through and my nights peaceful; you helped me look forward to another day. Even though distance separated us, just being was enough.

A: I'm sorry for hurting you and if I had to do all over again I would have been 100% with you. Forgive me please,

## Daily Life - Asking For A Loan (C0165)

B: Hello Sir may I help you?

A: Yes. I would like some information for requesting a loan.

B: Very well, here are the general terms of our loan policies. We pride ourselves in having the lowest interest rate in the country for personal loans.

A: I see. So let me get this straight. If I borrow let's say, ten thousand dollars, how much will I have to pay each month?

B: It depends on how long you take to pay it back. If we lend you ten thousand dollars at an annual interest rate of ten percent for forty eight months, you would have to pay each month a portion of the loan which is called the principal and another small portion of the annual interest rate. This of course is considering that you don't default on a payment!

A: It sounds good but, there is just one problem. I have a terrible credit score.

B: That is a very serious problem you see, the bank must assess your personal information, past loans, assets and any other relevant information such as your credit score in order to approve your loan.

A: You know what? I don't really need the money. Thanks anyways!

### Key Vocabulary

interest rate	<i>common noun, singular</i>	percentage of the money paid to you by the bank ou
general terms	<i>phrase</i>	common rules listed in an agreement
calculate	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	measure
credit score	<i>phrase</i>	the score given to an individual to determine the

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>mortgage</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the transfer of an interest in property from a borrower to a lender as a security for a loan of money
<b>mortgage broker</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who finds a lender for a homebuyer and brings them together with the goal of them originating a mortgage loan
<b>mortgage lender/banker</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	originates and services a loan with a borrower
<b>foreclosure</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	when a homeowner is unable to make payments on the mortgage so the lender can seize and sell the property as agreed upon in the mortgage contract
<b>creditor</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who extends credit by giving permission for a loan if the borrower promises to pay it back at a later date

## Daily Life - Dr. Botox (C0166)

A: What are you doing?

B: Look at me. I look so old! I look as if I were thirty.

A: Come on! Stop being so vain. You look great! You are beautiful!

B: Yes, I am, but I think it's time for some plastic surgery I'm tired of these wrinkles and sagging skin. See?

A: I don't see any wrinkles or sagging skin! You are stop beings ridiculous. Besides, I think that people who get Botox, have facelifts, or tummy tucks look weird. It doesn't look natural.

B: Whatever, I think I'm gonna get liposuction and a nose joband some breast implantsas well.

A: I think you need to get brain surgery. I honestly don't think you need cosmetic surgeryYou look amazing.

B: I thought you were my friend and would support me on this! I just want to feel better about myself and feel more attractive.

A: You don't need plastic surgery to do that. You are fine the way you are and you have guys drooling all over you! Plus, plastic surgery hurts!

B: Really?

A: Yeah! When I got my nose job I was black and blue for a week!

### Key Vocabulary

vain	<i>Adjective</i>	too proud of good looks
wrinkle	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a fold, ridge or crease in the skin
Botox	<i>proper noun, non-variable</i>	a medical protein in- jected into facial mus- cles to
cosmetic surgery	<i>common noun, singular</i>	plastic surgery
breast implant	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a plastic surgery on breasts to make them bigger

### Supplementary Vocabulary

injection	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of forcing a fluid into the body by means of a needle
skin graft	<i>common noun, singular</i>	skin removed from a healthy area of the body and placed on an area with damaged skin in order to heal it
cosmetic laser surgery	<i>common noun, singular</i>	cosmetic surgery per- formed with the use of lasers
stretch mark	<i>common noun, plural</i>	skin with o←-colour scars caused by rapid stretching of the skin
chemical peel	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a chemical solution used on the face that causes dead skin to fall o← in order to improve the texture of the skin

## Daily Life - Learning How To Drive (C0167)

A: Ok! I'm ready for my driving lesson! Should I start the car?

B: Hold on there Fittipaldi, first let's go over things one more time. Now before you even think of starting the car, make sure your seat is at a comfortable position and you can grip the steering wheel firmly. Next check your rear view mirrorsto make sure you can see properly.

A: We have been through this a million times! Let's get going already! I'm ready!

B: Fine start the car. now gently step onthe clutch and shift to 1st gear. Good, now accelerate gently and let go ofthe clutch as u do it. There we gogood!

A: I'm doing it! I'm driving! This is awesome! Le'ts turn some music on!

B: Keep your eyes on the road! No music! We are coming up to a red light, step on the brakes. What are you doing? I said the brakes! Look out for those people! Get off the sidewalk!

A: Get out of my way! This is just like playing video games!

B: It's the police! Pull over!

A: They'll never take me alive!

### Key Vocabulary

<b>grip</b>	<i>principle verb, in-finitive</i>	hold, reach
<b>clutch</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the pedal that you press before you change gear
<b>sidewalk</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the part of the road where people walk
<b>steering wheel</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the wheel which the driver holds in a car
<b>pull over</b>	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to move a car to the side of the road and stop

### Supplementary Vocabulary

seatbelt	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a belt in a car fastened around the mid-section to keep the person safely secured against the seat
speed limit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the maximum speed allowed on the road
intersection	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a place where two or more major roads meet
traffic light	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a set of electrically operated signal lights used to direct or control traffic at intersections
yield sign	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a road sign in the shape of an upside-down triangle, meaning to slow down and prepare to stop if necessary

## The Weekend - Cooking A Thanksgiving Dinner (C0168)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

mashed potatoes	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	potatoes that are boiled and mashed, often with milk and butter
gravy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	brown sauce made from the fat and juices of cooking meat
stuffing	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a mixture made of bread, herbs, etc. that has been stu <u>ff</u> ed inside a turkey and cooked with the turkey
apple cider	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	an unfiltered, unsweetened, and non-alcoholic drink made of apple juice, sometimes with spices such as cinnamon
corn on the cob	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	corn still on the ear that has been boiled or grilled



## The Weekend - Roller Coaster (C0169)

A: I'm so excited! We are finally here! Six Flags Magic Mountain! This is the best amusement park in the world!

B: Alright settle down now, you're gonna give yourself a heart attack.

C: I can't believe they charged us dollars each. It seems like a rip off don't you think? It's not like I'm gonna get on these rides.

A: Whoa. . . Viper! That's the world's highest and fastest roller coaster! You go at more than miles per hour! I wanna go on that one! Can I mom please? Can I?

B: Chris I'm not sure you should get on that it seems a bit too much for you and we just had breakfast minutes ago. I don't think it's a good idea.

A: Aww come on mom! I can handle it. I promise I won't ask for anything else! Besides, it's not like I'm gonna throw up or anything. . .

C: Let him go Carol, he'll be fine.

A: Alright! Yeah! This is amazing! See how high up we're going? Whoa... mmmf mmfff barf.

### Key Vocabulary

settle down	<i>phrase</i>	relax
rip-off	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the act of overcharging
handle	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	deal with
throw up	<i>phrase</i>	vomit
amusement	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	entertainment

### Supplementary Vocabulary

loop-the-loop	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a complete vertical loop
steep	<i>Adjective</i>	having a slope that is almost vertical
lineup	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a line of people waiting their turn

safety/lap bar	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a bar that goes across a passenger's lap in or- der to keep them from falling out of the car
harness	<i>common noun, singular</i>	straps or a metal re- straint that fit around a passenger's shoulders and mid-section in or- der to keep them from falling out of the car



## Daily Life - Wedding Doubts (C0170)

A: Man, I'm freaking out! You gotta help me!

B: Whoa whoa take it easy, relax. Geez, you're sweating like a pig! What's going on?

A: I can't go through with this! I just can't! I'm not ready for marriage! What was I thinking? I'm only thirty five years old! I've got my entire life ahead of me, adventures waiting! I can't settle down yet!

B: What are you talking about? It wasn't more than a month ago that you were rambling on about how you are tired of living the life of a bachelor and how you envy your friends that have a family!

A: I know I know!

B: Let's think this through. First of all, you cannot leave Amy at the altar. Not only will she be humiliated and kill you, but she is the woman that you love and the woman of your dreams! Why would you want to end that or jeopardize it like this? Second of all, you are just getting cold feet. You know deep down inside that you want to marry her, so cut the crap and do it!

B: You're right. I'm being crazy! Ok, I'm ready, lets do this!

A: Great! Phew! That was a close one ! You had me going there for a minute I thought I was gonna have to slap some sense into you

### Key Vocabulary

wedding party	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a party of people at a wedding
get cold feet	<i>phrase</i>	become nervous and reconsider a decision about an
freak out	<i>phrase</i>	lose one's nerve
soul-searching	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	long and careful examination of one's thoughts and
slap some sense into	<i>phrase</i>	remind someone to stay calm

### Supplementary Vocabulary

fiance/fiancee	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	male/female who is engaged to be married
bridesgroom	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	groom
betrothal	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	engagement
unfaithful		<i>Adjective</i>	not sexually faithful to a spouse or lover
don't see eye to eye		<i>phrase</i>	have differences of opinion



## The Weekend - Buying a Camera (C0171)

A: Hello, ma'am, can I help you find something?

B: Yes, actually I'm looking to buy a camera.

A: We've got a wide selection do you know if you'd like a point-and-shoot, or something a little fancier? Are you shopping for yourself or for someone else?

B: Actually I'm buying a camera for my husband.

A: Ah, well then I'd recommend a nice entry-level digital SLR.

B: Yeah? Can I take a look at the SLRs you carry?

A: Sure thing, follow me. This here is the.

B: The Canon Eos. Yeah it's ok, but I'm looking for something that performs better in low light, has a better display panel, and longer battery life.

A: Oh, ah, umthe Nikon D60 is a nice option.



B: Yeah, but what kit lens does this camera come with? I don't want some bulky telephoto lens.

A: Oh, well this one has the, uh.

B: Looks to me like an 18-55mm lens. pretty standard, that will do. Not like my husband will be stalking celebrities or anything!

A: So, ahem, can I interest you in any acc...

B: Accessories? Do you carry polarizing filters?

A: Polarizing filter um we should! I'm sorry, ma'am. looks like we're sold out.

B: No you're not! There are some right here!

A: Oh, well, would you look at that! Po-la-ri-zing filters.

B: Thanks for your help, Ralph!

A: No problem, ma'am.

## Key Vocabulary

point-and-shoot	<i>Adjective</i>	Any compact non-SLR camera with non-interchangeable lenses, using automatic settings and simplified controls. Generally desired by novices and casual users.
interest someone in	<i>phrase</i>	try to persuade someone to buy, do, or eat something
lens	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a transparent optical device used to converge or diverge transmitted light and to form images
polarizing filter	<i>phrase</i>	a camera lens filter used to control the plane of polarization of light entering the lens.
entry-level	<i>Adjective</i>	simple and appropriate to an inexperienced person

## Supplementary Vocabulary

tripod	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a three-legged stand for a camera
filter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a lens screen of dyed gelatin or glass for controlling color or for diminishing the intensity of light
exposure	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the process of light hitting a photosensitive surface, such as film or a digital image sensor
shutter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mechanical device for opening and closing the aperture of a camera lens to expose film
wide-angle lens	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a lens which has a wide coverage angle so it can take in a great deal of scene, usually any lens shorter than 42mm



## Daily Life - Dry Cleaners (C0172)

A: Thank god you are open! I have an emergency!

B: Hello Mr. Henderson what can I do for you?

A: I need this dress and this suit dry cleaned ASAP!

B: OK, I can have it ready by the end of the week.

A: No you don't understand, I need this tomorrow morning! I accidentally spilled beer all over my wife's dress and we have a wedding to attend tomorrow! She's gonna kill me!

B: Ok, I can have it ready tomorrow afternoon, but this suit is also very stained. I can't guarantee we can remove it completely.

A: Fine! Can you also iron and starch this shirt?

B: Certainly.

A: Great! This is our secret! If you see my wife, say nothing to her about this!

## Key Vocabulary

dry clean	<i>verb</i>	way to clean clothes without water using chemicals
spill	<i>verb</i>	to allow something to fall from the container
stained	<i>Adjective</i>	marked or dyed or discolored with foreign matter
starch	<i>verb</i>	sti <del>l</del> en (clothes, etc) with starch
iron	<i>verb</i>	to smooth clothes with a heated iron

### Supplementary Vocabulary

delicate	<i>Adjective</i>	easily damaged
fabric	<i>common noun, singular</i>	cloth
neighborhood	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the surrounding area
to press	<i>verb</i>	to iron



Learn English on your Terms

## hanger

*common noun,*

*singular*

a shoulder-shaped frame with a hook at the top for draping and hanging a piece of clothing when not in use



## The Office - Preparing a Budget (C0173)

A: Welcome Mr and Mrs Carnwell, please take a seat.

B: Thank you.

A: So I understand that your family spending has skyrocketed and you want to start budgeting.

C: Yes that's correct. Frankly speaking our household income is relatively high and we have never had any money problems, but I think this is the main reason as to why our spending has gone out of control.

B: We have two kids and with allowances, paying their credit cards, ours and not to mention our mortgage and car payments. With the recent economic downturn, my husband's business has suffered and now we need some advice as to how we can prepare a family budget.

A: I see. Well you have come to the right place. First what we need to do, is determine your cash flow. Knowing how much money is coming in will help us allocate spending to different categories such as mortgage, education, groceries, etc.

B: Yes that makes sense.

A: Secondly, I need you to bring all of your receipts for the last two to three months. That way, we can determine what your average expenditures are and see which category you are spending money on the most. Usually, your fixed costs are higher and we can't do much about that, but we can usually trim your variable costs such as entertainment or clothing.

C: Great! We will do that then! Now how about we treat you to a nice dinner?

A: That's another thing. If you really want to stop spending so much money, throw away at least half of your credit cards!

## Key Vocabulary

skyrocket      *principle verb, past simple*      rise rapidly, as in price

out of control      *phrase*      beyond the ability to direct the actions of something

<b>budget</b>	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	plan the way to spend money in order to save more
<b>allocate</b>	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	assign
<b>frankly speaking</b>	<i>phrase</i>	to be honest, to say it directly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>capital</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the wealth in money or property one owns
<b>finances</b>	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	one's monetary resources
<b>to bring in the dough</b>	<i>phrase</i>	to make money
<b>breadwinner</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	one whose earnings are the primary source of support for one's dependents
<b>to itemize</b>	<i>verb</i>	to place or include on a list of items



## The Weekend - Getting a manicure (C0174)

A: Honey I'll be right back!

B: Where are you going?

A: I told you already! I'm going to get my nails done.

B: Again? You just went last week! You spend more time at the nail salon than you do here at home! Honestly, why do you need a manicure every week?

A: Well, first of all, I like to pamper myself, and my nails look great. You should come with me!

B: Why? I don't want to have nail polish or anything like that!

A: They don't only paint my nails! The manicurist will remove my cuticles, file my nails, and apply at least three coats of nail polish!

B: Yeah, sounds like something I should definitely do.

## Key Vocabulary

get some- one's nails done	<i>phrase</i>	have a manicure
pamper	<i>verb</i>	treat with excessive indulgence
file	<i>principle verb, Will Future</i>	smooth with a file
coat	<i>common noun, plural</i>	cover, surface
apply	<i>verb</i>	to place in contact with; to lay or spread on

### Supplementary Vocabulary

French Manicure	a special way of painting the nails so that it mimics the color of natural nails, with a clear, beige or soft pink polish on most of the nail and a white finish at the tips
--------------------	--

nail clipper	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mechanical device used to trim fingernails and toenails
nail polish remover	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a solution made of acetone or ethyl acetate used to remove nail polish
acrylic nails	<i>common noun, plural</i>	fake nails made of acrylic: liquid acrylic is applied to a real nail and then hardened
gel nails	<i>common noun, plural</i>	fake nails made of a gel: gel is applied to a real nail and then hardened



## Global View - New Years Resolution (C0175)

A: Did you read this? It says that the number one new years resolution make is to spend more time with friends and family.

B: Why would that be funny?

A: Well, think about it. We are a society that is always on the go, not because we have to, but because we want to.

B: Why?

A: We work hard and spend less time at home because we are trying to provide for our family with goods and services that are usually unnecessary.

B: I don't agree, but anyways, I think you should start thinking of a new year's resolution yourself.

A: What's the point? We always make a new year's resolution and by February we will have forgotten about it. It's pointless.

B: Well then maybe you should resolve to sticking to your goals and objectives.

A: What about you? Your gym bag is gathering dust and you still have brand new running shoes that are yet to be jogged in.

B: Well, I would go if you kept your promise of going to the gym with me everyday!

A: Yeah yeah whatever.

### Key Vocabulary

new year's resolution	<i>phrase</i>	new year's decision or plan
on the go	<i>phrase</i>	very busy and active
point	<i>common noun, singular</i>	idea you try to make people understand
resolve	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	bring to an end
brand new	<i>Adjective</i>	completely new

### Supplementary Vocabulary



Learn English on your Terms

to make a commitment	<i>phrase</i>	to make a pledge to do something
clean slate	<i>phrase</i>	a new start by clearing the record
to implement	<i>verb</i>	to put into effect by means of a definite plan
to reform	<i>verb</i>	to change for the better
lifestyle change	<i>phrase</i>	a change in the way a person lives

## Daily Life - Heating (C0176)

A: It's freezing in here! Can I turn up the heat?

B: Don't touch that thermostat! You don't pay the bills around here!

A: Dad! Are you serious? What's the point of having central heating if we can't use it! Look, I can see my breath!

B: Put on a sweater! I'm not gonna let you run up my heating bill just because it's a bit chilly.

A: Dad! I'm gonna catch a cold!

B: When I was your age, my parents didn't have central heating like you do! We had a furnace in the center of the living room and that was it. We used it to cook, heat the house and even dry our clothes! We never caught a cold. You should be grateful!

### Key Vocabulary

run up

*phrase*

acquire bills or debts

turn up	<i>phrase</i>	increase the intensity of a device
chilly	<i>Adjective</i>	very cold
catch a cold	<i>phrase</i>	become infected with a cold
grateful	<i>Adjective</i>	thankful

### Supplementary Vocabulary

wood stove	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a metal closed fire chamber that burns wood fuel for heating and cooking
thermos	<i>common noun, singular</i>	container lined with insulating material that keeps liquids hot or cold
fireplace	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a structure, made of stone or brick, for holding a fire at the base of a chimney

frost	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a deposit of tiny ice crystals formed when water vapor condenses at a temperature below freezing
sub-zero temperatures	<i>phrase</i>	cold temperatures, below 0°C (zero degrees celsius)

## The Weekend - Decorating a Christmas Tree (C0177)

HUSBAND: I'm home! Everyone come here! I bought a Christmas tree! Look at this beautiful pine tree!

WIFE: Wow, it's huge! Are you sure it will fit inthe living room?

KID: Awesome! I'll go getthe Christmas lights!

HUSBAND: Of course it will. help me put it inthe liv-ing room.

KID: I found the lights!

WIFE: I gotthe Christmas ornaments! We could also place these stockings next to the chimney.

HUSBAND: Great idea! While we decorate the tree, we can listen to some good old Christ-mas songs!

### Key Vocabulary

huge	<i>Adjective</i>	very big
ornament	<i>common noun, plural</i>	decoration, something used to beautify
decorate	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	beautify
of course	<i>phrase</i>	certainly true
stocking	<i>common noun, plural</i>	large sock; traditionally Christmas gifts are put inside

### Supplementary Vocabulary

tinsel	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	very thin strips of shiny metallic material
garland	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a chain of flowers, leaves, or tinsel
wreath	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a closed circle of garland
light up the Christ- mas tree	<i>phrase</i>	turn on the Christmas tree lights

Christmas  
star/angel

*common noun,  
singular*

a large ornament in the shape of a star or an angel, usually with lights, placed on the very top of the Christmas tree



## Daily Life - Finding the perfect present (C0178)

A: Bill. Bill! You gotta help me!

B: What's wrong? Slow down or you are gonna give yourself a heart attack.

A: Tomorrow is Christmas and I haven't bought my mom anything! I'm such a bad son!

B: Take it easy! Let's go to the mall, window shop a little and see if there is anything she might like.

A: That's just it! I don't know what to get her! Last year I got her a ring that was two sizes too big and a pair of shoes five sizes too small! I suck at getting presents for people.

B: That's where you're making a big mistake! You can't just guess peoples' likes or sizes! Especially with clothes or jewelry. On top of that, I think that you should get your mom something that shows how much you love her. At the same time you should show her that you took the time and effort to look for something that she would really like!

A: Yeah you're right. When it comes down to it, I can be pretty tacky.

B: Yeah tell me about it. I know! Your mom is trying to learn Spanish right? Why don't you get her a gift certificate for this great website I saw called SpanishPod.

A: Now that's a great idea!

### Key Vocabulary

window	<i>phrase</i>	examine the shop windows
shop		
on top of	<i>phrase</i>	in addition to something else
When it comes down to it	<i>phrase</i>	when I look at what the whole situation amounts to
tacky	<i>Adjective</i>	looking cheap, having bad taste
tell me about it	<i>phrase</i>	I agree; I understand

### Supplementary Vocabulary

voucher	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a form or check indicating a credit against future purchases or expenditures
shop till you drop	<i>phrase</i>	to shop until one is exhausted
gift card	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a plastic card with a certain amount of money on it used to make purchases at select stores or restaurants
last- minute shopping	<i>phrase</i>	shopping done just before the deadline
wrack your brain	<i>phrase</i>	to think really hard for ideas until it feels like you have put your brain through the torture of "the rack"



## Intermediate - Silent Night (C0179)

A: Silent night, holy night

A: All is calm, all is bright

A: Round yon Virgin Mother and Child

A: Holy Infant so tender and mild

A: Sleep in heavenly peace

A: Sleep in heavenly peace

A: Silent night, holy night

A: Shepherds quake at the sight

A: Glories stream from heaven afar

A: Heavenly hosts sing Alleluia!

A: Christ, the Saviour is born

A: Christ, the Saviour is born

A: Silent night, holy night

A: Son of God, love's pure light

A: Radiant beams from Thy holy face

A: With the dawn of redeeming grace

A: Jesus, Lord, at Thy birth

A: Jesus, Lord, at Thy birth

### Key Vocabulary

infant	<i>common noun, singular</i>	baby
quake at the sight	<i>phrase</i>	shake or tremble when see something
afar	<i>General Adverb</i>	from or to a great dis- tance
saviour	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who rescues people from harm or danger

thy	<i>Adjective</i>	an old-fashioned, poetic, or religious word for 'your'
-----	------------------	--

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Magi	<i>proper noun, plural</i>	the wise men, generally assumed to be three in number, who travelled to the infant Jesus to worship him
proclamation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a public and official announcement
stable	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a building for the shelter and feeding of domestic animals, especially horses and cattle
manger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a box or trough in a stable or barn from which horses or cattle eat
nativity scene	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a depiction of Jesus's birth in a manger, including the parents, Mary and Joseph

## Elementary - Jingle Bells (B0180)

A: Dashing through the snow

A: In a one horse open sleigh

A: O'er the fields we go

A: Laughing allthe way

A: Bells on bob tails ring

A: Making spirits bright

A: What fun it is to laugh and sing

A: A sleighing song tonight

A: Oh, jingle bells, jingle bells

A: Jingle all the way

A: Oh, what fun it is to ride

A: In a one horse open sleigh

A: jingle bells, jingle bells

A: Jingle all the way

A: Oh, what fun it is to ride

A: In a one horse open sleigh

### Key Vocabulary

to dash	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	go or run somewhere very quickly
o'er	<i>Contraction</i>	over
bell	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a hollow device that can ring when struck
make one's spirit bright	<i>phrase</i>	cheer someone up
jingle	<i>principle verb, imperative</i>	make a gentle ringing noise

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Christmas carol	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Christmas song or hymn
catchy	<i>Adjective</i>	pleasing and easily remembered
all-time favorite	<i>phrase</i>	thought of as a favorite in its entire history
sleigh ride	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a journey in a sleigh pulled by one or more horses
merry	<i>Adjective</i>	full of cheerfulness, festive

## Daily Life - Christmas Day (C0181)

A: Dad, dad, dad! Wake up! It's Christmas!

B: Timmy. It's too early for this. Look, it's six in the morning! Go back to bed!

A: No way! Santa already came and left all our presents! Can we go open them? Please! Please!

C: Of course we can honey. Bill, come on, get dressed.

B: Fine! Not like Santa brought me any gifts!

C: Bill! Honestly, you can be such a grouch sometimes.

A: Look at all these presents under the Christmas tree! Awesome!

B: Alright Timmy, knock yourself out. We should get ready and head to the market to buy everything for the Christmas dinner tonight.

C: Yeah you're right. It's the first time we are hosting Christmas dinner at our house so everything has to be perfect.

B: I got the list right here. Ham, turkey, mashed potatoes, ingredients for the gravy and of course, yams!

C: My dad offered to bring the eggnog so we should be set!

### Key Vocabulary

grouch	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a bad-tempered person
knock oneself out	<i>phrase</i>	go ahead; do as you please
head to	<i>phrase</i>	go directly to
host	<i>verb</i>	hold an activity
set	<i>Adjective</i>	ready for something (informal)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

cannot sit still	<i>phrase</i>	cannot sit patiently while waiting due to excitement, anxiety, etc
bursting with excitement	<i>phrase</i>	being so excited that one feels as though it is bursting out from within themself
wrapping paper	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	heavy decorated paper used to wrap gifts
candy cane	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a striped stick of peppermint candy with the top curved to resemble a walking cane
hot cocoa/chocolate	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a beverage made from cocoa powder and milk and sugar; usually drunk hot



## Global View - Boxing Day (C0182)

A: What do you think of this one?

B: Eh, so so.

A: And this one? Too flashy?

B: Nah, not too flashy.

A: Uhg! And this sweater from my aunt? Isn't it hideous?

B: I guess.

A: Are you even listening? I'm trying to have a conversation with you.

B: And I'm trying to watch the game, but you're yapping on about your new clothes!

A: Well I have to decide which gifts to keep and which to exchange for better ones when I go to the Boxing Day sales this afternoon!

B: Well could you do me the favor of making this quick? It's the third quarter and you've been blabbering on since the first!

A: Oh, your precious game. You watch the same game every year, and each year your beloved hometown team loses by at least three goals!

B: Oh no you didn't. You didn't just insult the Salisbury Seals, did you? Why don't you just go and return all of those stupid clothes and not come back until the sales are over?

A: I might just! Enjoy your stupid game!

B: And Merry Christmas!

A: Merry Christmas!

### Key Vocabulary

flashy	<i>Adjective</i>	smart and noticeable, but in a rather vulgar way
yap	<i>verb</i>	bark in a high-pitched tone, nag

exchange	<i>verb</i>	give something and receive something in return
sale	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an occasion for buying at special price
do someone the favor	<i>phrase</i>	help someone

### Supplementary Vocabulary

craziness	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	wild excitement, the act of being crazy
discount	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an amount deducted from the usual list price
flier	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a pamphlet for mass distribution
merchandise	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the manufactured goods bought and sold in any business
jam-packed with people	<i>phrase</i>	crowded



## Daily Life - Winter Clothes (C0183)

A: Bye, mom!

B: Wait, Jimmy, it's cold outside. Put a hat on!

A: Ok. Bye!

B: No, wait, you will be too cold without mittens.

A: Alright. See ya!

B: Hold on, with that wind, you're going to catch a cold. Wear this scarf.

A: Ok, see you after school...

B: Oh... and ear muffs! Put these on... here we go.

A: Mom?

B: Yes, honey...

A: I... I can't breathe.

## Key Vocabulary

mitten	<i>common noun, plural</i>	hand covering separating thumb from fingers
hold on	<i>Interjection</i>	stop, wait
scarf	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a long narrow piece of cloth worn around the neck
ear muff	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a warm tubular covering for the ears
honey	<i>common noun, singular</i>	name you call someone you love
hat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	head covering

### Supplementary Vocabulary

snowsuit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a one- or two-piece outer garment for cold weather, often consisting of heavily lined pants and jacket
gloves	<i>common noun, plural</i>	hand covering separating all fingers and thumb

coat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an outer garment with sleeves, covering at least the upper part of the body
mitts	<i>common noun, plural</i>	short for mittens
boots	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a covering of leather, rubber, or the like, for the foot and all or part of the leg

## Daily Life - Fresh Start (C0184)

A: Now that it's the new year, I've decided to turn over a new leaf.

B: Yeah? You finally decided to wipe the slate clean?

A: You got it! I have a new job, I'm living in a new city, with new friends! This is my opportunity to make some small changes in the way I live my life.

B: So what are you going to do? Take up an art class or something?

A: Well, first of all, I've decided to stop smoking. It's not that I'm pinching pennies or anything, it's just that I've been smoking since I was sixteen, and I think it's time to stop.

B: I'm with you on that one. Anything else you're planning on doing?

A: One last thing, I've decided to come out of the closet.

B: It's about time!

## Key Vocabulary

turn over a new leaf	<i>phrase</i>	start anew
wipe the slate clean	<i>phrase</i>	start over
opportunity	<i>common noun, singular</i>	chance
take up	<i>phrase</i>	start, adopt the study
pinch pennies	<i>phrase</i>	to be thrifty
with you	<i>phrase</i>	support you
come out of the closet	<i>phrase</i>	to state openly or pub- licly one's homosexual- ity

## Supplementary Vocabulary

endless	<i>Adjective</i>	having or seeming to have no end
significant	<i>Adjective</i>	important, meaningful



Learn English on your Terms

to start anew/ to begin anew	<i>phrase</i>	to start again as if from the beginning
to quit	<i>verb</i>	to stop doing something
to get into shape	<i>phrase</i>	to become physically fit



## The Weekend - Farm Animals (C0185)

A: Isn't this great? I always wanted to own a farm, live out in the country, grow my own food!

B: This is very beautiful. Though I have to confess, I don't know the first thing about farming!

A: That's fine! Don't worry about it!

B: What was that?

A: Relax, it was just a goat!

B: And that?

A: It's just the cows that are grazing over there. We can milk them later.

B: What was that?

A: Honey, seriously, It's just a sheep. Relax!

A: Relax, that was just the horses and donkeys that are in the stable .

B: You know what? I don't think I can hack it here out in the countryside. I'm going back to the city!

### Key Vocabulary

country	<i>common noun, singular</i>	rural areas
graze	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	to feed in a meadow or pasture
milk	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	get the milk from a cow
don't know the first thing about	<i>phrase</i>	know little about
stable	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a building for the shelter and feeding of domestic animals, especially horses and cattle
hack it	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	be able to manage or manage successfully

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>stall</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a compartment for one domestic animal in a barn or shed
<b>pig sty</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a pen or enclosure for pigs; pigpen
<b>pen</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a small enclosure for domestic animals
<b>chicken coop</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an enclosure or cage for chickens
<b>herd</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a group of cattle or other domestic animals of a single kind kept together



## The Office - Business Plan (C0186)

A: I've had it! I'm done working for a company that is taking me nowhere!

B: So what are you gonna do? Just quit?

A: That's exactly what I am going to do! I've decided to create my own company! I'm going to write up a business plan, get some investors and start working for myself!

B: Have you ever written up a business plan before?

A: Well, it can't be that hard! I mean, all you have to do is explain your business, how you are going to do things and that's it, right?

B: You couldn't be more wrong! A well written business plan will include an executive summary which highlights the idea of the business in two pages or less. Then you need to describe your company with information such as what type of legal structure it has, history, etc.

A: Well that seems easy enough.

B: Wait, there's more! Then you need to introduce and describe your goods or services. What they are and how they are different from competitors'? Then comes the hard part, a market analysis. You need to investigate and analyze hundreds of variables! You need to take into consideration socioeconomic factors from GDP per capita to how many children on average the population has! All this information is useful so that you can move on to your strategy and implementation stage, where you will describe in detail how you will actually execute your idea.

A: Geez. Is that all?

B: Almost, the most important piece of information for your investors will be the financial analysis. Here you will calculate and estimate sales, cash flow and profits. After all, people will want to know when they will begin to see a return on their investment!

A: Umm. I think I'll just stick to my old job and save myself all the hassle of trying to start up a business!

## Key Vocabulary

legal structure	<i>phrase</i>	organization of the business
to execute	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to put into effect; carry out
financial analysis	<i>phrase</i>	report on financial stability and profitability
return on one's investment	<i>phrase</i>	profit made from one's investment
hassle	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a great deal of trouble; difficulty; nuisance

### Supplementary Vocabulary

entrepreneur	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who organizes, operates, and assumes the risk for a business venture
credentials	<i>common noun, plural</i>	evidence of authority, status, rights
vision statement	<i>phrase</i>	statement describing what you ultimately envision your business to be



Learn English on your Terms

prospects	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an apparent probability of advancement, suc- cess, profit, etc.
feasibility	<i>Adjective</i>	capable of being done, elected, or accom- plished

## Daily Life - Going On A Diet (C0187)

A: Oh man! I've been starving myself for days now and I haven't lost an ounce!

B: Are you trying to lose weight?

A: Yeah, my friend is getting married next month and I'm supposed to be a bridesmaid. I have to fit into my dress and look nice for her wedding, but I haven't lost any weight! Look at these love handles.

B: You don't have to starve yourself to lose weight. I think that's where you're going wrong.

A: Why? If I eat less, then my body will start eating away at my fat reserves right?

B: Not really. You should try to not eat foods high in calories, salts or saturated fats. Stay away from oily food and artificial flavors.

A: So you are saying that I should eat, but I should just watch what I eat?

B: Yes! You can also try to reduce your intake of carbohydrates and foods that are high in cholesterol. You can have steamed veggies or increase your protein intake found in chicken or fish.

A: If I do all this do you think I can lose twenty pounds in four weeks?

B: Don't count on it.

### Key Vocabulary

starve	<i>principle verb,</i> <i>present perfect</i> <i>progressive</i>	to be very hungry
love han-dles	<i>phrase</i>	folds of excess fat on ei-ther side of the waist
calorie	<i>common noun,</i> <i>plural</i>	a unit of heat
intake	<i>common noun,</i> <i>singular</i>	a quantity take in
do not count on	<i>phrase</i>	do not rely on, depend on

### Supplementary Vocabulary

to diet	to change what you eat in order to lose weight
Atkins diet	a diet high in protein and low in carbohydrates
anorexia	disease in which people starve themselves to be thin
obese	extremely fat
low-carb	not containing many carbohydrates



## The Office - Asking For A Raise (C0188)

A: Excuse me sir, may I talk to you?

B: Bill! Sure, come on in. What can I do for you?

A: Well sir, as you know, I have been an employee of this prestigious firm for over ten years.

B: Yes.

A: I won't beat around the bush. Sir, I would like a raise. I currently have three companies after me and so I decided to talk to you first.

B: A raise? Son, I would love to give you a raise, but this is just not the right time.

A: I understand your position, and I know that the current economic downturn has had a negative impact on sales, but you must also take into consideration my hard work, pro-activeness and loyalty to this company for over a decade.

B: Taking into account these factors, and considering I don't want to start a brain drain, I'm willing to offer you a ten percent raise and an extra five days of vacation time. How does that sound?

A: Great! It's a deal! Thank you, sir!

B: Before you go, just out of curiosity, what companies were after you?

A: Oh, the electric company, gas company and water company!

## Key Vocabulary

beat around the bush	<i>phrase</i>	avoid the subject by talking about something else
raise	<i>common noun, singular</i>	increase in salary
take into consideration	<i>phrase</i>	to think about something before making a decision
offer	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	give with the choice of accepting or rejecting
loyalty	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the quality of being loyal

## Supplementary Vocabulary

**to de-mand** to request forcefully

**to move up the ladder** *phrase* to receive a promotion at work

**promotion** *common noun, singular* an order of a better position at the same company

**demotion** *common noun, singular* being asked to do a less important job at the same company

**initiative** *common noun, singular* deciding to take the first step; making a decision on one's own



## Daily Life - Buying A New Mobile Phone (C0189)

A: Hello sir, may I help you?

B: Yeah, I accidentally dropped my phone in the toilet.

A: I see. Well, you have come to the right place. We have over one hundred models of more than twenty leading mobile phone manufacturers.

B: Sounds good. I don't want it to be too expensive, maybe something mid-range.

A: We have this new HTC smart phone. It comes with the Android OS so you can download applications. It also has a built-in camera, mp3 player and touch screen. It works on the 3G network so you have fast access to the internet wherever you are.

B: What about Wi-fi?

A: Of course! You can access the internet from any hotspot as well as from home.

B: One last thing. Is it waterproof?

## Key Vocabulary

accidentally	<i>General Adverb</i>	by accident
lead	<i>Adjective</i>	advanced;fashionable
application	<i>common noun, plural</i>	software program
network	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a tele-communication system
hotspot	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place with internet connectivity
smart phone	<i>phrase</i>	a phone with wireless internet capacity
Android OS		management system

## Supplementary Vocabulary

device	<i>common noun, singular</i>	instrument
Nokia		popular cell phone brand

SIM card	<i>common noun, singular</i>	"Subscriber Identity Module;" card used in cell phones to place and receive calls, messages
iTunes app store	<i>phrase</i>	an online store created by Apple to sell applications for smart phones
to surf the web	<i>phrase</i>	to use the internet

## The Weekend - Family Barbecue (C0190)

A: Is everything ready for the big family barbecue to-morrow?

B: Yep. The steaks and chicken are marinated and I also bought hamburger buns.

A: We should also cook a couple dozen hot dogs and kebabs.

B: Yeah, good idea. We can put some lawn furniture outside next to the grill. I also set up the tent outside so we can hide from the sun if it gets too hot.

A: Great! I asked Grace to bring cups and serviettes as she is also bringing two big coolers for the beers.

B: This is gonna be a great barbecue!

### Key Vocabulary

barbecue	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a meal cooked out of doors over an open fire
marinate	<i>Adjective</i>	be soaked in marinade

dozen	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a group of twelve
kebab	<i>common noun, plural</i>	pieces of roasted meat, fish, and vegetables on a skewer
grill	<i>common noun, singular</i>	utensil with a metal grate (parallel metal bars) for cooking food over a fire
tent	<i>common noun, plural</i>	portable shelter of canvas held up by poles, rope, and pegs
serviette	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a small square of cloth or paper
cooler	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a container, vessel, or apparatus for cooling
lawn furniture	<i>phrase</i>	furniture intended for use outside in the yard
hamburger bun	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a round bun shaped to hold a hamburger patty

## Supplementary Vocabulary

tongs	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	device with two arms that are joined as a hinge at one end, used for grasping, holding, or lifting something
charcoal grill	<i>common noun, singular</i>	grill used for barbecuing using charcoal as a fuel, which gives the food a smokey taste
gas grill	<i>common noun, singular</i>	grill used for barbecuing using gas as a fuel, as from a propane tank or from a natural gas pipeline
skewer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	long pin of wood or metal for inserting through meat or other food to hold or bind it while cooking
basting brush	<i>common noun, singular</i>	brush used to moisten food periodically with a liquid or sauce, especially while cooking

## Global View - Daylight Savings Time (C0191)

A: Did you set your clock forward for daylight savings time?

B: What? Why do we have to do that?

A: Well, at the start of the spring we usually have more daylight in the mornings and less in the afternoon. This is basically due to our position on the planet and the rotation of the earth. In any case, to take better advantage of the daylight available, we compensate by moving our clocks forward one hour.

B: I see. That's convenient! I never understood things like this, such as GMT. I never know what time zone we are in or when to change my clock!

A: That just stands for Greenwich Mean Time. Here in California, we are in Pacific Standard Time, that is eight time zones west of Greenwich. Remember when we were in Beijing? Well, then we were in China Standard Time, and that's eight time zones east of Greenwich!

B: That's why it was so weird traveling from Beijing to LA! Because of the huge time difference, even though we left Beijing at noon and flew for more than eight hours, we still arrived in LA the same day at noon! It's like we went back in time!

### Key Vocabulary

rotation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	circular motion of turning around as on an axis
daylight savings time	<i>phrase</i>	system that provides more daylight during the day
compensate	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	provide or be an equivalent; make up; make amends
time zone	<i>phrase</i>	a region where the same standard time is used
go back in time	<i>phrase</i>	to travel to a time that has already passed

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Spring forward, fall back	<i>phrase</i>	set clocks ahead 1 hour in the spring and back 1 hour in the fall
------------------------------	---------------	---

**DST**

daylight savings time

**European  
Summer  
Time**

the name for "daylight savings time" in Europe

**clock  
shift***common noun,  
singular*

the amount of time by which to set a clock forward or backward

**equinox***common noun,  
singular*

the twice yearly times when the lengths of day and night are almost equal

## Global View - Natural Disasters (C0192)

Bob: Those are the headlines for today, and now for the international weather report with Mike Sanderson.

Mike: Thank you, Bob! This past week has been the beginning of Armageddon for many, a series of unprecedented meteorological events occurred around the world. In Switzerland, a major avalanche was reported in the Alps. Fortunately, no one was injured. Due to the extreme cold this winter, a blizzard has struck the US Midwest, causing classes in schools and universities to be temporarily canceled.

Mike: Moving to Latin America, Ecuador has suffered a six month drought that has not only affected farming, but has also forced the closure of the hydroelectric power plant that provides electricity for the entire country. In Chile, a major earthquake that registered seven point five on the Richter scale struck the southern region. Losses are reported to be in the billions. Authorities have not yet released an official statement.

Bob: Not a great week for the world! Any good news?

Mike: I'm afraid not, Bob. One of the major volcanoes in Mexico has erupted, causing major floods and landslides in the region. Meanwhile, Mexico's coast has been hit by hurricane Lilianna and officials say that all the seismic activity leads them to believe that a tsunami may hit Central America, affecting Honduras, Guatemala and Panama. That's all the news we have for today, but stay tuned for updates on the six o'clock news. Back to you Bob.

### Key Vocabulary

bizzard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	great snow
drought	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a prolonged period of scanty rainfall
hurricane	<i>common noun, singular</i>	very big rain and wind storm
tsunami	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large sea wave produced by an earthquake
seismic activity	<i>phrase</i>	something that tech relating to or caused by an ea

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Hail	<i>common noun, singular</i>	small pieces of ice that fall from the sky instead of rain
Tornado	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A strong whirl of air that moves quickly
Typhoon	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A tropical cyclone occurring in the western Pacific or Indian oceans.
Hurricane	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A severe tropical cyclone having winds greater than one hundred kilometers per hour
Heat Wave	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A period of unusually hot weather.



## Daily Life - Building Your Dream Home (C0193)

A: Mr. and Mrs. Robinson! Let's get straight to it. You have saved up your money for years and are now ready to build your dream home. What did you have in mind?

B: A suburban bungalow straight out of the sixties! A perfect lawn with minimal landscaping. A brick patio in the backyard with an old-fashioned grill, quaint lawn furniture, and a swimming pool. A two-car carport, pastel siding and a gable roof. Completed with white shutters and a white picket fence !

C: Uh, honey?

B: In the living room we would have moss-green rugs and a fireplace with a stone mantle and wood paneling on the walls. In the kitchen, the cupboards would be a pale yellow and we would have a turquoise metal oven and vinyl flooring -

C: Umm, sweetie, but I was thinking of a more modern style house. An open concept house, all glass, wood, metal, and concrete.



B: But sweetums, there is always a lot of wasted space in those kinds of homes. Besides, it's just a fad. It doesn't have the homey feeling the old homes do.

C: Sweetie-pie it's not a lot of wasted space. It is relaxing and the house would be eco-friendly with an in-floor heating system and designed to retain the heat of the sun in the winter and keep the house cool in the summer. We would have solar panels on the roof -

B: Do you know how much those things cost?

C: What about your vintage furniture, dearest? And instead of a lawn, which is also a lot of wasted space and would require environmentally harmful pesticides, we would have a fish pond in the backyard and a garden that would cover the whole yard so we could grow our own food!

B: But buttercup, I thought you always said that you loved visiting your grandmother's house!

C: And I thought you, Mr. Scientist, were all up on saving the planet with your technological advancements!

A: Umm well I am just going to go get some coffee while you two keep discussing.

### Key Vocabulary

<b>dream</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something you really want to do
<b>home</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place where a person lives
<b>suburban</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	located or residing in a suburb
<b>bungalow</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a house which is built on one level
<b>the sixties</b>	<i>phrase</i>	the years from 1960 to 1969
<b>minimal</b>	<i>Adjective</i>	the smallest possible amount or size
<b>landscaping</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a view across an area of land
<b>patio</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an area of the garden with a hard surface

quaint	<i>Adjective</i>	unusual or old-fashioned in an attractive
carport	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a place where you park your car
pastel	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a kind of dry colour in sticks
siding	<i>common noun, singular</i>	material attached to the outside of a building
gable	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the triangular upper part of a wall
roof	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the top of a building
shutter	<i>common noun, plural</i>	covers unfold in front of a window
mantle	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the shelf above a fireplace
paneling	<i>common noun, singular</i>	sheets of wood fit into a frame to form a wall

turquoise	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a bluish-green, precious stone
vinyl	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	firm plastic which can be bend
sweetums	<i>common noun, singular</i>	used as a term of endearment
fad	<i>common noun, singular</i>	fashion
homey	<i>Adjective</i>	having a feeling of home; comfortable
sweentie-pie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	used as a term of endearment
eco-friendly	<i>Adjective</i>	not harmful to the environment
in-floor	<i>Adjective</i>	installed in the floor
heating	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a system for keeping rooms warm
retain	<i>verb</i>	to keep or keep possession

solar	<i>Adjective</i>	relating to the sun, using its light
panel	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a flat section of a wall, door
vintage	<i>Adjective</i>	representative of the best and most typical
dearest	<i>common noun, singular</i>	used as terms of endearment
pesticide	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a chemical substance used to kill insects
fish	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a creature living in water
pond	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a small body of water
buttercup	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a plant with small yellow flowers
technological	<i>Adjective</i>	based in scientific and industrial progress
advancements	<i>common noun, plural</i>	improvement or development

picket fence	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a fence consisting of pickets
open concept	<i>Adjective</i>	a form or style of room
all up on	<i>phrase</i>	have all knowledge or information of something

### Supplementary Vocabulary

renovation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	to restore to good condition; make new or as if new again
blueprint	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a print of architectural or technical drawings, drawn with white lines on a blue background; the layout or floorplan of a building
general contractor	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who contracts for and assumes responsibility for completing a construction project and hires, supervises, and pays all subcontractors

interior designer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who specializes in designing architectural interiors and their furnishings
landscape	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to adorn or improve (a section of ground) by contouring and by planting flowers, shrubs, or trees

## The Weekend - Stir Fry (C0194)

A: Oh, man. I had the best supper last night. My wife made a stir fry and it was amazing!

B: I love stir fry Crispy bite-sized vegetables covered in a mixture of soy sauce and oyster sauce. Wilted greens and fresh bean sprouts. Throw in some onion and garlic and ginger! Mmm! Mmm! It's almost lunchtime. I would die for a plate of stir fry right now!

A: Well, you can keep the vegetables, I'll take the meat. The stir fry my wife made was really hearty, with chunks of beef and slivers of bell peppers and onion...

B: What? You call that a stir fry? More meat than vegetables? That's the worst insult you could throw at a Chinese stir fry What a disgrace to the wok she fried it in! What you had is equivalent to a fajita without the wrap! Silly Americans!

### Key Vocabulary

bite-  
sized

*Adjective*

you can eat it with one  
bite

soy	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	a source of oil and is eaten as food
oyster	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	a large flat shelfish
wilted		<i>Adjective</i>	dying
bean	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	the seed of a climbing plant
sprout	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	a new growth on a plant
hearty		<i>Adjective</i>	large(used for meals)
chunk	<i>common plural</i>	<i>noun,</i>	a solid piece or lump
sliver	<i>common plural</i>	<i>noun,</i>	small thin sharp pieces
bell pepper	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	a kind of pepper, with hot-tasting
wok	<i>common singular</i>	<i>noun,</i>	a large metal Chinese cooking pot
be equivalent to		<i>phrase</i>	equal to

fajita	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a Mexican meal consists of chicken and vegetables
bite-sized	<i>Adjective</i>	you can eat it with one bite
soy	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a source of oil and is eaten as food
oyster	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large flat shelfish
wilted	<i>Adjective</i>	dying
bean sprout	<i>phrase</i>	the sprout of beans, eaten as a vegetable
hearty	<i>Adjective</i>	large(used for meals)
chunk	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a solid piece or lump
sliver	<i>common noun, plural</i>	small thin sharp pieces
bell pepper	<i>common noun, plural</i>	large bell-shaped sweet pepper in green or red or

wok	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a large metal Chinese cooking pot
be equivalent to	<i>phrase</i>	equal to
fajita	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a Mexican meal consists of chicken and vegetables
throw in	<i>phrase</i>	action of adding something
die for	<i>phrase</i>	extremely desirable
disgrace	<i>common noun, singular</i>	shame, loss of reputation or dishonour

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Chop suey	<i>common noun, singular</i>	American-Chinese dish consisting of meats cooked quickly with vegetables and bound in a starch-thickened sauce
Kung Pow Chicken	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Chinese dish made with peanuts and marinated with chilli peppers



Learn English on your Terms

Fortune  
Cookie

Chow  
Mein

## Global View - Job Hunting (C0195)

A: Woo hoo! This just might be the start of the rest of my life!

B: What happened?

A: I'm in the market for a job! I went on a website with hundreds of job listings in the area and browsed through them until I got the names of a few employers I would like to work for. I have the resume I wrote for English class last month and a cover letter will be a piece of cake to write. I've even done my research and found the names of the managers so I can address the letters personally. And you know I can be charming in interviews. Goodbye my penniless days! Hello salary and a career!

B: Ben, we're fifteen. What kind of job are you looking for?

A: Oh, just for a position as a gas station attendant. You know, starting at a simple lowly job, just like all the greats before they made it big in the world.

B: Uh-huh.

A: But I'm just in it for the money, right? How else am I going to be able to afford to keep taking Angela to the movies? Besides, I love the smell of gasoline, don't you?

### Key Vocabulary

manager	<i>common noun, plural</i>	person who manages an organization or company
charming	<i>Adjective</i>	delightful; pleasant; attractive
interview	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a conversation with or questioning of a person
penniless	<i>Adjective</i>	very poor; almost totally without money
salary	<i>common noun, singular</i>	money paid by the employer each month
career	<i>common noun, singular</i>	profession that someone does for a long time
position	<i>common noun, singular</i>	job, occupation

gas station	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place where gasoline is sold
attendant	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person employed to provide a service
lowly	<i>Adjective</i>	humble or low in position
greats	<i>common noun, plural</i>	person with importance or distinction in their field
uh-huh	<i>Interjection</i>	a less emphatic variant of yes
gasoline	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	petroleum fuel
browse	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to search for and read hypertext
employer	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a person or firm who employs
resume	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a summary of your academic and work history

address	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to direct a speech or written statement to someone
job listing	<i>phrase</i>	database containing an ordered array of job items
a piece of cake	<i>phrase</i>	something is easily to be done
make it big	<i>phrase</i>	make a great success
in the market	<i>phrase</i>	be interested in buying
woo hoo	<i>Interjection</i>	exclamation of excitement

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Headhunter	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an employment recruiter, sometimes referred to as executive search.
------------	----------------------------------	---

Job Agency	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A company that helps both employers and job applicants find a position.
CV	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Curriculum Vitae; a summary of academic and professional history and achievements
No Brainer	<i>phrase</i>	something that is easy or not challenging
Easy As Pie	<i>phrase</i>	something that is easy or not challenging

## Daily Life - Going To The Tailor (C0196)

A: Welcome to Bill's Fabric World. What can I do for you today?

B: I was wondering if you guys also tailor clothes?

A: Sure we do! We have the best tailors in the country! What is it that you need exactly?

B: Well, I'm looking to get a custom-made suit.

A: Excellent! We have the finest cashmeres at affordable prices. How about we get you measured? Let's start off by measuring the width of your shoulders. Now, let's measure the length of your arms and this bit around your neck here.

B: Can you make sure you leave a little extra space in the collar? My neck gets easily irritated.

A: No problem! Now for your pants, let me just measure your waist and the inseam.

B: You might also want to leave a little extra room in the waist area. I tend to gain a few pounds over the holidays.

A: OK. Now you can pick your fabric and pattern design. Please follow me.

### Key Vocabulary

custom-made	<i>phrase</i>	made especially for the needs of one person
measure		to ascertain the dimensions, quantity
make sure	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	be sure
tend	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	be more likely
pattern design	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an artistic or decorative design that repeats

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Vest	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A garment covering the upper body that has no sleeves
Tuxedo	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A complete formal outfit, usually black that includes pants, jacket and bow tie.

Bow Tie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A short necktie fashioned into a bowknot close to the throat.
Cufflinks	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A fastening for a shirt cuff, usually consisting of two buttons or buttonlike parts connected with a chain or shank that passes through two slits in the cuff.
Cumberbund	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A broad waist sash, usually pleated, which is often worn with single-breasted dinner jackets



## Global View - Calling 911 (C0197)

A: Alright class, now that we're all dressed up let's see what professions you chose. Ah, I see a fireman, a police officer, a medic, and a lifeguard! Can anyone tell me what these people have in common?

B: They save people from bad things?

A: That's right! Now class, if something bad happened and you had to get help, do you know what phone number you would call?

C: 911!

A: Yes, you would pick up the phone and dial 911. What are some emergency situations where you would need to dial 911?

B: If my grandpa has a heart attack!

C: If there is an accident!

B: If a robber breaks into the house!

C: If the fire alarm goes off!

B: Pff! I wouldn't call 911 if the fire alarm went off in my house. The only time that ever happens is when we're having spaghetti for supper, and Mom burns the garlic bread, as usual.

### Key Vocabulary

dress up	<i>phrase</i>	to put on fancy dress, disguise
profession	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an occupation requiring special training
fireman	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who puts out fires and rescues people
police officer	<i>phrase</i>	policeman or police-woman
lifeguard	<i>common noun, singular</i>	person who protects people from drowning
dial	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to press the buttons to make a telephone call
break into	<i>phrase</i>	to enter a house illegally, esp by force

go off	<i>principle</i> verb, <i>present simple</i>	to ring or sound loudly
robber	<i>common</i> noun, <i>singular</i>	person who robs or steals
heart at- tack	<i>common</i> noun, <i>singular</i>	painful condition where the heart stops beating
pick up	<i>phrase</i>	take up by hand

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Burglar Alarm	<i>common</i> noun, <i>singular</i>	An alarm installed in a house or building that goes off if there is a break in
Hold Up	<i>phrase</i>	To rob while armed, often at gunpoint.
Crime Scene	<i>common</i> noun, <i>singular</i>	Place where an illegal event took place and there is evidence there that police need.



Learn English on your Terms

Hit And Run	<i>phrase</i>	the crime of colliding with a person, their personal property (including their motor vehicle), or a fixture, and failing to stop and identify oneself afterwards
Fender-bender	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a collision between motor vehicles that produces minor damage



## Daily Life - Applying CPR (C0198)

A: Hello everyone and welcome to our CPR for beginners course. First of all, does anyone know what CPR stands for?

B: Cardiopulmonary resuscitation!

A: That's right! We apply CPR in the case of cardiac arrest or pulmonary arrest.

B: What does that mean?

A: Well, basically if your heart stops pumping blood, or your lungs stop pumping air, then we need to get them going again! That's when we have to apply this procedure. Let's begin! I need a volunteer.

B: Me! Me!

A: Alright, come here and lay flat on your back. Let's suppose this young woman has stopped breathing. We must lift the person's chin so that we clear a pathway for air to get into the lungs. Then we place our mouth over the other person's mouth and blow air two or three times, like this.

B: Wait, what are you doing? I'm a married woman!  
You can't just try to kiss me like this!

A: Ma' am I'm not trying to kiss you! I am trying to demonstrate how to apply CPR in the case of an emergency.

B: Well, ok. But no French kissing!

A: As I was saying, we blow air through the mouth in this manner. Once this is done, we must try to get the heart going again. To do this, we place our hands over the person's chest, and press down firmly two or three times.

B: Wait, what are you doing! You can't just kiss me then go for second base!

### Key Vocabulary

cardiopulmonary		emergency procedure
resuscitation		for reviving heart and lung function
stand for	phrase	represent
in the case of	phrase	in the matter of someone or something

cardiac arrest	<i>phrase</i>	failure of the pumping action of the heart
pulmonary arrest	<i>phrase</i>	the cessation of breathing
procedure	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a manner of proceeding
volunteer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person who performs voluntarily
lay flat	<i>phrase</i>	lie down with all parts of the body touching floor
on your back	<i>phrase</i>	face-up lying on the floor
suppose	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	assume to be true
French kiss	<i>phrase</i>	a kiss in which the tongue enters the partner's mouth
go for second base	<i>phrase</i>	touch the breast

**get going**      *phrase*      let something work again

### Supplementary Vocabulary

heimlich maneu- ver	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a series of abdominal thrusts used to expel an object a person is choking on
concussion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a brain injury that is caused by a sudden blow to the head or to the body
stroke	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the rapidly developing loss of brain function(s) due to disturbance in the blood supply to the brain.
hemorrhage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a discharge or escape of blood
go into shock	<i>phrase</i>	A marked loss of blood pressure, diminished blood circulation, and inadequate blood flow to the tissues.

## Global View - Learning About First Aid (C0199)

A: Hey Joe! Where have you been these past few days?

B: I've been busy with a first aid course that I started about a week ago at the Red Cross.

A: Cool! I've always wanted to do something like that! Have you learned anything useful?

B: For sure! I mean we've learned how to apply pressure to stop bleeding, how to check for a pulse, and even how to apply CPR!

A: Have you treated any real emergencies?

B: Well, they took us along with some paramedics. There was this guy who fell off his motorcycle and suffered a concussion as well as a couple of compound fractures. His wounds were pretty serious so they had to rush him to the hospital. It was intense!

A: I can imagine! I tend to faint when I see blood, so I think I won't be taking up a course like that anytime soon!

## Key Vocabulary

treat	<i>verb</i>	to cure an illness by medical means
concussion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a jarring of the brain
tend to	<i>phrase</i>	To be disposed or inclined towards something
rush	<i>verb</i>	move or act swiftly
take up	<i>phrase</i>	begin with

## Supplementary Vocabulary

<i>common noun, singular</i>	A strip of material such as gauze used to protect, immobilize, compress, or support a wound or injured body part.
<i>common noun, singular</i>	a hard shell usually made of gauze and plaster, used to immobilize an injured body part

	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A rigid device used to prevent motion of a joint or of the ends of a fractured bone.
<b>anaesthetic</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a medication that causes loss of sensation
<b>ambulance</b>	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a vehicle for pre-hospital treatment and transportation of sick or injured people

## Daily Life - Junk Food (C0200)

A: I'm hungry, let's grab a bite to eat.

B: Sure! How about we go home and prepare a couple of sandwiches?

A: Nah! Let's go get a burger and fries.

B: All you ever do is have unhealthy fast food Pizza, fries, burgers and hot dogs! You have to start eating better!

A: What are you talking about? I have salads sometimes.

B: Yeah right! I'm serious! You should also cut down on your sugar intake as well. You drink carbonated drinks that are high in fructose syrup! It's really not healthy!

A: Fine! I'll start drinking and having home cooked meals that are low in fat. Are you happy now?

B: It's a start, but I'll be happy when I see you stick to your promise!

## Key Vocabulary

grab a bite	<i>phrase</i>	get food that can be eaten quickly
all you ever do	<i>phrase</i>	something frequently done
cut down	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	reduce the amount taken or used
how about	<i>phrase</i>	what do you think
stick to	<i>phrase</i>	continue doing (something)

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Calorie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a unit of energy
Saturated Fat	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A fat that consists of triglycerides containing only saturated fatty acid radicals.
Fiber	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An indigestible portion of plant foods having two main components



Learn English on your Terms

Serving	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A specific amount or portion of food or liquids
Obese	<i>Adjective</i>	condition of having excess body fat,to the extent that it may have an adverse effect on health, leading to reduced life

## Daily Life - At The Post Office (C0201)

A: Welcome to the National Post. How may I help you?

B: Hi, I would like to send this package to China, and these postcards as well.

A: Very well. You will need some stamps for the postcards and I need to weigh that package, too.

B: Great. How much is this going to cost?

A: Well, it depends. Do you want to send it via priority, express or standard mail?

B: What's the difference?

A: Well, standard mail can take up to fifteen working days . Priority is a bit faster and will arrive in about five to eight working days. Express is the fastest, but it's also the most expensive. It only takes three days and you can track your package online.

B: I see. Well, there's no rush. Please send it via priority mail. Please be extra careful, the contents of the package are fragile.

## Key Vocabulary

weigh	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to find the weight of something
up to	<i>phrase</i>	at least
take	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	cost or require
rush	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	to be in a hurry
fragile	<i>Adjective</i>	easily broken or damaged
via	<i>Preposition</i>	travelling through a place on the way to somewhere
priority	<i>common noun, singular</i>	to be treated as more important than something else
express	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a service for carrying things faster than usual
standard	<i>Adjective</i>	usual or ordinary

## Supplementary Vocabulary

parcel	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something wrapped up; a package
forwarder	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an agent that facilitates and assures the pas- sage of received goods to their destination.
postage	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the charge for deliver- ing a piece of mail
P.O Box	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a numbered compart- ment in a post office where mail is put to be called for
ship	<i>verb</i>	to place, transport, or travel on any con- veyance, esp aboard a ship



## The Weekend - Asking For Directions (C0202)

A: We have been going around in circles for the past hour! Will you just please stop and ask for directions?

B: We are not lost! I'm just taking the scenic route.

A: Yeah, whatever. I told you we should buy that GPS that was on sale, but would you listen to me? No! This is so typical.

B: Fine! I'll ask this guy for directions if it will shut your trap! Excuse me, sir. Can you tell me how to get to Saint Mary's Church?

C: Sure! Go down Park Road. turn left, go up as far as the set of traffic lights and turn left. The place you are looking for is the second building on the right.

A: Thanks!

B: See? Was that hard? If you would only listen to me more often, you would be better off.

## Key Vocabulary

typical	<i>Adjective</i>	having the usual characteristics (of)
direction	<i>common noun, plural</i>	an instruction leading to a place or point
on sale	<i>phrase</i>	special offer or discount
get to	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	reach;be able to arrive at(in)
better off	<i>phrase</i>	be in a better condition
go around	<i>principle verb, present perfect progressive</i>	circulate
GPS		Global Positioning System
shut your trap	<i>phrase</i>	shut up

### Supplementary Vocabulary

freeway	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A highway without tolls. Also known as an expressway
---------	----------------------------------	--

Toll	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A fixed charge or tax for a privilege, especially for passage across a bridge or along a road.
Pedestrian	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person travelling on foot; walker
middle of nowhere	<i>phrase</i>	a remote or far away place where there are very few people or buildings
Hitchhiker	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A person that travels by soliciting free rides along a road.

## Daily Life - Calling Tech Support (C0203)

Tech guy: Hello, thanks for calling 123TechHelp, I'm Todd. How can I help you?

Client: Hello? Can you help me? My computer! Oh man...

Todd: It's okay sir, calm down. What happened?

Client: I turned on my laptop and it broke! I mean, the monitor went black!

Todd: Ok, sir, it sounds like you might have a virus.

Client: I don't feel sick,...let me check... Nope! No fever, I'm fine.

Todd: No, your computer might have a virus, I mean, it has a bad program on it. Maybe that's why it crashed. I recommend that you run an antivirus program in order to safely remove any unwanted spyware or Trojans.

Client: Phew! . . . . . Wait a minute, CRASH??!! Spyware? Trojans! What? where? when?!

## Key Vocabulary

oh man	<i>Interjection</i>	to express emotion or feeling, like God, Jesus
calm down	<i>phrase</i>	become quiet or calm, relax
laptop	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a small computer which is easily carried
I mean	<i>phrase</i>	to express ones own opinion, meaning
monitor	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an electronic display that shows images
virus	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a program designed to harm a computer
nope	<i>General Adverb</i>	no (informal)
program	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a set of instructions to perform
crash	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	stop working or functioning properly
antivirus	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a program designed to identify and remove computer viruses

run	<i>principle verb, imperative</i>	to work or be in operation
spyware	<i>common noun, singular</i>	software that secretly gathers information

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Hotline	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A telephone line that gives quick and direct access to a source of information or help
Phisihing	<i>common noun, singular</i>	To request confidential information over the Internet under false pretenses in order to fraudulently obtain credit card numbers, passwords, or other personal data
Crack	<i>verb</i>	To break open or into something such as a safe or a computer system
Format	<i>verb</i>	To divide (a disk) into marked sectors so that it may store data.



Learn English on your Terms

## Hardware

*common noun,  
singular*

A computer and the associated physical equipment directly involved in the performance of data-processing or communications functions.

## Global View - Understanding a Trial (C0204)

Lawyer: Your honor, ladies and gentlemen of the jury, My client, Robert Malone, has been accused of a crime he did not commit. The prosecution has accused my client of being a pickpocket! I know we have heard the testimony of many people here today, people who claim the defendant, my client, stole their wallets. I feel sorry for these victims, I really do. .... but my client is innocent!

Lawyer: Let's look at the facts. . . one: These 'so-called' witnesses did not actually see the defendant steal anything.....two: When the police stopped him, he did not have any of the stolen wallets. There is no evidence.

Lawyer: Therefore, Ladies and Gentlemen of the jury, I ask you to think carefully before giving your verdict. My client is innocent!

Judge: Ladies and Gentlemen of the jury, have you reached a verdict?

Jury member: Yes, your honor. our verdict is..... not guilty!

Robert: Thank you so much! You were great! Thank you for all your hard work!

Lawyer: You're welcome Robert! I knew you were innocent so my job was easy. Take care of yourself, okay?

Robert: Thanks once again...

Lawyer: Hey! Where's my wallet?

### Key Vocabulary

reach a verdict	<i>phrase</i>	succeed in making the finding of a jury in a trial
guilty	<i>Adjective</i>	responsible for doing something bad
your honor	<i>phrase</i>	a respectful title used to or of certain judges
jury	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a body of persons sworn to judge
accuse of	<i>phrase</i>	to charge someone with a crime

commit	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	to do something (usually a crime)
prosecution	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the lawyers against the defendant
pickpocket	<i>common noun, singular</i>	one who steals from pockets
testimony	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a declaration of truth or fact
defendant	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the person being sued or accused
victim	<i>common noun, plural</i>	people affected by a painful or sad experience
innocent	<i>Adjective</i>	not guilty
so-called	<i>Adjective</i>	refer to something that is not suitable
evidence	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	something that shows the thing is true
witness	<i>common noun, plural</i>	one who is called on to testify before a court

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Acquittal	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A jury verdict that a criminal defendant is not guilty, or the finding of a judge that the evidence is insufficient to support a conviction.
Affidavit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A written or printed statement made under oath.
Lawsuit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A legal action started by a plaintiff against a defendant based on a complaint that the defendant failed to perform a legal duty which resulted in harm to the plaintiff.
Plea	<i>verb</i>	In a criminal case, the defendant's statement pleading "guilty" or "not guilty" in answer to the charges.



Learn English on your Terms

## Warrant

*common noun,  
singular*

Court authorization,  
most often for law  
enforcement officers,  
to conduct a search or  
make an arrest.



## The Office - Closing The Deal (C0205)

Mr. Smith: I'm glad you could find time to meet with me, Mr. Johnson. I can't think of a nicer environment for our meeting today, the ambiance here is lovely!

Mr. Johnson: No problem, if possible I always combine business with pleasure. Now, let's hear more about these chocolates you're offering.

Mr. Smith: Well, as you know, I have recently become the sole distributor for Grangers Gourmet Bon-bons here in the United States. They're a new manufacturer and are looking to break into the luxury market. Naturally, your restaurant sprang into my mind immediately. I think your brand exemplifies many of the same traits as Grangers and serving these chocolates would really add to your reputation for providing elegant, luxurious, first class dining.

Mr. Johnson: Hmm, sounds interesting. . . . gourmet chocolates , where are they produced? Belgium?



Mr. Smith: Actually, the factory is located in Scotland.

Mr. Johnson: Really? I didn't think they were known for their luxury chocolate production...

Mr. Smith: That's what makes this such a fantastic opportunity! The government is one hundred percent supportive of creating new export markets and has guaranteed a low tariff for all wholesale orders of over one thousand units. They've also reduced the red tape involved at customs as well. Here, I brought these especially for you, try one!

Mr. Johnson: Oh, thanks. Mmm, hmm, creamy texture, smooth...

Mr. Smith: Unique aren't they? I bet you've never tasted anything like it! Quality is assured as I personally visit the factory to make sure no one's cutting corners with the ingredients. Only the crème de la crème make it through inspection.



Mr. Johnson: Yes, very interesting flavors. . . . .  
Slightly spicy, very unique, that's for sure. Exactly what ARE the ingredients?

Mr. Smith: I have it on highest authority that this traditional secret recipe has been handed down inthe Granger family for generations. I'm sure you can keep a secret. Buttermilk, cacao beans, sugar and Haggis.

Mr. Johnson: Haggis? What's Haggis?

Mr. Smith: It's a traditional Scottish delicacy; you take sheep's liver, heart and lung and stuff it inside ofthe sheep's stomach.

Mr. Johnson: Ah, get back to you.

Mr. Smith: Mr. Johnson? Mr. Johnson?

## Key Vocabulary

ambience	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the atmosphere of a place
----------	----------------------------------	---------------------------

distributor	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person or business that sells to retail stores
manufacturer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a company that makes goods
break into	<i>principle verb, in- finitive</i>	enter quickly
spring	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	To appear or come into being quickly
exemplify	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	sets an example, a demonstration
trait	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a characteristic feature or quality
factory	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place where goods are made
know	<i>Adjective</i>	famous for, easily rec- ognized
tariff	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a tax or amount of money to be paid
wholesale	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The sale of goods in large quantities.

red tape	<i>common noun, singular</i>	procedures required to gain bureaucratic approval
cutting corners	<i>phrase</i>	To do something in the easiest or most inexpensive
hand down	<i>phrase</i>	to pass from one family member or generation to th
Haggis		made of sheep's viscera minced with oatmeal, suet,
stuff	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to pack tightly, to cram inside

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Angel Investors	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Individuals who back emerging entrepreneurial ventures, usually as a bridge to get from the self-funded stage to the level of business that would both need and attract venture capital.
-----------------	----------------------------------	--

Joint Venture	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A legal entity created by two or more businesses joining together to conduct a specific business enterprise with both parties sharing profits and losses.
Venture Capital	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A form of financing for a company in which the business gives up partial ownership and control of the business in exchange for capital over a limited time frame, usually 3–5 years.
Merger	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A joining together of two previously separate corporations.
Audit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an evaluation of a person, organization, system, process, enterprise, project or product.



## Daily Life - Talking To Your Roomate (C0206)

A: Charlie, do you have a second?

B: Yeah what's up?

A: Well, I went and paid the bills today and you still haven't given me your half.

B: Yeah I wanted to talk to you about that. I agreed we would go halves on allthe bills, but frankly I think it's unfair.

A: Unfair! Why?

B: Well, you have long hair and use the hairdryer every morning. I don't. You leave your computer on all night downloading torrents. I don't. You see what I'm getting at here?

A: You leave the air conditioner on day and night! You also take 30 minute showers which means you are using way more gas and water than me!

B: Well, while we are at it, stop bringing your friends over for drinks every weekend. You always leave a mess and keep me up all night!

A: Maybe you should just move out and find another place.

B: Maybe you should move out!

### Key Vocabulary

bill	<i>common noun, plural</i>	a document that shows how much you must pay
go halves	<i>phrase</i>	divide equally
move out	<i>phrase</i>	to vacate a residence, cause to leave
what I am get- ting at	<i>phrase</i>	what I am trying to say
way more	<i>phrase</i>	much more, a lot more

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Landlord	<i>common noun, singular</i>	One that owns and rents land, buildings, or dwelling units.
----------	----------------------------------	---

Lease	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A contract granting use or occupation of property during a specified period in exchange for a specified rent.
Utility	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A commodity or service, such as electricity, water, or public transportation, that is provided by a public utility
Dower	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The rights of a widow in the property of her husband at his death.
Breach Of Contract	<i>phrase</i>	A legal violation of an established contract between two parties



## Daily Life - Shopping Online (C0207)

A: What are you doing?

B: I'm just looking for a nice pillow on Ebay.

A: You are shopping for a pillow online? That's absurd!

B: Why? I don't have to leave the house or browse a dozen stores to find what I'm looking for. This way, I just search for it online quick and easy.

A: I see, but how do you pay for it? How do you know you aren't going to be ripped off by the seller?

B: Well, the website handles a point system where if the seller does something wrong, people comment negatively and then you know that he or she may not be trustworthy.

A: Wow, that sounds pretty safe. So how do you pay? Do you need a credit card?

B: You can use a credit card or your debit card. They also let you use the PayPal system which is really safe and fast. I have never had any problems with someone hacking my information or anything.

A: Do you think I can find a sweater for my dog online?

B: You can find anything! Are you sure you want to start shopping online though? Once you step into this world, there is no turning back!

A: Let's do it!

### Key Vocabulary

absurd	<i>Adjective</i>	ridiculous
rip off	<i>Adjective</i>	be cheated violently; be stolen from
trustworthy	<i>Adjective</i>	reliable, or dependable; worthy of being trusted
hack	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	gain unauthorized access to another computer system
browse	<i>principle verb, infinitive</i>	to inspect something leisurely and casually

point system	<i>phrase</i>	a system of evaluation based on awarding points
credit card	<i>phrase</i>	a plastic card enables the holder to pay on credit
no turning back	<i>phrase</i>	not to halt the advance of; no to regret

### Supplementary Vocabulary

electronic commerce	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the buying and selling of products or services over the internet
search engine	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A program that searches documents for specified keywords and returns a list of the documents where the keywords were found.
COD		Charge on Delivery, a payment method that allows you to pay for goods once they have been delivered.



Learn English on your Terms

wire transfer	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An electronic transfer of funds from one account to another
webstore	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A webstore is a website that sells products or services and typically has an online shopping cart associated with it

## Global View - Understanding The Stock Market (C0208)

A: Sorry to bother you sir, but I have some bad news.

B: What is it?

A: Well, the stock market just took a huge plunge and we've lost a lot of money!

B: What do you mean? What happened?

A: There are many factors that weigh in, but NASDAQ is down 200 points, the DOW JONES indicator also suffered! Our portfolio is worth half of what it was worth points week ago.

B: How is this possible? You are supposed to be talking to our stockbrokers and making sure that our securities and investments are safe and making a profitable return!

A: I know sir! We didn't expect a bull market to become a bear market all of a sudden. On the other hand, you still have some high yield trash bonds and government bonds that will give us enough liquidity to cut our loses and reinvest in emerging markets. We could potentially make this tragedy work for us and make us think outside the box.

B: Do what you have to do! One other thing, don't tell the rest of the stockholders about this. If they find out, it's the end of this company!

### Key Vocabulary

plunge	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a steep and rapid fall
weigh in	<i>phrase</i>	to contribute, especially in a discussion
profitable	<i>Adjective</i>	according gain, benefit, or profit
yield	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the amount of something that is produced
think out-side the box	<i>phrase</i>	take another look at something

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Dow Jones Average	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an index that shows how 30 large, publicly-owned companies based in the United States have traded during a standard trading session in the stock market.
Fortune 500	<i>common noun, singular</i>	an annual list compiled and published by Fortune magazine that ranks the top 500 U.S. closely held and public corporations as ranked by their gross revenue
Equities	<i>common noun, plural</i>	Common and preferred stocks, which represent a share in the ownership of a company.
face value	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The cash denomination of the individual debt instrument.
Initial Public Offering		A company's first issue of shares to the general public.

## Daily Life - Office Gossip (C0209)

Pam: Psssst! Psssssssst! Hey! Eric, have you heard?

Eric: Hm? No. . . go on, tell me, what's the latest office gossip?

Pam: Well, you didn't hear this from me but the rumor is. . . . . . . . is getting a promotion!

Eric: No way! But. . . she's a terrible worker. . . and you can't trust her. . . she's so two-faced - you can't believe anything she says!

Paula: Hey guys, what are you two whispering about?

Eric: Oh Hi Paula! How are you?

Paula: I've got some good news! I'm getting a promotion!

Pam: Congratulations! Eric and I were just saying that you are the best person for the job. . . .

Eric: Yes! You're the best!

## Key Vocabulary

hear	<i>principle verb, present perfect</i>	learn something by the ear (usually in surprise)
gossip	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	rumor or talk of a personal, sensational nature
whisper	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	soft speech produced without full voice
rumor	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a mixture of truth and untruth passed around
promotion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	act of raising in rank or position

## Supplementary Vocabulary

talk	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who cannot keep a secret
trust	<i>Adjective</i>	someone who cannot be trusted
praise	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to speak very well about someone



Learn English on your Terms

bad mouth	<i>common noun, singular</i>	to speak poorly about someone
Lie	<i>common noun, singular</i>	someone who does not tell the truth

## Daily Life - Meeting the In-laws (C0210)

Cindy: Mother, father, I'd like to introduce you to my fiancé, Bob.

Miranda: Hello, Bob. Welcome.

Bob: Thanks for having me. Nice to meet the both of you. I've heard so much!

Thurston: So Cindy told you about bringing home her last boyfriend, then? Hah, that idiot...

Miranda: Shhh! Thurston, you're going to scare the poor boy. Come in and have a drink. Dinner will be on in just a bit.

Thurston: What'll you be having? Whiskey? Bourbon? Pick your poison!

Bob: If you have a lemonade that'd be great.

Thurston: Lemonade...?

Miranda: Why sure, there's some in the fridge!

Cindy: Mother makes her own lemonade from scratch.  
It's the best!

Thurston: So what are your hobbies, son? If you want, we can do some hunting tomorrow. I've just picked up a new rifle I've been meaning to try out. Should be a real hoot!

Bob: Um. I'm not really. eh. I don't really hunt.

Thurston: You don't hunt? Well I'll be...

Cindy: Bob is an animal rights activist. He doesn't believe in harming animals.

Miranda: Dinner's ready! Let's go out to the patio where the pig is roasting.

Bob: Roast pig? I'm a vegetarian.

## Key Vocabulary

scratch      *principle verb, present simple*      to rub your skin with something sharp

pick your poison      *phrase*      select whatever you like

pick up	<i>principle verb, present perfect</i>	buy
roast		cook with dry heat
activist	<i>common noun, singular</i>	advocating or engaged in activism
well I'll be	<i>phrase</i>	used to refer to show surprise

### Supplementary Vocabulary

home cooking	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A meal prepared at home
alcohol	<i>common noun, singular</i>	An intoxicating drink
nervous	<i>Adjective</i>	to be uncomfortable(usually emotionally)
frighten	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to scare someone
chastise	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to scold someone



## The Weekend - Playing Board Games (C0211)

Jim: Hey- Why did you take that money? You are such a cheater! I should send you to jail!

Karen: I am not cheating. When you pass go, you collect \$200, Everyone knows that!

Jim: Well you can't just take the money. You have to ask the bank for money. And I'm the banker.

Karen: Banker?

Jim: Yes...

Karen: Can I have my \$200 please?

Jim: Sure. Here you are, \$200, Thank you, please come again! Now it's my turn to roll the dice.

### Key Vocabulary

such a                    *General Adverb*                    so extreme a degree

cheat                    *principle verb,*                    to deceive by trickery  
                            *present progressive*

my turn	<i>common noun, singular</i>	my opportunity to do something
jail	<i>common noun, singular</i>	place where prisoners are kept
can I		used to ask for permissions
banker	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the player in charge of the bank in gambling games

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Bank Teller	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A person who works for the bank
Crook	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A person who steals(usually things of value)
Permission	<i>common noun, singular</i>	To accept a request
Gambling	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A game of odds
Collect	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to receive something of yours

## Global View - Last Will And Testament (C0212)

A: I, Luke Thompson, residing in California, being of sound mind, do hereby declare this instrument to be my last will and testament.

A: I hereby revoke all previous wills and codicils.

A: I direct that the disposition of my remains be as follows: I am to be cremated and taken to the summit of Mount Everest where my ashes will forever remain at the ceiling of the Earth.

A: I give all the rest and residue of my estate to my spouse, Betty Thompson, should she survive me for days. If my spouse, Betty Thompson, does not survive me, I give all the rest and residue of my estate to EnglishPod.

A: If neither Betty Thompson nor EnglishPod survives me, I give all the rest and residue of my estate to my heirs as determined by the laws of the State of California, relating to descent and distribution.

A: I appoint Robert Porter, to act as the executor of this will, to serve without bond. Should Robert Porter be unable or unwilling to serve, then I appoint Jason Smalls to act as the executor of this will.

A: I herewith affix my signature to this will on this the twenty third of May two thousand ten inthe presence ofthe following witnesses, who witnessed and subscribed this will at my request, and in my presence.

### Key Vocabulary

reside	<i>principle verb, present progressive</i>	live in a place permanently
sound	<i>Adjective</i>	free from disease or injury ;in good condition
hereby	<i>General Adverb</i>	by means of or as a result of this
last will and tes- tament	<i>phrase</i>	a paper made to settle property after one's death

remains	<i>common noun, plural</i>	the body of a dead person
summit	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the highest point; top
estate	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	everything you own; all your assets
appoint	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	choose someone to do a particular job
affix	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	add or append
subscribe	<i>principle verb, past simple</i>	to sign at the end of the will or contract
spouse	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a person's partner in marriage
revoke	<i>principle verb, indicative</i>	cancel

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Responsibility	<i>common noun, singular</i>	to be held accountable
----------------	----------------------------------	------------------------

Directions	<i>common noun, plural</i>	A set of actions
Residence	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A person's house or dwelling
Donation	<i>common noun, singular</i>	To give something free of charge(usually of value)
Funeral	<i>common noun, singular</i>	A celebration of a person's life after passing

## Daily Life - Funeral Arrangements (C0213)

A: Hi Daniel, how are you holding up? I am greatly sorry for your loss.

B: Thank you, I'm doing much better. I've begun organizing everything for the funeral.

A: How's that going ?

B: It's a lot harder than I imagined. There are many things that you have to arrange. I booked a time and date with the funeral home, but I still have a lot of things to do.

A: Have you bought a burial plot and a casket?

B: No. Wendy is being cremated. She always talked about how she didn't want to be buried. I already chose a cremation urn and we plan to spread the ashes in the ocean.

A: I see, that sounds like something she would have really liked. I am sure the memorial service will be tasteful. You are doing a great job.

B: Thanks, it hasn't been easy, but luckily we have life insurance and Wendy left behind a detailed will that will sort out any other legal matters.

### Key Vocabulary

hold up	V	continue to live through hardship
burial	N	the act of burying, esp the interment of a dead body
cremate	V	burn up something and reduce to ash
tasteful	A	being in keeping with good taste
detail	A	having many details

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Arrange	V	to make preparations
Morgue	N	A place where dead bodies are stored
Funeral Home	N	A place where memorial services are held



Learn English on your Terms

To book	✓	to set a specific time to do something
To grieve	✓	to be sad

## Daily Life - Describing Personalities (C0214)

A: OK class, settle down. I have the results of your individual personality tests. I am going to hand them out and if you'd like, you can read them out loud to the rest of the class.

B: I'll read mine!

A: OK, go ahead.

B: It says here that I am adventurous, outgoing and easy-going. It says that I am a little superstitious and occasionally naive! That's not true!

A: The test isn't one-hundred percent accurate. Is that all it says?

B: No! It also says that I am open-minded with great ambition but that I can also be reckless and clumsy. This is stupid!

A: Ok, anyone else want to read theirs?

C: I'll go! It says that I am an extroverted, well-balanced person. It says I am generous, outspoken, and very diligent. This is so true! It also says that I am magnanimous, eloquent and daring! This is totally me!

A: Pfft whatever, these tests are bologna!

### Key Vocabulary

naive	<i>Adjective</i>	ignorant
reckless	<i>Adjective</i>	having or showing no regard for danger
clumsy	<i>Adjective</i>	be careless;lack in skill or physical coordinate
open-minded	<i>Adjective</i>	easy to entertain new ideas
settle down	<i>phrase</i>	be quiet
superstitious	<i>Adjective</i>	showing faith in magic or chance ignorant of laws

**extrovert**      *Adjective*      a person concerned more with practical realities

**eloquent**      *Adjective*      express yourself clearly and effectively

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**Bologna**      *phrase*      a term used to express disagreement

**easy going**      *Adjective*      someone who is easy to get along with

**Active**      *Adjective*      to be full of energy

**thrill seeker**      *Adjective*      a person who enjoys being daring

**unsatisfied**      *Adjective*      to want more

## The Weekend - At the Deli (C0215)

A: Honey, we are all out of wine and cheese. Do you mind running to the deli and picking up a few things?

B: Can't it wait? I'm watching the game right now!

A: Your friends and family are coming over tonight and we still need to get a lot of things.

B: Fine! What do you need?

A: Ok, pick up some cured meats to go with the wine. Maybe a pound of polish sausages, ham, liver-wurst, salami and any other cold cuts that are on sale. I think I saw a promotion for pastrami. Also get some cole slaw and a jar of olives.

B: Whoa wait a minute! Isn't that a bit too much? I mean, how much is all of this going to cost?

A: Never mind that. Get some dips as well. Get a jar of spinach and blue cheese dip and also some Tzatziki. If they have bean dip get that as well. Last but not least, get some pickles.

B: Is that all, your majesty?

A: Very funny! Get a move on! People will be here any minute.

### Key Vocabulary

out of	<i>Preposition</i>	lack
pick up	<i>principle verb, indicative</i>	to choose and buy
promotion	<i>common noun, singular</i>	something done to make people aware of a product
never mind	<i>phrase</i>	don't take what you just said into consideration
last but not least	<i>Conjunction</i>	in addition to all the foregoing
deli	<i>common noun, singular</i>	a shop selling ready-to-eat food products

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Demand	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	To aggressively give orders
--------	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------



Learn English on your Terms

Distraction	<i>common noun, singular</i>	To lose focus
Inconvenient	<i>Adjective</i>	Have bad timing
Decieving	<i>Adjective</i>	To not be truthful
Expenses	<i>common noun, plural</i>	To be aware of the spending or saving money

## Daily Life - Health Food (C0216)

John: Ok darling, got some pizzas, potato chips, hot dogs and lots of cheese!

Kelly: Oh John, I thought we said we would start eating right! Remember? Our new healthy lifestyle? That's all junk food!

John: Hrumph! Right, so what did you get?

Kelly: Well, healthy food , of course! I got some whole wheat bread, skimmed milk, fresh fish and organic carrots. . . .

John: Organic? What's organic? Do we need organic carrots ?

Kelly: They were grown without using any chemicals that are harmful to our health. And yes, John, we need organic carrots. . . .

John: Oh, so organic vegetables are the 'green' option, right?

Kelly: Yup, better for the environment and better for us!

John: Wait a minute, that? . . . Doughnuts? they organic doughnuts, Kelly?

Kelly: . . . I like doughnuts.

### Key Vocabulary

eat right	<i>principle verb, indicative</i>	have healthy food
lifestyle	<i>common noun, singular</i>	the way people live
junk food	<i>common noun, non-variable</i>	a high-calorie food and low in nutritional value
organic	<i>Adjective</i>	without using any chemicals
green	<i>Adjective</i>	healthy to the body
doughnut	<i>common noun, plural</i>	small ring-shaped fried-cakes

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Consciousness	<i>common noun, singular</i>	To be aware of something
---------------	------------------------------	--------------------------

Health Nut	<i>phrase</i>	Someone concerned with living a healthy lifestyle
Environmentalist	<i>common noun, singular</i>	Someone who is concerned with the environment
Support	<i>principle verb, present simple</i>	to be of help
Resolution	<i>common noun, singular</i>	The commitment to do something differently or begin to do something

## Global View - Volunteering (C0217)

Mark: Thanks a lot for pitching in once again Judy, we really appreciate your help. It seems that at this time of year there are more and more people who are struggling to make ends meet. There aren't many professional chefs like you who are so generous with their time.

Judy: Don't be silly Mark, I'm more than happy to donate my time to a good cause. Volunteering at the soup kitchen has been really rewarding for me. You know, it's satisfying to provide good meals for those who are less fortunate, I feel like I'm really making a difference in some small way.

Mark: Well, your skills are definitely appreciated here! The people who come here have fallen on hard times and a delicious hot meal can really bolster their spirits. That smells great! The needy are sure lucky to have you!

Judy: Thanks Mark!

Judy: Here you go, enjoy your meal!

Old lady: Thank you my dear, Oh this looks lovely.

Judy: You're welcome, Hello sir, today we have. . . .  
are you doing here?

George: Hey Judy! I'll have a little of everything,  
thanks. . . . smells great!

Judy: George, seriously . . . what are you doing  
here? I haven't seen you since our divorce  
was finalized. You've got no right to be here,  
you're hardly homeless!

George: Don't be like that Judy, I really miss your  
home cooking!

### Key Vocabulary

pitch in	P	set to work vigorously
generous	A	willing to give away one's money, time, etc.
donate	V	give something for free to a good cause
fall on hard times	V	be in a difficult situa- tion

needy	<i>N</i>	people who need practical or emotional support
hardly	<i>R</i>	almost not
generous	<i>A</i>	willing to give away one's money, time, etc.
pitch in	<i>P</i>	set to work vigorously

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Culinary	<i>N</i>	having to do with the preparation of food
Selfless	<i>A</i>	To be giving of one's time and abilities
awkwardness	<i>N</i>	to feel uncomfortable in a situation
Righteous	<i>A</i>	to live by a high code of conduct
Harrassment	<i>N</i>	to persistently bother someone

## Daily Life - Divorce (C0218)

Je♂: Joanne, let's not make this divorce any more acrimonious than it already is, okay? Let's just get down to business and start dividing this stuff up fairly, so we can go our separate ways, alright?

Joanne: Fine with me. I just want to get this over with. It's important we make a clean break. I should have signed a pre-nup.

Je♂: What was that?

Joanne: Nothing! Anyway, you're right, there's no reason this has to be nasty. My lawyer tells me you've accepted our alimony proposal and the division of property, as well as the custody agreement- I keep the cat and you get the dog. So that's done. finally.

Je♂: Let's not go there, Joanne! Ok, so let's start with the record collection, I'll take the albums I contributed and you can have your cheesy disco albums back.

Joanne: Fine, but I'm keeping the antique gramophone as my grandfather gave it to me.

Je♂: I believe that was a wedding present to both of us, Joanne. And you hardly ever use it!

Joanne: He's my grandfather, and he never really liked you anyway!

Je♂: Whatever! Alright, I'll concede the silly gramophone, if you'll agree that I get the silver tea set.

Joanne: How typical, when are you ever going to use a silver tea set? Fine! I don't want to drag this out any longer than necessary. What's next? What about these old photographs?

Je♂: Which ones? Let me have a look. Wow, look at that! That brings back memories. That?

Joanne: Our trip to Italy! I remember that day. We were going to visit the Trevi fountain, and we got caught in the rain. . . .

Je♂: . . . and you looked so adorable with your hair all wet. I had to take a picture of you standing there in that little alley, smiling and laughing in the rain. . . .

Joanne: Oh, we really did have fun back then didn't we?

Je↵: Oh, Joanne, are we making a big mistake? I know our relationship has been on the rocks for sometime but are you sure we can't reconcile and try again? I still love you.

Joanne: Oh Jeff! I love you too! I'm so glad we didn't have to decide who keeps the motorcycle.

Je↵: The motorcycle? But that's mine!

### Key Vocabulary

clean break	V	thorough or complete stop in a relationship
pre-nup	N	prenuptial agreement;a contract prior to marriage
custody	N	the act of keeping safe or guarding
concede	V	to acknowledge, often reluctantly, as being true



Learn English on your Terms

drag this out	V	proceed for an extended period of time
go our separate ways	V	set or keep apart in the relationship

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Bitter	A	to be angry
Sharing	V	To equally have posses- sion of something
Civil	A	to behave with class
Reconsider	V	To have second thoughts
Dispute	N	to have an arguement



## Global View - Baby Shower (C0219)

A: Thank you for organizing this great baby shower for me! I've always been to baby showers but never actually had one held for me! Let's get started!

B: Ok, let's start opening some presents!

A: Oh look! What a great little bib for the baby! This will definitely come in handy! Oh wow, you also got me a stroller! That's so great! Thank you!

B: This next one is from Betty.

A: A highchair and car seat! Wow Betty thank you so much! I really appreciate it!

B: One more from Carla.

A: A playpen and crib! Thanks Carla! This is just what I needed!

B: OK, that's all of them. No more gifts. Now who wants to guess when the baby is due!

A: Umm. I think my water just broke! Get me to a hospital!

## Key Vocabulary

hold	V	to cause to take place
bib	N	a napkin tied under the chin of baby while eating
come in handy	P	be useful for a certain purpose
crib	N	baby bed with high sides
the baby be due	P	expected date of child-birth

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Expectation	N	a pre-conceived thought of what could or should happen
Gratitude	N	To be overly thankful
Surprise	N	To have something happen unexpectedly



Learn English on your Terms

**Necessity**

*N*

To must have something

**Practical**

*N*

something which fits a certain need

## Daily Life - New Furniture (C0220)

A: How about this floor lamp?

B: Fine just get it! We have been shopping for furniture for five hours! I'm so tired!

A: We still need to find an armoire and a dresser.

B: Fine! I am going to go home and drop off this nightstand, coffee table and love seat while you look for the rest of the things.

A: Great! Pick me up in about an hour because I think I'll also get a bean bag and a dining set.

B: While you are at it can you pick out a nice recliner? I really want one so I can watch TV.

A: Recliner? In my beautifully decorated living room? I don't think so!

## Key Vocabulary

floor  
lamp

P

a tall lamp with a base  
that stands on the floor

armoire	N	a large wardrobe or cabinet
dresser	N	a set of shelves usually used for holding clothes
nightstand	N	a small table or stand placed at a bedside
love seat	N	small sofa that seats two people
recliner	N	an armchair that can be reclined
while you are at it	P	during the time you are there

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Sectional	N	one large couch with different sections
coffee ta- ble	N	A table that is set in the middle of a living room
bar stools	N	Chairs that are placed at a bar



Learn English on your Terms

family  
room

*N*

the room where the  
family spends time to-  
gether



## Daily Life - Car Trouble (C0221)

A: Car trouble center. How may I help you?

B: My car won't start! Stupid old car!

A: Hold on, before you kick your car let's go through some possible problems.

B: Fine.

A: Ok, first of all, can you turn the key in the ignition?

B: Yeah! I am here with my friend and he thinks it may be the spark plug or the starter motor.

A: Those are possible problems, but tell me, when you turn the key, do you hear the starter motor crank?

B: Yeah, it sounds like it usually does when I start the car, but nothing else happens. The engine won't start. Should I maybe press the accelerator?

A: No. If you step on the accelerator pedal you can flood the carburetor and your car will never start.

B: So what do you think it is?

A: I know this may seem like a silly question, but does your car have gasoline?

B: Umm. yeah! Right! I got the car started! Thanks for your help! I told you to fill the tank!

### Key Vocabulary

go through	P	look at (something) in a careful way
ignition	N	a device to start up the car
spark plug	P	electrical device that ignites the gas by electric
starter motor	P	an electric motor for starting an engine
crank	V	to start (an engine, motor, etc.)
engine	N	the device which helps cars getting running

accelerator	<i>N</i>	a pedal that controls the throttle valve
carburetor	<i>N</i>	mixes air with gasoline vapor prior to explosion

### Supplementary Vocabulary

to stall	<i>V</i>	when a car's engine will not start
brakes	<i>N</i>	the mechanism which stops the car
gas tank	<i>N</i>	the tank which carries the car's gasoline
seat belt	<i>N</i>	the strap which protects from an accident
tow truck	<i>N</i>	a service which repairs or retrieves a broken car

## Global View - Carbon Footprint (C0222)

A: So what's your guys' take on all this global warming hysteria in the media?

B: It's pretty serious, man. There have been tons of scientific studies and the scientific community says that the earth is heating up. We need to make some drastic changes to our lifestyle if we want to preserve our planet.

A: I don't know. It sounds like a bunch of mumbo jumbo if you ask me. "Save the earth!" The earth will save itself. It's survived worst disasters in the past. I mean, honestly, we live in the boonies. There's no way anyone here is ever going to walk or bike to work, especially in the winter. And we have no bus system. My house is forty years old and it would take a lot of money to get it refitted to be "green" and "energy-efficient".

C: Well I don't really know if I believe in global warming either, or whether or not it was our doing or a natural change the earth is going through, but you have to admit that we're living pretty irresponsibly here in the west.

A: I guess...



C: I think the issue at hand is sustainability. We've only got this one earth we can live on, and our resources are quickly disappearing because of our own carelessness and our inability to think of anyone but ourselves and anything but the present.

B: So, like I was saying, we need to change the way we live. We need to reduce our carbon footprint.

C: But it doesn't have to be that drastic. Hybrid vehicles and solar panels are too expensive to be feasible right now. And we don't have to be hippies living off the land and buying everything organic either, though it helps.

B: I car pool to work everyday with some buddies of mine. I have a rain barrel outside my house I use to water my plants and my lawn in the summer, and I make sure I always bring reusable bags with me when I get my groceries. And we just started using bio-degradable plastic made from corn oil for take-out orders at my family's restaurant. Remember the three R's? Reduce. Reuse. Recycle.

C: Exactly, it's just small simple changes, like buying energy-saving light bulbs, starting a compost bin, recycling bottles and papers, using reusable water bottles, stop using disposable cups and cutlery.

A: Like the ones we're drinking out of?

B: Yeah.

### Key Vocabulary

mumbo	P	unintelligible or incomprehensible language
jumbo		
heat up	P	gain heat or get hot
preserve	V	maintain in safety from injury, peril, or harm
boonies	N	rural country or jungle
sustainability	R	keep in existence and maintain
drastic	A	sudden and severe
feasible	A	capable of being done with means at hand
refit	V	add new parts
refit	V	prepare and equip for additional use

resource	<i>N</i>	available source of wealth
car pool	<i>N</i>	share the car with others to work

### Supplementary Vocabulary

going green	<i>P</i>	the term used for being more environmentally friendly
energy star	<i>N</i>	a label given to efficient appliances.
realization	<i>N</i>	to come to a sudden conclusion
skeptic	<i>N</i>	a person who questions popular thought
alternatives	<i>N</i>	to replace something with something of equal use



## Daily Life - Facial Hair (C0223)

Officer Ok Sally, we have an artist here to help us.  
Brown: We'll ask you questions about the bank robber  
you saw and Paul will draw a picture. Are you  
ready?

Sally: Yes, hmmmm. Well, he had brown hair.....  
long hair..... and he had some facial  
hair..... was brown, too.

Officer Good! Ok, the facial hair, was it a beard or a  
Brown: mustache?

Sally: Both! His mustache was very short and thin,  
.... on the top of his lip.

Paul: un-uh hmmmm..., like this?

Sally: Yes, that's the mustache! But the beard isn't  
right, mean, it didn't cover his whole face....  
think it was just on his chin.

Officer A goatee? Was it like Paul's?  
Brown:

Sally: Ah yes, that's it, he had a goatee.....

Paul: Okay, what about sideburns? Did he have sideburns?

Sally: Um, they were long and thick, yours!

Paul: Alright, was this the man you saw?

Sally: Yes, that's him! Hmmmm, he looks a lot like you.

Officer Hmmm, why yes he does. Paul, where were Brown: you on Friday afternoon?

Paul: What? That's ridiculous! It wasn't me! I didn't do anything.

## Key Vocabulary

facial hair	P	hair on the face
beard	N	the hair growing on the lower part of a man's face
mustache	N	an unshaved growth of hair on the upper lip

goatee	N	a small chin beard trimmed into a point
sideburns	N	hair that grows on the sides of man
thick	A	not thin;great in extent from the surface
ridiculous	A	very unreasonable or silly
why yes	P	as a matter of fact

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Sketch Artist	N	A person who can draw a face from instruction
razor	N	a sharp instrument used to shave a beard
Shaving cream	N	a lather applied to the face for a smooth shave
Hair Clippers	N	An electric machine that cuts hair



Learn English on your Terms

Muttonchops    N

Sideburns that are long  
and extend towards the  
corner of the mouth

## Global View - Crime Scene (C0224)

Detective MeGee:

Alright, Officer McGraw,  
Give it to me straight, what  
are we looking at here?

McGraw:

Detective MeGee! We're glad to see you! We could sure use your expertise on this one. It's a break-in, but nothing seems to have been stolen. We received a call from the Bear family at around ten thirty this morning. They had gone out for a walk before breakfast and came home to this mess! Broken chairs and porridge all over the place! Apparently, Momma Bear had made the porridge a little too hot, you see, and they were waiting for it to cool down.

Detective MeGee:

Okay then, let's start examining the evidence ..... Have the forensics team been in yet?

McGraw:

Yes sir. They found some fingerprints on the bowls and are analyzing them back at the lab as we speak. Hopefully, they will be able to identify the burglar soon.

Detective MeGee:

Hmmmm,Ah ha! What's this? A strand of golden hair. . . . . this is a very important piece of trace evidence McGraw. It tells me the suspect has long golden hair. . . . . very few men have long golden hair. . . . . our criminal could be a woman. . . . .

McGraw:

A woman? Was she working alone? Did she have an accomplice?

Detective MeGee:

An accomplice? No, no McGraw, she was definitely working alone. See here, there are footprints in the porridge, here on the floor. . . . footprints, tells me that our suspect is small. . . . could possibly be a child.

McGraw:

A child? Surely not, sir. . . .

Detective MeGee:

We must follow the clues, McGraw! The evidence doesn't lie! Now, let's reconstruct the crime. . . . . the suspect came in, sat in each chair breaking the smallest one into little pieces. Next, the porridge. she obviously tried to eat it and because it was so hot, she dropped it on the floor. . . . this mess. interesting. These footprints seem to lead upstairs. McGraw, did your officers clear the scene?

McGraw:

Well, there was no one down here. . . and maybe we forget to check upstairs.

Goldylocks:

Hey! What's with all the noise? I'm trying to sleep up here!

Detective MeGee:

There she is! Get her!

### Key Vocabulary

forensics	N	scientific tests used in the investigation of crime
identify	V	discover and define
strand	N	a single length of
accomplice	N	a person who helps another in committing a crime
reconstruct	V	form a picture of a crime by piecing together evidence

Give it to me straight	P	tell me something directly and honestly
suspect	V	think something is false

### Supplementary Vocabulary

yellow tape	N	A tape used by police to block off a crime scene
Crime Scene Investigator	N	The person in charge of collecting evidence
Trespasser	N	A person who illegally enters private property
Destruction of property	N	The physical damage of private property

## The Weekend - Planning A Crime (C0225)

Sammy: Alright, let's run through this one more time from the top. I will be positioned here, across from the bank on this park bench. Now, according to the intel we got from Jimmy...

Ralph: ah, who's Jimmy?

Sammy: Jeez Ralph! Pay attention, will ya? Jimmy's our mole, you know. . . . the guy on the inside. . . . He's been snooping and passing on the info to us so we can pull this heist off!

Frankie: Yea, Ralph, clean the moth balls outta your ears and listen up. This here is important , you don't wanna end up back in the slammer, do ya? Your role is pretty important here, we're depending on you, man.

Ralph: Ok, ok! I'm listening! moth balls, hrumph. . .

Sammy: Alright then, . . . . was I? Oh yeah, ok, so I'll be the lookout. . . . here on the bench across from the bank. Nobody moves until I give the go-ahead, Alright? And what's the go-ahead? . . . Ralph?



Ralph: You, umm. . . ah. . . . yeah, you'll take off your hat and scratch your head!

Sammy: Right. When I take my hat off and scratch my head, you do what?

Ralph: I get in the box.

Frankie: Right, you get in the box. I'll make sure it's all sealed and then, posing as a delivery guy, I'll drop off a 'special package' for the manager. Now, according to Jimmy, the bank manager is leaving early on Tuesday 'cause it's his wedding anniversary. He and the wife are having a romantic rendezvous in the country, so any packages delivered will be left unopened in his office until he gets back late on Wednesday. . . .

Sammy: . . . . . Which gives us access to his office for at least Come hours. Ralph, this is where you come in. . . . where are you?

Ralph: I'm standing right next to you Sammy, Sorry Sam, I'm in the box. Right there. . . in that box.



Frankie: . . . . what do you do once I deliver you to the manager's office?

Ralph: I stay in the box until the bank has closed, . . . I get out of the box.

Sammy: . . . . then? What next, Ralph? Oh for Pete's sake! This is never going to work.

Ralph: Hey, give me a chance here, fellas! I, um, I crack the safe . . . then, then I take the money. . . . then I. . . ummmmm, I get back in the box.

Frankie: 'Atta boy Ralph! In the morning I come back to the bank, say there's been a mix-up with the delivery I made and take the 'special package' back here.

Sammy: Alright, let's get some sleep. . . it's a big day tomorrow fellas!

Frankie: A perfect plan, Sammy! It went off without a hitch!

Sammy: Let's open this up and get Ralph out here so we can start counting the money!

Ralph: Phew! I sure am glad to see you guys! I was sure getting lonely with no one to talk.

Frankie: That's nice, ok how much!

Ralph: Huh?Uh,, really, really, really glad?

Sammy: Money, Ralph! Money!

Ralph: Oh man, I knew I forgot something. . . . .

### Key Vocabulary

run through	P	rehearse quickly
snoop	V	pry into the private affairs of others
outta	X	out of
slammer	N	a prison or jail
intel	N	short for intelligence; information or instructions

lookout	N	person who watches and warns if there is danger
go-ahead	N	permission to do something
rendezvous	N	a meeting planned at a certain time and place
hitch	N	mistake; an unforeseen obstacle
for Pete's sake	I	a phrase used to express frustration

### Supplementary Vocabulary

forgetful	A	someone who forgets details very easily
details	N	specific and important information
misdirection	N	to give the impression of one act but do another



Learn English on your Terms

**unreliable**      A

a person who cannot be trusted to do what is asked

## Global View - Fundraiser (C0226)

A: Ok Mark, it's your turn to ring the doorbell. I did it last time.

B: I hate going door to door, and I hate asking for money.

A: But we need to raise enough money for the school fundraiser so that our class can win the pizza party! You do want to have a pizza party, don't you?

B: Yes, but...

A: Just go already!

B: No one's coming.

A: Try again.

B: Maybe there's no one home.



A: Of course there's someone home! There are two cars in the driveway and I see lights on in the house! Hello! Anybody home? We would like to know if you want to sponsor us in our school fundraiser. Fifty percent of the profits go towards the new school playground!

B: I don't know why anyone would want what's in this catalog anyway. It's just a bunch of tacky Christmas ornaments, CD's of old people singing Christmas songs, and special crackers and cheeses and boxes of chocolates.

A: You don't like chocolates?

B: Not this kind. They've got weird names like ganache and praline.

A: Look! I just saw someone walking around inside! These people are being very rude!

A: Finally, someone's coming!

B: They don't look too happy.

A: Hi, sir. Would you like to sponsor us or make a donation to.

C: What grade are you kids in?

A: Grade seven.

C: Then for goodness sake, don't you see this sign?  
Can't you read?

A: No soliciting.

B: What does that mean?

A: No idea.

### Key Vocabulary

raise	V	increase in size, quantity, or worth
door to door	P	from one house to the next
driveway	N	short private road from a street to a house
sponsor	V	agree to pay for an event or activity

donation	N	the act of giving to a fund or cause
solicit	V	seek to obtain by persuasion, entreaty, or formal
fundraiser	N	a person or an action which collects money for particular purposes

### Supplementary Vocabulary

generous	A	to be very giving
embarrassed	A	the feeling of being uncomfortable
stingy	A	the reluctance to be giving
avoid	V	to stay clear of someone or something



## Daily Life - Wedding Planning (C0227)

A: Trina, will you marry me?

B: Yes! Yes! And yes! Jared of course I'll marry you!

A: Oh Babe, I can't wait to spend the rest of my life with you! I can't wait for all the adventures we're going to have, for all the fights and the laughter. I can't wait to grow old and wrinkly with you.

B: Oh Jared! I can't wait for our wedding! I hope you don't mind, but I've already chosen a date! Six months from now in the summer! Melissa saw you buying the ring last month so I've had plenty of time to start planning!

A: She what?

B: Oh don't worry sweetie, I didn't know when you were going to propose. It was still a nice surprise! As I was saying, I've got it all planned out. There's almost nothing left to do! I wrote up our guest list and we will have roughly four hundred guests attending.

A: four hundred?

B: No need to sweat it My parents agreed to pay for most of the wedding, which is going to be low-budget anyway. So roughly four hundred people, which means that the hall at Northwood Heights will be our reception venue. I thought it would be nice if we had the wedding at your parents' church and my uncle of course would be officiating. We'll meet with him soon for some pre-wedding counseling. The music for the wedding ceremony was a no-brainer. My step-sister and her string quartet will take care of that. My cousin will be the official photographer. I thought it would also be nice if his daughter could sing a solo. Did you know that she's going to be a professional opera singer?

A: Ah...

B: And then of course the ladies at the church would love to be our caterers for the banquet and we'll get the Youth Group to serve us. I was thinking that your friend's band could be our entertainment for the night. though they might have to tone it down a bit. Or we could hire a DJ. Your sister's husband could get us a discount with that company that does the decor at weddings. what's their name again? I was thinking that we could have an island paradise- themed wedding and our theme color would be a soothing blue like Aquamarine. And there will be a huge seashell on the wall behind the podium where we'll make our toasts! What do you think of small packages of drink mixes for our wedding favors? Who else am I missing? Oh, your uncle could be our florist and his wife could make our wedding cake!

A: Wow.

B: See? It's going to be wonderful! Oh this wedding is going to be everything I ever dreamed of.

A: If I survive the next six months.

### Key Vocabulary

wrinkly

R

having a lot of wrinkles

propose	V	ask someone to marry you
rough	R	simple or that needs further changes, etc.
venue	N	the place where an event takes place
officiate	V	to perform the official duties of a ceremony
no-brainer	N	Something so simple as to require no thought
caterer	N	someone who provides food and service
decor	N	the way something is decorated
decor	N	the way something is decorated
florist	N	someone who grows and deals in flowers
favor	N	souvenir with a small gift given to a guest at



Learn English on your Terms

toast	<i>N</i>	a celebrity who receives much acclaim and attention
-------	----------	---

### Supplementary Vocabulary

unexpected	<i>A</i>	to be surprised by a given situation
nervous	<i>A</i>	to have anxiety
budget	<i>N</i>	to be financially observant
overwhelmed	<i>A</i>	to have a excess of emotions

## The Weekend - Going to the Beach (C0228)

A: Oh, George, what a beautiful day it is today! The sun is hot and there are just a few clouds scattered here and there! What a perfect day to be at the beach! The kids are going to have so much fun! And we'll be able to relax in the sun while they're playing.

B: It does seem like the perfect day! I'm glad we chose to get out of the city and enjoy the nice weather! This looks like the perfect spot! Ok kids, put on your sunscreen while your mom and I set up camp. Here, Mary, help me lay down these beach towels.

A: There we go. Can you help me with the umbrella? Perfect.

B: Ok kids, here's a beach ball and a Frisbee, a pail and a shovel. I want to see an impressive sandcastle by the time we leave. Don't stray too far. Wait! Leave your sandals here or put on your wet shoes.

A: And stay in the shallow area. I don't want to see you go any farther than that sandbar! It's too deep out there and we didn't bring your floaties.

B: You're back already? The water was too cold, huh? I'll tell you a secret. Do you see that small pool of water over there? It'll be warmer in there. Go see if you can find some seashells or catch some minnows.

A: What is that? A jellyfish? Jeremy, put that down right now! It could sting you!

B: Ah! Not on me! Ow!

### Key Vocabulary

scattered	A	something that is spread all over an area
here and there	P	in or to various places
spot	N	a particular space or area
set up	P	prepare
lay down	P	assume a reclining position
Frisbee	N	a light, plastic disk for playing

shovel	N	a hand tool for lifting loose material
sandcastle	N	a small model of a castle that is made of sand
stray	V	go in a direction that is away from a group
shallow	A	having little depth
floaty	N	life saving appliance in the ocean
sandbar	N	a raised area of sand with a top

### Supplementary Vocabulary

sun glasses	N	glasses which protect the eyes from the sun
sun tan	N	a darkening of the skin from long exposure to the sun
beach bum	N	a person who spends everyday at the beach



Learn English on your Terms

**sunburn**      *N*      a skin irritation caused by overexposure to the sun

**star fish**      *N*      star shaped fish found in the ocean

## Daily Life - Buying Men's Shoes (C0229)

Mom: Hi! I am looking for a pair of shoes for my son.

Salesgirl: Sure thing! Here we are! If you're looking for dress shoes, we have several different styles of Oxfords for boys. We also carry athletic shoes, hiking boots.

Mom: Oh Jacob, how about these sneakers?

Jacob: Mom? They've got Velcro.

Mom: Well, then how about these? What is this style called?

Salesgirl: They're tennis shoes. They're very popular with teens and young adults.

Jacob: Oooo, Mom, can I get these?

Mom: What are those?

Jacob: They're Chuck Taylor's! Everyone has them! Can I, please?

Mom: I don't know. Would they go with your clothes? The backs are really high, and the way the tongue just sticks up. They're almost like a boot. And the sole doesn't look like it would have a very good grip.

Jacob: They're only forty-five dollars! And they've got cool fluorescent orange shoelaces! Mom?

Mom: Ok, try them on.

Salesgirl: What size are your feet?

Mom: He is a size nine.

Salesgirl: We'll try a size forty-three on you first and see how that fits.

Mom: A what?

Salesgirl: They come in European sizes. He should be a size forty-three. I'll be right back.

## Key Vocabulary

dress shoe	N	a shoe used as a component of formal wear
tennis shoe	N	a canvas shoe with a pliable rubber sole
tongue	N	the flap of material under the laces of a shoe
grip	N	way of grasping and holding firmly
shoelaces	N	a long, thin material used for fastening a shoe
sole	N	the underside of footwear

## Supplementary Vocabulary

basketball sneakers	N	sneakers worn specifically to play basketball
cross trainers	N	shoes worn for running or other physical activities



Learn English on your Terms

arch supports	<i>N</i>	a pad used to give the feet more support
shoe salesmen	<i>N</i>	a person who sells shoes
construction boots	<i>N</i>	hard and durable boots worn for construction

## The Weekend - Gardening (C0230)

- A: I've decided to grow my own garden!
- B: What? You don't know the first thing about gardening!
- A: On the contrary, I have been reading a lot of books about the subject.
- B: Oh yeah? Tell me then, smarty pants, how will you go about setting up your garden?
- A: Well, first I need to buy some things, such as fertilizer, seeds and tools.
- B: What type of tools?
- A: You know, the basics. A rake, shovel, spade and a hoe.
- B: Right. Well it seems like you have all your bases covered . What's next?
- A: I'll till the soil and then sow the seeds. I'll then add some fertilizer and voila! Gardening all done!

B: Well, good luck with your garden, especially considering we are in the dry season and it won't rain for the next three months!

### Key Vocabulary

On the contrary	S	In opposition to what has been stated
set up	P	to make ready for use
rake	N	a hand implement consisting of a row of teeth
shovel	N	a tool with a long handle used for lifting and throwing
spade	N	a tool with a heavy metal blade used for digging
hoe	N	a garden tool that has a flat blade on a long handle
base covered	P	have all the things prepared

smarty pants	N	a person who tries to show he is so smart
till	V	prepare for growing plants
voila	N	something used when something is being presented

### Supplementary Vocabulary

sprinkler	N	a device attached to a water hose to spread water
pruner	N	a tool used to remove small branches from trees
hedges	N	a kind of shrub plant
garden hose	N	a long tube connected to a facet to disperse water
gardener	N	a person who tends to gardens

## Daily Life - Buying Women's Shoes (C0231)

- Mom: Hi, excuse me Miss? I'm looking for a dress shoe. My usual pair that I've had for years have finally been stretched out of shape. They don't provide any support anymore.
- Salesgirl: Sure, what kind of shoe are you looking for? We've got strappy sandals, sleek high heels, edgy pumps, or if you're looking for something a little more practical, we've got Mary Janes, ballerinas.
- Mom: Show me some classic high heels, please.
- Salesgirl: Ok, right this way. What color did you have in mind?
- Mom: Black. Classic.
- Salesgirl: Of course. We've got this style here that is very popular. Because it's an open-toe shoe, you can wear it any time of the year. They look great on everyone.

Mom: Umm. too shiny. And I wear pantyhose with my shoes so let's look for a closed-toe shoe.

Salesgirl: Ok, these are a very nice pair of leather shoes with a two-inch heel so they are very comfortable.

Mom: I don't like the pointed toes. Let me take a look at what else you have. Too high. That one looks like the back would cut into my heel. I have a high instep so I doubt that one will fit properly. I don't want bows. I find slingbacks very uncomfortable. Those might as well be stilettos. Too modern. Ah, finally, this is what I'm looking for.

Salesgirl: What size?

Mom: Seven-and-a-half.

Salesgirl: Here we are How does it fit?

Mom: Hmmm. not good. They're too tight. The length is right, but the shoe is too narrow and it's pinching my toes. And there'd be no room for my insoles. You know what? I don't think I have the patience for this today. They just don't make shoes like they used to. I'll come back another time.

Salesgirl: Have a nice day, Ma'am.

### Key Vocabulary

support	N	something that holds a person
strappy sandals	P	a shoe with a bottom part having straps
edgy pump	P	a low-cut low-heeled shoe
open-toe shoe	P	the shoe with the toes exposed
two-inch heel	P	length of the heel is 2 inches

pointed shoe	<i>P</i>	the shoe having a narrow top
pinch	<i>V</i>	squeeze between the thumb and a finger
insole	<i>N</i>	the inner sole of a shoe
cut into	<i>V</i>	tight and hurt the body with a sharp thing

### Supplementary Vocabulary

snug	<i>A</i>	fitting closely
loose	<i>A</i>	not fitting closely or tightly
the (next) size up	<i>P</i>	one size bigger
the (next) size down	<i>P</i>	one size smaller
break in	<i>P</i>	to wear or use in order to make comfortable

## Daily Life - Toys (C0232)

TV: Spongebob Squarepants will be right back after these brief messages! What's that on the horizon? A pirate ship! Raid villages and find buried treasure with this new Pirates Lego set. Build the ship and decide who rules the sea! Har!

A: Cool!

TV: The New PLAY-DOH Sparkling Brights Precious Gem Press! Make large colorful gems for you and your friends with five special molds! Comes with the new Sparkling Brights PLAY-DOH compound in four new colors! Treasure chest sold separately.

B: Wow! Mommy, can I get that for my birthday?

TV: Wolverine! Jean Grey!Rogue! And Professor X! Collect all four of these special-edition collectible X-Men action figures and decide the future of mutants in our world!

A: No way! I want Professor X !



TV: The new Collector's Edition Nursery Rhymes Porcelain Dolls! Little Bo Peep comes with her own sheep and staff! Her clothes are made with the finest fabrics and real Italian lace, and her face has been hand-painted by our finest artists. Only \$199.

A: Oooo! She's pretty! I've never had a porcelain doll before.

B: I doubt Mom and Dad would get you that for your birthday. She costs a pretty penny. Plus, you'd most likely break her.

TV: What is better than one board game ?Three board games in one! Enjoy playing Chess and Checkers on this side of the board. But if you're looking for some more fun, flip it and play the classic game of Sorry!

B: That's ingenious! Why hasn't anyone thought of that before?

TV: Now you can take Spongebob Squarepants wherever you go with the new Spongebob Squarepants Glow-in-the-Dark Yoyo! And now back to our show!

## Key Vocabulary

mold	N	a container used to give its shape to something
collectible	A	considered valuable by collectors
action figure	N	a posable plastic figurine of a character
Yoyo	N	a kind of toy
Spongebob Squarepants	N	an animated television series
Pirates Lego set	P	a toy set of Lego
set	N	a group of similar things that belong together
X-Men	N	a fictional superhero team
PLAY-DOH	N	a modeling compound used by children
Treasure chest	N	a chest filled with valuables

## Supplementary Vocabulary

jigsaw puzzle	N	irregularly cut pieces that form a picture when fitted together
plush toy	N	toy sewn from fabric stuffed with a material such as cotton
skipping rope / jump rope	N	rope with handles on each end swung around while someone jumps over it
building blocks	N	set of cube-shaped blocks used by chil- dren to make simple constructions
train set	N	toy consisting of small models of railroad trains and the track for them to run on



## Global View - Forex (C0233)

A: Hey John! I haven't seen you in ages! What's new? What have you been up to?

B: Pete! Nice to see you Well, on top the norm, you know, wife and kids and work, I've actually gotten into doing some trading.

A: Trading? You, big guy? What are you trading?

B: Currencies.

A: Currencies? As in Euros, Dollars, Pounds and Rupees?

B: It's called Forex. Foreign Exchange. The great thing about it is that I don't have to invest a huge amount. I put in a margin deposit and then I can buy and sell up to 100 times that much!

A: I don't understand. You're buying and selling money?

B: You got it! Just last night I made USD 150!

A: Last night?

B: Yeah! It's a 24 hour market! I had bought some RMB earlier at a low asking price but last night it appreciated drastically so I made a split second decision and sold all my RMB at an amazing bid! I've also done some trading with CHF and AUD and HKD. I've made some good profits but I've also suffered some losses. It depends on a lot of factors just like any other market. In total I've made about USD 500 in the past few months.

A: You're kidding! I'm on! Where do I sign up?

### Key Vocabulary

norm	N	something is usual or expected
Currency	N	the money that a country uses
margin deposit	P	the sum of money required to reinstate
drastically	R	taking effect rapidly
split second	A	very quickly; just a second

bid	N	an offer to pay a particular amount of money
-----	---	--

### Supplementary Vocabulary

depreciate	V	decrease in the value of a currency in response to market demands
spread	N	the difference between the bid and the ask for a given currency pair
OTC (over the counter) market	P	a market that has no central exchange so exchanges are done interbank between two parties
speculative	A	buying and selling in the hope of making a profit, rather than for some business-related need
base currency	N	the currency in which the investor buys or sells

## Daily Life - Going to the Doctor (C0234)

Doctor Good afternoon Chloe, I'm Doctor Evans.  
Evans: What seems to be the problem?

Chloe: Hi, Dr Evans. Thanks for seeing me on such short notice. When I woke up this morning I had a really sore throat and a really bad cough. I think I am coming down with the flu.

Doctor Ah I see, yes you do sound rather croaky.  
Evans: Well let's have a look, shall we? Could you please open your mouth and say "ah".

Chloe: "Ahhhhhhh"

Doctor Good, yes, your tonsils are a little swollen  
Evans: and red. How are your ears, blocked at all?

Chloe: A little actually. My sinuses are a little blocked up as well - I really feel terrible.

Doctor Evans: Ok Chloe, can you please breathe in and out slowly for me while I listen to your chest? You really are all bunged up, you don't sound too good at all. Ok I'm going to set you up with a bunch of antibiotics. You will need to take these orange pills twice a day and these blue pills every evening. You will also have to take this cough medicine three times a day after meals. Finally, I am giving you an inhaler to use every time you feel breathless... just to clear up your lungs!

Chloe: Whoa! So many drugs. ..... I hate swallowing pills. Am I able to go to work?

Doctor Evans: Absolutely not! You are highly contagious! You don't want to infect the rest of your co-workers do you? I recommend staying in bed for at least three days and drinking plenty of fluids so you don't get weak and dehydrated. You can catch up on all the latest tv shows and movies!

Chloe: Ok! Would you mind writing me a doctor's note for work, otherwise they may think I am faking it!

Doctor Ha-ha, sure not a problem! Here you are.  
Evans: Now off you go and away to bed. If you have  
any questions just give me a call! Feel bet-  
ter soon and take care.

Chloe: Thanks doc, bye!

### Key Vocabulary

swollen	A	some parts are bigger than others due to a certain
come down with	P	get sick
antibiotics	N	chemical substance that can kill a virus
contagious	A	having a sickness that other people can catch
a doctor's note	P	note from doctor explaining a patient's absence due to sickness
dehydrated	V	not having enough water in the body

breathless	A	unable to take enough air into your lungs
------------	---	---

### Supplementary Vocabulary

injection	N	a liquid injected into the body for medicinal purposes by use of a needle
waiting room	N	a room for people to wait before going in to see the doctor
stethoscope	N	instrument used for listening to sounds produced within the body, such as the heartbeat
otoscope	N	instrument for examining the interior of the ear, especially the eardrum, consisting essentially of a magnifying lens and a light
examining (exam) room	N	a small room where a physician may examine a patient with some privacy

## The Office - Interview Skills Part 1 - The Introduction (C0235)

- Mr. Parsons: Come in.
- Rebecca Carlyle: Mr Parsons ?
- Mr. Parsons: Ah, you must be Rebecca. Please do come in.
- Rebecca Carlyle: Thank you for making some time to see me Mr Parsons. It's a pleasure to meet you finally.
- Mr. Parsons: The pleasure's all mine Rebecca. Have a seat please. Now would you like any refreshments? Tea or coffee?
- Rebecca Carlyle: A coffee would be lovely thank you. Black, no sugar.
- Mr. Parsons: No problem. Sally can we have two coffees please One, no milk or sugar?
- Sally: Certainly Mr Parsons .

Mr. Parsons:

So Rebecca, I understand you had a first interview with Miss Childs last week.

Rebecca Carlyle:

Yes that's correct. She filled me in on the details of the job on the telephone.

Mr. Parsons:

Great. Well, I'm glad to say she recommended you for a 2nd interview, and here we are. Perhaps we can start by discussing your background and resume details a little?

Rebecca Carlyle:

Yes , of course.

### Key Vocabulary

refreshment	N	drinks
interview	N	a meeting at which people talk to each other
resume	N	a short document describing your education, work h

recommend	V	suggest
background	N	the experiences, knowledge, education of a person
make some time	P	manage to find time
It's a pleasure to	P	It's happy to
fill me in	V	give me more information

### Supplementary Vocabulary

introduction	N	formally introducing yourself to someone
business attire	N	formal business clothes (usually a suit and tie)
interviewer	N	the person giving the interview
interviewee	N	the person being interviewed



Learn English on your Terms

human  
resource  
depart-  
ment

N

the department in  
charge of hiring new  
employees

## Daily Life - Trying To Sleep (C0236)

Jill: Alex, what's up with you? You look dreadful!

Alex: Hey Jill, I don't know. I've been having trouble sleeping these past few weeks. I usually lie in bed for hours trying to get to sleep . I've tried stretching and different breathing techniques before going to bed . I've tried eating and not eating different foods. I've even tried counting sheep! And then when I finally get to sleep , I have these really disturbing nightmares, so I usually wake up in a panic and more tired than before I went to sleep .

Jill: Wow, maybe you should get that checked out. Maybe you're stressed?

C: Just take some sedatives! Works for me! Every so often having some melatonin on hand helps me when I have trouble sleeping . It works on all kinds of sleeping disorders . It's the stuff pilots use to regulate their sleeping patterns .

Jill: I heard of that. But does that apply to Alex's situation?

C: Ya sure, why not ? Sounds like he only has transient insomnia since it's a recent thing so taking melatonin do the trick.

Jill: But shouldn't he be looking into WHY it's been happening?

C: Well aren't you the little psychologist? Our buddy's having trouble sleeping , it's easy and curable. It's not something freakish like if he was a sleepwalker.

Alex: Well, there's that too.

### Key Vocabulary

go to P fall asleep  
sleep

sedative N a drug that calms or relaxes someone

nightmare N a dream that cause horror

sleeping pattern P the regular time of sleeping

do the trick	P	accomplish the desired task
sleeping disorder	P	people who have a medical disorder of the sleep
get to sleep	P	fall asleep

### Supplementary Vocabulary

sleeping pills	medication used to help you fall asleep
night terrors	severe nightmares
sleep apnea	a sleep disorder where the breathing is irregular
REM cycle	the sleeping cycle
sleep deprivation	to go without sleep for a long period of time

## Daily Life - Morning Routine (C0237)

Jacob:           Stephanie! Did you just get to school? But you were up and about when I left the dorm this morning! That was about an hour and a half ago. This happens all the time! Why do you always take so long to get ready the morning?

Stephanie:       It's a skill. What can I say? I don't know why, I just have a long routine.

Jacob:           Please explain because it makes no sense to me. How can a girl's routine be so complicated? You get up , you shower, you get dressed , you brush your teeth, you're out the door. Half an hour, tops.

Stephanie:

Jacob, you have the luxury of having a haircut that rarely needs styling. I don't. I have to set aside about an hour and a half to get ready in the mornings. Every day, I wake up and head straight for the shower. Every second day , I wash my hair. If it's a hair-washing day, I frequently need to wash my hair twice because it gets really oily. Then I usually put in a conditioner and have to rinse that out too. Because my hair is so long, I seldom manage to take a shower in under twenty minutes. Afterwards, I often put on a pot of coffee and get dressed while I wait for it to brew. I take a long time to get dressed in the morning. Every now and then I remember to choose my outfit the night before , but usually I do it in the morning. In all , getting dressed takes about half an hour , at which time my hair is now semi-dry so then I have to style my hair. From time to time I'll put my hair up, but oftentimes I blow-dry it straight. And then, because of the texture of my hair, I regularly have to flat-iron it to keep it from frizzing. That's another twenty minutes or so. After that, I have my daily makeup routine.

- Jacob: True, I hardly ever see you without your hair done and your makeup on, even when you show up to class in sweatpants. Tell me, how long does it take you to choose that outfit in the morning?
- Stephanie: Not funny.

### Key Vocabulary

up and about	P	out of bed and beginning to move around
set aside	P	to keep time for a particular purpose
frequently	R	often
seldom	R	almost never
at which time	P	whenever
from time to time	P	once in a while
oftentimes	R	frequently

makeup	N	cosmetics applied to improve your appearance
outfit	N	a set of clothes

### Supplementary Vocabulary

curling iron	N	a tool for making straight hair curly
face wash	N	a soap used to clean the face
mouth wash	N	a liquid used to clear germs in bad breath in the mouth
french press	N	a specific technique to make coffee
body wash	N	liquid soap used to clean the body

## The Office - Interview Skills Part 2 - Discussing Your Background (C0238)

Mr. Parsons: Now, Miss Childs passed on your resume to me and I've had the chance to look it over and I must say I'm quite impressed.

Rebecca: Thank you very much. I've tried to keep it short and clear. If there's any questions please feel free to ask me.

Mr. Parsons: Well yes, I do have a number of questions, but perhaps first you could give me a brief overview I'd like to get a little bit of an idea of your background.

Rebecca: yes of course. Well as you can see from the resume I'm up and grew up in Brooklyn, New York, although our family moved to London when I was quite young, at around rook.

Mr. Parsons: Ah I see, so you were actually educated in Europe?

Rebecca: yes precisely. Although I was born in the US, I would definitely call London home. But as you see I've actually spent a lot of my life moving from country to country. My Father was in the oil business before he retired so we also spent a number of years in Saudi Arabia too.

Mr. Parsons: Very interesting. So it seems you had quite an adventurous childhood.

Rebecca: Absolutely! We were never still for too long. But now I'm really looking to settle down.

Mr. Parsons: I see. Okay, well let's move on to discuss your education shall we?

Rebecca: Sure.

### Key Vocabulary

impress                      V                      cause someone to feel admiration

a brief overview              P                      a general description

**settle down** *P* to calm down

**pass on** *P* hand in

**feel free** *P* feel relaxed

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**concise** *A* to be short and clear

**world traveller** *N* a person who has traveled to many different countries

**cover page** *N* a page briefly describing the interviewee

**qualities** *N* certain positive characteristics a person has

**expatriate** *N* a person who leaves their home country to work in another country

## The Weekend - Adventure Sports (C0239)

A: Welcome to Adventure Tours . How may I help you?

B: I want to book a tour with adventure sports .

A: Excellent! Our company has more than ten years of experience in the adventure tourism and sports field . Let me show you some options. This is our most popular choice, our river guides will take you on a whitewater rafting trip followed by a ride in a hot air balloon !

B: I don't really think I'm ready to throw myself down a river full of jagged rocks in a rubber boat or go up in the air in a wicker basket held up by an over-size balloon. What else do you have?

A: Well, in that case, we can take you hang gliding with one of our experienced instructors. It's the closest you can get to flying.

B: What? You mean strap myself to a flimsy kite? No thank you! Next!

A: Mmm. ok. Well, why don't you tell me a little bit more about what you would like? We have everything from mountain biking, to rock climbing to street luge.

B: I'm thinking something exciting but. safer.

A: I have the perfect option, this package will take you on a hiking trip through the Himalayas for three days and afterwards there's a dog sledding journey!

B: That's more like it !

### Key Vocabulary

hot air balloon	P	a huge balloon risen up by hot air
in the field	P	in an area of work, study
jagged	A	having a sharp surface
oversize	A	larger than what is listed

in that case	P	if something said earlier is true
hang gliding	V	gliding in a hang glider
the closest thing you can get to	P	the easiest way, the most likely thing
mountain biking	P	ride a bicycle designed for riding in mountainous
rock climbing	P	the sport of scaling rock masses on mountain sides
street luge	P	the sport of descending a steep road
whitewater rafting	P	The sport of rafting down fast-flowing rivers

## Supplementary Vocabulary

sky diving	N	to jump out an airplane and parachute to the ground
------------	---	---

surfing	N	to ride a wave on a long wooden board
life insurance	N	insurance to protect your family from your untimely death
base jumping	N	jumping off a cliff and parachuting to the ground
bungee jumping	N	to jump off a ledge while attached to a rope



## Daily Life - Getting A Pet (C0240)

A: We have been over this a hundred times ! We are not getting a pet!

B: Why not? Come on! Just a cute little puppy. or a kitty!

A: Who is going to look after a dog or a cat?

B: I will! I'll feed it, bathe it and walk it every day! We can get a Labrador or a German Shepard !

A: What if we want to take a vacation ? Who will we leave it with? Plus, our apartment is too small for that breed of dog.

B: Ok. How about we get a cat or a ferret!

A: We're planning on having children soon, I don't think those animals are a good idea with a baby in the house.

B: Fine! Let's get a bird then! We can keep it in its cage and teach it to talk! A parrot would be awesome!

A: I'll tell you what, I can get you some hamsters and we'll take it from there .

B: Yay!

### Key Vocabulary

a hundred	P	many times
times		
look after	P	take care of; take responsibility for
bathe	V	to wash
breed	N	a particular kind of dog
take it from there	P	to begin with
awesome	A	extremely good

### Supplementary Vocabulary

dog leash	a rope used to lead a dog
-----------	---------------------------

**Veterinarian**

a doctor who specializes  
in treating animals

**kitty litter**

a substance which cats  
use as the bathroom

**bird cage**

a enclosure for pet birds

**collar**

a pet accessory usually  
used to identify pets



## The Office - Interview Skills 3 - Education Background (C0241)

Mr. Parsons: Now, if I look here I see that you completed a BA in English?

Rebecca: Yes, that's right. After graduating from high school in New York I attended York University in the UK. My major was English, and my minor was business studies . I completed my BA in 2004.

Mr. Parsons: Yes, I'm pleased to see that you also got a distinction.

Rebecca: Yes that's right. I've always enjoyed studying. My friends say I'm a bit of a bookworm, but my father always pushed us to succeed academically.

Mr. Parsons: Well, it looks like his encouragement paid off Rebecca. So how about extra-curricular activities at University



Rebecca: Well I've always been keen on writing, so I became the editor for the University student magazine, which I really loved. Also I volunteered for a group called Shelter, to help the homeless in York.

Mr. Parsons: What did that involve?

Rebecca: Providing warm meals and shelter, especially in the winter months . I found it really fulfilling to be part of that group .

Mr. Parsons: I'm sure. Okay, now let's move on to your work experience, shall we?

Rebecca: Yes, okay.

## Key Vocabulary

BA	B	bachelor of arts
major	N	the main subject studied in a college
minor	N	a second subject studied in a college

distinction	N	excellence
bookworm	N	a person who likes reading and studying
pay off	P	to effect positively
extra-curricular	A	extra activities
keen on	P	willing or eager to do something
volunteer	V	want to do something without being forced or pay
involve	V	contain
fulfilling	A	full of happiness and satisfaction
push sb.	V	to encourage or persuade (someone) to do something

## Supplementary Vocabulary

validictorian	a distinction given to the top graduate
---------------	---



Learn English on your Terms

admiration	to have respect for a person
over achiever	a person who strives to be the best
honors	a distinction given when graduating with high marks
class ring	a ring signifying the school and year graduated

## Global View - Learning The Piano (C0242)

Charles: Hi Cody, how did practicing go this week?

Cody: Well I had several tests and an oral presentation this week so I didn't get a chance to memorize the second page, but I think I mastered the tricky section.

Charles: Great! Warm up with some scales and arpeggios first. Good, good. This week, work on keeping the rhythm steady when you play the last part with the sixteenth note . Now let's take a look at this tricky section.

Cody: Charles? Before I start I was wondering if it was ok if I put a small crescendo in here and then decrescendo back to pianissimo again over here?

Charles: It might work. I'll have to hear it . Show me what you've done. Not bad , not bad .

Cody: It was horrible! I played play it much better at home!

- Charles: It's just nerves. Just play the right hand for now. One two three four five six, ta ti tri-ple-ti. Good, good. Don't forget the accidentals! The key signature says that note should be a G-sharp but now it's a G-natural. Now add the bass clef. You're going too fast. Remember the tempo for this piece is andante.
- Cody: Is that better?
- Charles: Yes, much better. Watch where you lift your foot off the pedal. What was that?
- Cody: Sorry! The stretch for that octave is always hard to make.
- Charles: That's ok, keep going, you're moving ahead by leaps and bounds . Watch your dynamics! Keep your elbows lifted. Remember to stroke the keys, don't pound. That's better! Remember that as a pianist or any other musician, your technique will be what separates you from the pack just as much or more so as your musicianship.

## Key Vocabulary

tricky	A	requiring skill or caution
scale	N	a series of musical notes
tempo	N	the speed at which a musical piece is played
by leaps and bounds	P	very quickly
musicianship	N	the skill of performing music
note	N	a specific musical tone
dynamics	N	changes in how loudly a piece of music is played
key	N	A button depressed with fingers to produce sounds

### Supplementary Vocabulary

hammer	N	a wooden piece which strikes the strings
--------	---	--

string	<i>N</i>	wires that when hit by the hammer produces sounds
plate	<i>N</i>	the iron frame which holds the strings in place
hitch pin	<i>N</i>	a metal screw that holds one end of the string
grand piano	<i>N</i>	a specific type of piano

## The Weekend - Talking to a Travel Agent (C0243)

A: Welcome to Perfect Getaway Tours . How can I help you?

B: I would like to plan a surprise getaway for me and my wife.

A: Very well, we have a couple of different options such as beaches, the wilderness, the countryside or even going to a spa for the weekend.

B: I think something in the countryside would be nice.

A: Perfect! This package includes round-trip flights to New Hampshire . A free airport pick- up is included. Our VIP limousine will pick you up and provide you with complimentary champagne and finger foods to soften the thirty-minute ride to the countryside.

B: Sounds good! What is the hotel that we will be staying at like?

A: That is the best part. Your hotel is actually an old country villa that has been restored and refurbished to accommodate a maximum of that is guests. You will enjoy an intimate and private time in this very spacious and warm N Included in the price is three meals a day, excluding beverages. You can choose to eat at the fabulous restaurant that offers a stunning view of the lush, green gardens. If you prefer, your own private butler can arrange your meal to be served in your room or outside on our terrace.

B: Wow! This sounds like something my wife would really enjoy! Are there any outdoor activities we can take part in ?

A: Of course! The hotel has a stable with beautiful stallions for a very romantic horseback ride along the country trail. You can also go fishing to the nearby lake or visit the local vineyard.

B: I'm sold ! I want to book this trip. I don't care what it costs! Money is no object !

### Key Vocabulary

package

N

a group of services

round-trip	A	travel both to the place and back again
complimentary	A	expressing a compliment
accommodate	V	to provide room for (someone)
restore	V	to return (something) to an original condition
be sold	P	be persuaded to recognize the worth of
getaway	N	A place appropriate for a vacation.

### Supplementary Vocabulary

itenerary	N	a written plan of events
hotel suite	N	a luxury room above a standard room
all inclusive	P	a term used for everything provided free of charge

first class	<i>N</i>	to travel in the luxury seating area
king sized bed	<i>N</i>	the largest bed one can request in a hotel

## The Office - Interview Skills 4 - Talking About Work Experience (C0244)

Mr. Parsons: Right Rebecca. Now I see that after graduating from University your first job was.....

Rebecca: For a local paper in York called the York Herald. Actually, I started with them as an intern in the beginning. I was really keen on getting some experience in the journalistic world, and this seemed like a good first step.

Mr. Parsons: Certainly. And after your internship

Rebecca: They seemed impressed, and offered me a position as a junior local news reporter. I ended up staying two years there actually. I was in charge of the sports news section of the newspaper. I really enjoyed it there, and it really helped me build my skills.

Mr. Parsons: Yes I see. But you decided to leave them in 2006 right

Rebecca: Yes, that's right. My husband and I moved to London, and so I managed to find a position with a National newspaper based in London

Mr. Parsons: The London Weekly right

Rebecca: Yes, in some ways it was a step down from my previous job but it did offer me much better prospects for the future.

### Key Vocabulary

end up                      *P*                      turned out or result in

in charge                      *P*                      be responsible for  
of

manage                      *V*                      be able to  
to

step                      *P*                      a decrease or reduction  
down    in size or amount

prospect                      *N*                      a mental picture of  
    something to come

### Supplementary Vocabulary

priority	<i>N</i>	to place importance over different objectives
career	<i>N</i>	the specific area of work a person pursues
quit	<i>V</i>	to stop doing an activity
unemployed	<i>A</i>	to not have a job
employable	<i>A</i>	the ability to be employed

## The Weekend - Getting A Subscription (C0245)

A: Good afternoon Ma'am, My name is Mike and I am selling subscriptions to all sorts of periodicals.

B: No thank you, I am not interested.

A: Please ma'am , if you could spare five minutes of your time, I am sure we could find something that interests you!

B: I wish I could, but I have to walk the dog and finish cooking so if you would excuse me.

A: We have a great variety of magazines all about cooking! This one for example, is a bi monthly publication with recipes from all over the world!

B: Wow, that would be kind of useful, do you have any other cooking magazines?

A: Sure do! This one is a quarterly publication, but each issue has over 200 color pages of recipes and also many home decorating ideas!

B: Wow, this is nice! Ok, sign me up for both publications.

A: You mentioned you have a dog, most pet owners sign up for this weekly newsletter that has information on dog care, pet shops and even pet sitters!

B: That is exactly what I needed! What else do you have?

A: Well, I also have....

### Key Vocabulary

subscription	N	a purchase by prepayment for goods or services
if you could spare	P	do you have, can you offer
quarterly	R	at three month intervals
issue	N	a final publication such as a magazine
pet sitter	N	person who takes care of pets in owner's absence

## Supplementary Vocabulary

cable tv	N	tv channels which are purchased for a monthly fee
internet service	N	service that provides internet access for a fee
gym membership	N	paid membership that provides access to the gym
Vogue	N	a magazine that is delivered monthly
NY Times	N	a newspaper printed daily



## Daily Life - At The Train Station (C0246)

A: Hi, I would like to purchase a one way ticket to Brussels please.

B: Certainly sir, this is our train schedule. We have an express train departing every morning and an overnight train that departs at nine pm.

A: How long does it take to get there?

B: About twelve hours. We currently have tickets available only for first class on the express train. If you'd like, you can choose a sleeper on the overnight train which is a bit less expensive.

A: Yeah, I think that is the best option. Do you serve food on the train? Twelve hours is such a long time!

B: Yes of course. There is a dining car towards the front of the train where they serve meals at all times. We do provide complimentary water and coffee for all of our passengers.

A: Great! I'll take it.

B: Here you are sir. Your train leaves from platform number nine at nine on the dot. Remember to be here at least thirty minutes before your scheduled departure time or else you might miss your train!

A: I understand. Thank you very much !

B: Have a great trip.

### Key Vocabulary

one way ticket	N	a ticket that allows you only to go to a certain destination
depart	V	to leave, start a voyage
platform	N	A flat elevated portion of ground
on the dot	P	on time, precisely at a certain time
scheduled departure time	P	planned at a specific time to leave

### Supplementary Vocabulary

round-trip ticket	<i>N</i>	a ticket to travel to and from your destination
coach	<i>N</i>	a less expensive travel seating option
hard-sleeper	<i>N</i>	a sleeping train car with less padding
soft-sleeper	<i>N</i>	a sleeping train car with more padding
train conductor	<i>N</i>	the person in charge of operating the train



## The Office - Interview Skills 5 - Discussing Reasons For Leaving Previous Position (C0247)

Mr. Parsons: Okay, now I'd like to find out more about your last job. I see you spent almost four years at the London Weekly , is that right?

Rebecca: Yes, that's right. To be honest, the first year was quite tough for me. I was really just treated more like an intern. I didn't have many responsibilities and I found it quite frustrating.

Mr. Parsons: So, what changed?

Rebecca: Well slowly but surely I proved myself, and the new editor liked me so he promoted me to features writer .

Mr. Parsons: Wow, a real step up!

Rebecca: Yes I was responsible for restaurant and food reviews mostly. I spent restaurant years in that position, but to be honest it wasn't an area of journalism I wanted to stay in long-term.

Mr. Parsons: I see, so why did you decide to leave finally?

Rebecca: I just felt that the paper couldn't offer me any new opportunities. I really needed a more challenging role to be honest.

### Key Vocabulary

frustrating	A	to cause feelings of discouragement or <del>bate</del> -ment
slowly but surely	P	happening gradually but inevitably or without fail
to prove oneself	P	to show to have the character or ability expected
long- term	A	covering a relatively long period of time
challenging	A	a test of one's abilities or resources in a demanding but stimulating undertaking

## Supplementary Vocabulary

unsatisfied	A	a feeling of unfulfillment
promote	V	to go up in rank or status(at your job)
trial pe- riod	N	to prove your worth(at your job)
food critic	N	a person who critiques food at restaurants
disinterested	A	to not have an interest in something



## Daily Life - Dinnerware (C0248)

A: Honey can you set the table?

B: Um, sure. What are we having for dinner? Do I need to put out anything in particular?

A: Well, make sure to put out the pepper and salt shakers. I don't know if your brother is coming tonight so set an extra place mat just in case.

B: Ok, should I use the fancy silverware?

A: Yeah go ahead, forks, spoons and knives. I roasted some meat so be sure to put out some steak knives as well.

B: I'll also set some cups and saucers for some coffee after dinner.

A: Honey? Have you seen our soup bowls?

B: They are in the cupboard where you keep the gravy boat and serving dishes. Just be careful because the wine glasses are also there.

A: Oops!

## Key Vocabulary

to set the table	P	prepare the table so as to sit down and eat
anything in particular	P	anything specific
silverware	N	eating utensils: fork, spoon, knife
to roast	V	to bake uncovered, esp. in an oven
serving dish	N	a dish used for serving food

## Supplementary Vocabulary

fork	N	a fork used specifically for eating salads
fine china	N	a term used for expensive dinnerware
spoon	N	spoon used specifically for eating soup



Learn English on your Terms

dinner party	<i>N</i>	inviting friends over for dinner
tea kettle	<i>N</i>	a pot used for boiling the water for tea



## The Weekend - Making A Sandwich (C0249)

A: Welcome to our show! Today, I am going to show you how to make the perfect mouthwatering sandwich! Are you ready? Let's get started !

A: Let's start with the basics :bread. Bread is an important ingredient here. You need to remember one thing -choose the bread according to the following criteria :freshness, crumb and color. If you want a closed sandwich I recommend you first toast your bread in a toaster or oven, or grill it slightly until it gets a light brown color.

A: Now that our bread is ready, let's talk about the ingredients ! Of course, each person's palate is different, but I'm going to give you a few tips that you'll be able to use when turning any sandwich into the perfect sandwich. I would strongly recommend you put fresh vegetables in your sandwich.

A: Do not undervalue them as they play a big role in forming the taste and will make the sandwich more refreshing and light. The best choices here are evident- cucumbers, tomatoes, onions, sweet pepper pepper or chilli, lettuce and, of course, herbs- you can't go wrong with them. As for aubergines, mushrooms and asparagus, I would recommend you first grill them slightly with a little touch of olive oil.

A: Last but not least, we have a wide variety of condiments that we can add to our perfect sandwich. We can be subtle and just add a touch of salt and pepper, or we can combine mustard sauce, mayonnaise, ketchup or even caviar to achieve a stronger flavor! It's always a good idea to cut your sandwich in triangles or manageable pieces to avoid all your ingredients falling out and staining your shirt!

A: That's all the time we have for today, but join us next time where we'll be going over how to make the perfect lasagna! Till next time!

### Key Vocabulary

to under-value	V	to put too low a value on
refreshing	A	to provide new vigor and energy by rest, food, etc.
a touch	N	a slight quantity or degree

**subtle**      A      so slight as to be difficult to detect or describe

**manageable**      A      that can be managed or controlled

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**panini**      N      originally an italian style sandwich made with a small loaf of bread

**deli**      N      a store where you can buy sandwich meats and bread

**cooking show**      N      a show which teaches people how to cook

**wheat bread**      N      a dark brown bread considered to be healthier to eat

**pickles**      N      a cucumber which has been fermented in a vinegar solution



## The Office - Interview Skills 6 - Describing Ones Strengths (C0250)

Mr. Parsons: Okay Rebecca. Now youyou've given me a good idea of your work and academic background, but what about you as a person? How would you describe your key strengths?

Rebecca: Well Mr. Parsons, as I mentioned before I'm someone who needs new challenges. I'm really focused and hard hard-working. I think my academic results prove this.

Mr. Parsons: Yes, true, but how about other personal qualities?

Hmmmmm, that's a tough question. But I would have to say my passion. I'm really passionate about journalism and passionate about my career.

Rebecca: Well I believe I'm a good team-player, but I can also work well independently. I'm very enthusiastic and , well I hope my colleagues would agree, I'm fun to work with.

Mr. Parsons: What would you say is your most positive quality?

Rebecca: Hmmmm, that's a tough question. But I would have to say my passion. I'm really passionate about journalism and passionate about my career.

### Key Vocabulary

strengths	N	a quality that makes someone effective or useful
focus	A	giving attention and effort to a specific task
hard-working	A	worked hard
prove	V	show the truth by some evidence
team	N	group of people who work together to achieve a com
player	N	person taking part in a sporting event

positive	A	good
passionate	A	have a lot of interest in or passion for a particu
passion	N	enthusiasm that one has when doing things

### Supplementary Vocabulary

over-confident	A	to have too much confidence to a fault
hobby	N	an activity done for pure enjoyment
outgoing	A	a person who is easy to get along with
co-workers	N	the people who work with you
goal-oriented	A	a person who actively pursues ways to better themselves



## The Weekend - Buying Makeup (C0251)

A: I'm hungry, let's go grab a bite to eat.

B: Yeah me too. Oh! Can we stop at the shop really fast? I lost my makeup bag at the airport and I want to pick up a few things.

A: Will you take long?

B: No! Five minutes I promise!

A: Come on! We have been here for almost an hour! I thought you said you were only going to get a few things! How long does it take you to pick out a lipstick and some nail polish!

B: Are you crazy! You have no idea what you are talking about! Just for my eyes I have to get eyeliner, an eyelash curler, eye shadow, an eyebrow pencil and mascara. Then I need to get foundation, liquid foundation.

A: Whoa whoa whoa! Are you nuts? How much is all this going to cost? I'm looking at the price at each one of these little things and it's outrageous! This is basically a crayon!

B: What about you? You spend as much or more money on your razors, after shave, cologne and gel! Not to mention how much you spend on clothes and...

A: Fine! Get the stupid thirty dollar crayon!

### Key Vocabulary

to grab a bite	P	to quickly get something to eat
mascara	N	a cosmetic applied to thicken, lengthen, and darken the eyelashes
eye shadow	N	a cosmetic coloring material applied to the eyelid
outrageous	A	passing reasonable bounds; intolerable or shocking
basically	R	in a basic way; fundamentally or essentially
to grab a bite	P	to quickly get something to eat

## Supplementary Vocabulary

lip gloss	N	a glossy lip balm for women
lip liner	N	a pencil used especially to accentuate the lips
face mask	N	a facial cleanser when dry creates a mask
understate	V	to misjudge the statement made as being less
naive	A	to have little experience or knowledge toward a given topic

## Global View - Contraceptives (C0252)

A: Alright, settle down everyone. As part of this school's curriculum we'll be covering sex ed this week.

A: Now I want everyone to take this class seriously, sexual education is very important and I want you to ask as many questions as you can think of. Remember, there are no stupid questions here.

B: Miss Carlton? What exactly is sexual education? Are you going to teach us like Kama sutra stuff like that?

A: No Jason, that's not exactly what sex ed is. Basically, we will talk about sexually transmitted diseases, contraceptives and how the male and female bodies work.

B: My older sister is in college and she takes what she and her friends call the pill. I never really understood what that is, but I know it has to do with sex or something.

A: Good point Jason! This will be the topic of our first class, contraceptives. As you mentioned, the pill is one of the many that exist. The birth control pill is taken daily by a woman in order to prevent unwanted pregnancy, but it does not protect her from contracting STD's from an infected person. Another popular method is using condoms. This is probably the best method if you have sex, since it not only prevents a woman from getting pregnant but also protects both from STD's. Yes Jason?

B: What are condoms made out of? How exactly is it that a woman gets pregnant?

A: Condoms are usually made out of an elastic material called Latex. As for your other question, that's a whole new class.

### Key Vocabulary

curriculum	N	the aggregate of courses of study given in a school, college, university, etc.
contraceptive	N	device, drug, or chemical agent that prevents conception

condom	N	a thin sheath worn over the penis during sex
to prevent	V	to stop from happening
to contract	V	to get or acquire, as by exposure to something contagious

### Supplementary Vocabulary

72 hour pill	N	a pill taken immediately or within 72 hours of having unprotected sex
abortion	N	the termination of a pregnancy
planned parent-hood	N	a clinic in America which deals with sexually active adults
syphilis	N	one form of a sexually transmitted disease
penicillium	N	an anti-biotic used to treat syphilis

## The Office - Interview Skills 7 - Describing Ones Weaknesses (C0253)

Mr Parsons: Okay Rebecca, well I think you've given me a clear impression of your positive qualities, but let's talk a little bit about your weaknesses.

Rebecca: Okay, well it's always more difficult to describe them isn't it?

Mr Parsons: Definitely, but if you had to pinpoint one weakness what would it be?

Rebecca: Well as I mentioned before, I do tend to get frustrated if I don't see progress in my work or career. I suppose I'm quite a restless character. My father always taught me to be a high achiever so.

Mr Parsons: So would you say if things don't go your way at work it could easily get you down?

Rebecca: Well, in a way yes. But I must say that even if I'm not completely happy in my work I always give 110% I would never shirk my responsibilities. I suppose sometimes I expect too much too soon.

Mr Parsons: Well, you know journalism is a highly competitive world, so you do need to keep pushing yourself it's true. Okay well let's move on to talk about the job position here shall we?

Rebecca: Yes please.

### Key Vocabulary

weakness	N	a personal defect or failing
to pin-point	V	to locate or describe exactly or precisely
go someone's way	P	proceed according to one's plans or wishes

get someone down	P	to exhaust, discourage, or depress someone
to shirk	V	to avoid or neglect
impression	N	the feelings one has after a specific event
frustrated	A	upset

### Supplementary Vocabulary

honest	A	to tell the truth
workaholic	N	a person who is obsessed with their work
professional	N	to still behave accordingly even if unhappy
over-achiever	N	to strive to be the best
temper tantrum	N	to throw a fit if things do not go your way

## The Weekend - Making Breakfast (C0254)

A: Smells good! What's for breakfast?

B: Well, since we are getting up so late, I decided to make a big breakfast!

A: Nice! Brunch!

B: Kind of, so I made scrambled and soft boiled eggs, some french toast and buttermilk pancakes!

A: Wow! You really went all out! Did you make any coffee?

B: Yeah, just the way you like it! I also put out some cereal and muesli if you feel like having something more light.

A: Looks good! I'll squeeze us some fresh orange juice.

B: Get the jam and butter while you are in there! Oh! And don't forget the syrup!

## Key Vocabulary

brunch	<i>N</i>	a meal that serves as both breakfast and lunch
kind of	<i>P</i>	to some extent; somewhat; rather; sort of
pancake	<i>N</i>	a thin, flat cake of batter fried on both sides
to go all out	<i>P</i>	with maximum effort; using all one's resources
jam	<i>N</i>	a preserve of whole fruit, slightly crushed, boiled with sugar

### Supplementary Vocabulary

oatmeal	<i>N</i>	a meal made from oats softened by boiling water
bacon	<i>N</i>	a strip of fat and meat usually made from pork
Cap'n Crunch	<i>N</i>	a breakfast cereal brand in America



Learn English on your Terms

waffles	N	a pancake like breakfast made in squares rather than circles
eggs benedict	N	a poached egg on half of a english muffin with a hollandaise sauce

## Global View - The Miracle Of Life (C0255)

A: Continuing with our class, today we are going to study briefly the miracle of life. Many of you may think you already know how babies come to be, but I am sure that some of the things that we will be talking about today may surprise you. Billy can you turn on the projector please? Thanks. Ok, does anyone know what this is?

B: Looks like a goat head to me!

A: Nice try, but this is a woman's womb which contains her uterus and ovaries. The ovaries are packed with eggs and each month during the middle of the menstrual cycle, the ripest one will be sucked up by one of the fallopian tubes. This is called ovulation and the exact time of ovulation depends on the length of your cycle. In an average 28 day cycle, ovulation will most likely happen between the 12th and 15th days, counting day 1 as the first day of your last period.

B: That's amazing! So each month, the woman produces these eggs and then waits for them to be fertilized?

A: Actually, every woman is already born with over four hundred thousand eggs! Some will start dying off immediately and others released during her fertile period.

B: What about the guys? I know they produce sperm and stuff.

A: That's right! The man's body has a tiny factory that produces sperm twenty four hours a day! Each ejaculation will release about a hundred million sperm so the factory is always pretty busy. The sole purpose of a sperm's life is to fertilize the woman's egg.

B: So, then we basically need to put one-and-one together so we can have babies right?

A: Yes, the man will have an orgasm during intercourse and ejaculate sperm and semen. Now this is where the race begins and all those millions of sperm will race and swim from the cervix, through the uterus to the fallopian tubes. This could take anywhere from forty five minutes to twelve hours! Not all of them make it, since some go the wrong way and get lost or simply die. Many will actually reach the egg but only one will penetrate it and fertilize it. Once this happens, the egg instantly changes and creates a protective shield once the sperm is safely inside.

B: And then? That's it?

A: Well, the egg will be fertilized within about 24 hours of its release. The genetic material from the sperm combines with the genetic material in the egg to create a new cell that will rapidly start dividing. The woman is not actually pregnant until that bundle of new cells, known as the embryo, travels the rest of the way down the fallopian tube and attaches itself to the wall of her uterus. Any other questions? Then let's move on.

### Key Vocabulary

womb

N

the uterus of the human female

ovulation	<i>N</i>	the discharge of a mature ovum from the ovary
ejaculation	<i>N</i>	the discharge of semen by the male reproductive organs
embryo	<i>N</i>	in humans, the young in the early stages of development within the womb
wall	<i>N</i>	the outermost layer defining the physical limits of an object

### Supplementary Vocabulary

urethra	<i>N</i>	the part of the male anatomy which transports semen
vas deferens	<i>N</i>	the specific tube which semen travel through
scrotum	<i>N</i>	a pouch which holds the testes



Learn English on your Terms

pre men-              *N*              a disorder during a woman's menstrual cycle characterized by depression and stomach cramps

strual

syn-

drome

vagina              *N*              the female reproductive organ

## The Office - Interview Skills 8 - Discussing Salary and Benefits (C0256)

Mr. Parsons: Okay, well I'm sure you have a number of questions to ask me regarding the position.

Rebecca: Yes, well Miss Childs did give me an overview of the position over the phone, but there were some details I'd like to clarify.

Mr. Parsons: Well feel free to ask me anything, and I'll try to fill in the details.

Rebecca: Could I first ask about the remuneration package ?

Mr. Parsons: Yes of course. That's quite an important point isn't it? As a junior sub editor we offer a starting salary of 150,000 HK dollars per annum. This doesn't include a generous housing allowance also.

Rebecca: I understand. And are there other bonuses included?

Mr. Parsons: Well apart from full health insurance we do offer a company staff bonus scheme linked to readership numbers. But we could go through all the details of that at a later date.

Rebecca: Well Mr. Parsons, I am flexible when it comes to salary. The opportunity to work in Hong Kong for you is the most important thing for me.

Mr. Parsons: Excellent. Well, what other questions do you have Rebecca?

### Key Vocabulary

remuneration      *N*      money and benefits given to someone for the work  
package

per      *an-*      *P*      each year  
num

housing      *A*      money that a company provides for rent of a al- house  
lowance

flexible	A	able to change or to do different things
go through	V	to study or look at (something) in a careful way

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Gross	A	Overall sum excluding tax and any deductions
Net	A	Free from all charges or deductions
Income Tax	N	A tax on the amount of money you earn
Stock Options	P	A benefit offered by a company to purchase stock for a fixed price
Bonus	N	An additional payment or reward given for good work or performance

## Global View - The World Cup (C0257)

A: What are you doing?

B: What am I doing? What am I doing? Don't you know what day it is?

A: Ummm. no.

B: It's only the day when the world's biggest sporting event is kicking off.

A: What?

B: The World Cup! The first match is today! It's Mexico vs. South Africa! It's going to be a really good match! Both teams have a very strong offense and have skilled players. I think that South Africa will probably dominate the first half since they are the host country, and all.

A: I have no idea what you're talking about. The only sporting event we watch at home is the Super Bowl.

B: This is bigger than the Super Bowl, man! Teams from 32 countries compete against each other every four years and fight to win that trophy. They first start in a group stage with bigger groups, each group having 4 teams. The top 2 teams pass on to an elimination stage before going on to the quarterfinals and semifinals.

A: Sounds interesting, but soccer doesn't really appeal to me.

B: Are you kidding? Over seven hundred million people watched the final match of the World Cup! It's a very exciting and nerve wracking sport! Each nation is cheering on their team, hoping they will become the next champion. So far Brazil is the team with the most titles under their belt; they're really good!

A: All I know about soccer is that you can't use your hands and that players are always falling down, trying to get a free kick or penalty kick. It seems like a sissy sport to me!

B: Whatever dude, I'm going to go watch the opening match.

## Key Vocabulary

to kick off	V	to officially begin something
stage	N	a step in a process
sissy	A	something only appropriate for girls or women
match	N	game
host	A	one who provides services, etc as for a convention

### Supplementary Vocabulary

rival	N	a person or team who above everyone else attempts to win against you
disinterest	A	to not have interest in something
competition	N	a match between two teams or persons
oblivious	A	to be unaware



Learn English on your Terms

qualify

v

to show an ability to  
progress in a competi-  
tion



## Daily Life - You're Grounded! (C0258)

A: Do you know what time it is?

B: Um. Ten?

A: Get in this door young man. It's midnight, you are two hours past curfew.

B: I know, but it wasn't my fault! I told Jennifer she had to drop me off before ten, but she wouldn't leave the party!

A: I don't care! You are grounded for life mister!

B: Mom! That is so unfair!

A: You know the rules and you broke them. No allowance and no TV for a week. I usually never ground you but this time I have to put my foot down!

B: What! For being a couple of hours late? You have to be kidding!

A: I don't want to hear it! Now go to your room!

## Key Vocabulary

curfew	N	order requiring one to be indoors at a certain time
allowance	N	money given on a regular basis for personal use
ground	V	to restrict one's activities, esp. of a child
drop one off	P	to unload someone as from a car, ship etc.

## Supplementary Vocabulary

furious	A	overly angry or upset
punish	V	to be reprimanded
unexcusable	A	have no reason or excuse
unreliable	A	a person who cannot be trusted to do something
dissappointed	A	to be angry or sad when an expectation is not met



## The Office - Interview Skills 9 - Asking For Information About The Position (C0259)

Rebecca: Could you tell me a little about the organization? For example, how big is your workforce here?

Mr. Parsons: Well in total we have around 150 employees based in Hong Kong with another 400 in our head office in Beijing. The newsdesk staff in Hong Kong comprises around 80 staff.

Rebecca: I see. And how about the working hours?

Mr. Parsons: Well, as you know Rebecca, in journalism work hours are not exactly 9-5. You could be on call at any time. We do have to work very unsociable hours at times.

Rebecca: Well I am used to that Mr. Parsons, so that's not really a shock for me.

Mr. Parsons: Good, as long as you understand that.

Rebecca: And when do you need to fill the vacancy, Mr. Parsons?

Mr. Parsons: Yesterday! But no, we are hoping to start from the beginning of next month.

Rebecca: That sounds ideal.

### Key Vocabulary

how about	P	what do you think
staff	N	employees
used to	P	accustomed or habituated to
on call	P	to be available to work at any time
nine to five	P	9AM–5PM

### Supplementary Vocabulary

overtime	N	to work more than your normal working schedule
----------	---	--

policy	<i>N</i>	a set of rules or procedures in a company
dress code	<i>N</i>	rules regarding how one should dress
pay slip	<i>N</i>	a receipt with information about your salary, deductions and taxes.
HR	<i>N</i>	Human Resources

## The Weekend - Guns (C0260)

- A: Hey Nick, what are you up to?
- B: Not much, just heading over to the shooting range. You wanna come?
- A: Seriously? You mean to fire a real weapon? I don't know man.
- B: Yeah it will be fun! I have a 9mm pistol that is really easy to shoot. I also have a revolver that's really fun too! They have big targets at the range that we could use to practice and improve your aim.
- A: Yeah that would be cool! Maybe I can also have a try at other weapons like a machine gun or a shotgun! Maybe even a rocket launcher or an anti tank missile! Or what about a flame thrower!



B: Whoa, take it easy there Rambo. Don't get carried away. These weapons are not toys, and you must first learn how to handle them properly. There are basic rules that you must abide by in order to be safe. For example, never handle a weapon that you haven't inspected yourself. Always make sure there isn't anything in the chamber, and never put your finger on the trigger unless you are ready to shoot!

A: Wow, I didn't know! It always looks so cool and easy in the movies!

B: The reality is different you know, running and firing a weapon is a lot harder than in the movies! So are you ready?

A: Let's do it!

## Key Vocabulary

shooting range      N      a specified place to practice shooting

target      N      object to be aimed at in shooting practice

revolver	<i>N</i>	a small gun with a container for bullets
inspect	<i>V</i>	to look at (something) carefully

### Supplementary Vocabulary

rifle	<i>N</i>	a shoulder firearm with spiral grooves cut in the inner surface of the gun barrel
scope	<i>N</i>	instrument on a gun for viewing and aiming at the target
magazine	<i>N</i>	a metal receptacle for a number of cartridges, inserted into certain types of automatic weapons
round	<i>N</i>	ammunition for a single shot
barrel	<i>N</i>	the metal, cylindrical part of a firearm through which the bullet travels



## Daily Life - Describing Someone's Face (C0261)

A: Let's play a game!

B: Ok! How about Scrabble?

A: No no, a friend of mine taught me this really fun game. I'm going to describe someone's face, and you guess who it is!

B: Ok!

A: Let's see. He has a roman nose, bushy eyebrows and dimples!

B: Our cousin Pete! My turn! She has a pointy nose, sunken eyes and a mole on her chin!

A: Aunt Rose! That mole is so huge! Ok, my turn. He has a crooked nose and full lips. He has quite a few freckles and an oval face. Oh, he is also bald!

B: Your future husband!

A: Not funny.

## Key Vocabulary

dimple	N	a small natural indentation in the flesh
mole	N	a small, dark brown spot on a person's skin
freckle	N	a small, brownish spot on someone's skin
oval	N	having the shape of an egg

## Supplementary Vocabulary

cheeks	N	the fleshy side of the face
nostrils	N	the holes in the nose that allow the pass of air
forehead	N	a part of the face above the eyes
eyelash	N	the hair on the eyelid that protects the eye
chin	N	the lower portion of the face including the jaw



## The Office - Interview Skills 10 - Concluding The Interview (C0262)

Mr Parsons: Well Rebecca, is there anything else you need to know for now?

Rebecca: I don't think so Mr. Parsons. I think you have covered all the main points for me.

Mr Parsons: Okay well listen, here is my business card with my mobile number. If any other questions spring to mind don't hesitate to contact me. Of course you can also call Miss Childs too.

Rebecca: Great. Ermm, when can I expect to hear from you?

Mr Parsons: Well, we are finishing the shortlist interviews tomorrow, so we will certainly have a decision made by early next week. Miss Childs will call you to discuss more on Monday or Tuesday. How does that sound?

Rebecca: That sounds perfect. Thank you very much for taking the time to speak to me Mr. Parsons.

Mr Parsons: The pleasure's all mine Rebecca.

Rebecca: I hope to hear from you very soon.

Mr Parsons: Absolutely. Thanks for coming Rebecca. Goodbye.

## Key Vocabulary

spring to mind	P	be remembered; comes to mind
hesitate	V	to stop before you do something
expect	V	think something will probably happen
shortlist	N	list of people or items most likely to be chosen
How does that sound?	P	Does that seem good to you?

## Supplementary Vocabulary

you can reach me by	<i>P</i>	you can get in contact with me by (method of communication)
round	<i>N</i>	one interview in a series of interviews that a candidate has to go through
group interview	<i>N</i>	an interview involving more than one candidate in which the candidates have to work together
status	<i>N</i>	acceptance or rejection (of an application)
contract	<i>N</i>	an agreement between two or more parties, especially one that is written and enforceable by law

## Global View - Nationalities (C0263)

A: Hey! How was your first day of class? I'm in level two and I'm loving my class this semester! It's great being in a class of international students!

B: Mine was ok, except that no one in my class speaks English. I guess it will force me to converse in Chinese more in class so at least I should improve a lot this semester.

A: That's both fortunate and unfortunate. It's the United Nations in my class! We have people from all over the world! There are three Germans, a Pole, a Scottish, two French, an American, a Brazilian, a Chilean, a New Zealander, though he prefers to call himself a Kiwi. Who else do we have? Oh, we also have a Moroccan, a Togolese, a Pakistani, and two Indonesians!

B: That's quite the array of nationalities. Everyone in my class is from Asia, except me. There are a few South Koreans, several Japanese, Malaysian, Thai, Singaporean, Filipino, Kazakhstani, and one Russian.

A: Well, I think you're pretty lucky actually. You'll have the opportunity to learn so much about Asian culture.

B: I guess so, but I think it's going to be hard to relate to my classmates, especially with the language barrier. I think I might change classes.

A: Don't! Stay the course! Your spoken Chinese will be eternally grateful. I bet you it will even surpass mine with all that practice.

B: I highly doubt it. Your girlfriend is Chinese.

A: Well, there is that, yes.

### Key Vocabulary

United Nations	N	an international political organization
array	N	a large group or quantity of people or things
opportunity	N	chance
language barrier	N	trouble communicating because speak different languages

**stay the course** *P* remain or persevere to the end

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Dutch	<i>A</i>	relating to the people of Netherlands
Finn	<i>N</i>	A person from Finland
Dane	<i>N</i>	A person from Denmark
naturalize	<i>V</i>	process by which a person becomes a citizen of another country
ethnic	<i>A</i>	relating to groups of people that have common racial, tribal or religious traits



## Daily Life - Toothache (C0264)

A: What seems to be the problem?

B: I have a really bad toothache! My cheek is swollen and I can't eat anything.

A: Let's have a look. Hmm. This doesn't look too good. I think we may have to pull out your wisdom tooth. It's pressing against your molars and that's one of the reasons you are experiencing so much pain.

B: When you pull my tooth will you also have to extract the nerve and the root?

A: First we will take some x-rays and see what we're dealing with. I also noticed a small cavity up front here, so you are going to need a filling.

B: I guess that's what I get for not flossing or brushing my teeth three times a day.

A: It could be that, or maybe you are eating too many sweets. In any case, I'll administer anesthetic and you won't feel a thing!

## Key Vocabulary

swollen	A	increase in size with liquid or internal pressure
wisdom tooth	N	one of four rearmost molars on each side of both jaws
to experience	V	have the experience of; undergo; feel
that is what one gets for	P	that is what one deserves for
to brush	V	to clean with a brush
to administer	V	to give or apply as a remedy or relief

### Supplementary Vocabulary

fluoride	N	a mouthwash given by the dentist that contains fluoride
----------	---	---

root canal	<i>N</i>	a dental operation to save a tooth by removing the diseased contents from the canal of the root of the tooth and filling it with a protective substance
rinse your mouth	<i>P</i>	put water in one's mouth, swish it around and spit it back out
gums	<i>N</i>	the firm, fleshy tissue that covers the inside of the jaws and that surrounds the bases of the teeth
molar	<i>N</i>	a type of tooth at the back of the mouth with a rounded or flattened surface for grinding food

## The Weekend - Pest Control (C0265)

A: Hi, did you call for an exterminator?

B: Yes! Thank goodness you're here. These bugs are driving us crazy!

A: What sort of pest are we dealing with?

B: We just bought this house and it is infected with just about everything. We have termites in the wood, cockroaches all over the place, and last night I saw a huge rat out in the backyard!

A: Well, there's nothing we can't handle. I'll spray the floorboards and walls to get rid of the cockroaches, but the termites will be harder to get rid of. We will have to cover the entire house and fumigate it. Unfortunately that means you will have to find a place to stay for the next three days.

B: No problem, just get rid of the bugs!

### Key Vocabulary

exterminator N

a professional who kills pests

pest	<i>N</i>	an annoying and harmful insect or animal
fumigate	<i>V</i>	to spray with smoke or other chemicals
can't handle	<i>V</i>	not be able to deal with
just	<i>R</i>	simply

### Supplementary Vocabulary

pesticide	<i>N</i>	strong chemical used to kill bugs and pests
flea	<i>N</i>	a small insect that is usually found in hairy animals like cats and dogs
mouse trap	<i>N</i>	device used to catch or kill mice
fly swatter	<i>N</i>	a hand-held device for swatting flies and other insects



Learn English on your Terms

roach  
motel

*N*

small device where  
cockroaches can enter  
and eat poisoned food

## Daily Life - Weather Report (C0266)

A: Those are today's top stories. Now let's go to John for the weather. John, what does the forecast look like for our weekend travelers?

B: I'm afraid we're in for a rough weekend, Mark. There is a storm system moving through the East Coast. It will be drizzling all day today, and there's a 60 percent chance of thunderstorms this evening. It will be warm and humid all weekend. In the Midwest, expect strong winds and a low of around 40 degrees.

A: That's pretty chilly for the summer! Will it rain on Saturday?

B: Unfortunately, yes. It will be clear early Saturday morning but there is a high chance of showers and thunderstorms later in the day. There is a severe thunderstorm warning for some parts of the Southeast. Folks in those areas might see some hail and flooding, especially in areas that have been experiencing record high rainfalls.

A: That certainly sounds like a dreary Saturday.

B: It gets better on Sunday, though. The storm systems move east and the skies will clear up at night. It will still be rather cool, with highs in the low 50s. The West Coast will be experiencing some unusually chilly weather, but at least the sun will come out. I advise weekend travelers to be careful, especially while driving. Back to you, Mark.

A: Thanks John, and there you have it! Looks like it's a weekend to stay at home!

### Key Vocabulary

afraid	A	scared
drizzle	V	a light fall of rain
thunderstorm	N	fall of rain accompanied by lightning and thunder
chance	N	probability
hail	N	rain that is frozen into chunks of ice

## Supplementary Vocabulary

tornado	N	a violent, rotating column of air
hurricane	N	a powerful, spiraling storm that brings heavy winds and rain
blizzard	N	a severe storm condition characterized by low temperatures, strong winds, and heavy snow.
blackout	N	Loss of lighting or communication. Power outage
heatwave	N	a prolonged period of excessively hot weather, which may be accompanied by high humidity

## Daily Life - Making A Bank Transfer (C0267)

A: Good Morning welcome to Bank of the USA. How may I help you today?

B: Hi I need to transfer some money to another account. It's urgent.

A: Okay, have you made a wire transfer at our bank before ?

B: No. I've never made a transfer before.

A: It's alright, I will take you through the procedure. Are you transferring funds to a company or an individual account?

B: A company account. I need to pay a bill.

A: Okay, I'll need the name of the company and their bank routing number as well as their bank's address and phone number.

B: I have all the information in this folder.

A: Well You've come prepared . You have all the necessary materials so we can go ahead and make the transfer right now. It's a simple transaction, and we can process it today.

B: Oh, that's such a relief. I didn't want the payment to be overdue. Thank you so much .

A: It's my pleasure.

### Key Vocabulary

urgent	A	important, needing immediate attention
take one through	P	guide someone along the process
procedure	N	a series of actions
transaction	N	an occurrence in which money is transferred from one account to another
overdue	A	not paid at an expected or required time, missing the deadline

## Supplementary Vocabulary

vault	N	a large solid steel box used to keep money or valuables
ATM	N	Automatic Teller Machine
Letter of Credit	N	a trade document used primarily in trade finance, which usually provides an irrevocable payment undertaking.
travelers cheque	N	a preprinted, fixed-amount cheque designed to allow the person signing it to make an unconditional payment to someone else
withdrawal	N	removal from a place of deposit or investment

## The Office - Purchasing Manager (C0268)

A: Good morning, Angela, how have you been lately?

B: Morning, Michael. I've been very busy lately. One of our other vendors is going out of business and I've been searching for a suitable replacement.

A: Well, rest assured that you can count on us to be here for the long run sit down. Coffee?

B: No, thanks. I've been trying to cut down on the caffeine .

A: Haha, I could never do that. I'd be a zombie if I didn't have my morning coffee fix. Let's get down to business then.

B: Yes. I've come to talk with you about ordering the eight megapixel cameras for our new MePhone. The demand for phone cameras is growing, and Pear has been falling behind in the market.

A: That's great! I'm glad to hear that Pear has finally jumped on the bandwagon. Right now our contract is for the five megapixel cameras. Is Pear still interested in having those?

B: No, we're changing all the cameras to eight megapixels. We were hoping that by making your company our sole supplier for cameras we could negotiate a better deal.

A: Surely. Let's get started by drafting a new contract.

### Key Vocabulary

suitable	A	having the right qualities
assured	V	to be sure, certain
long run	P	phrase used to express a long period of time.
contract	N	a formal written agreement between two or more people
negotiate	V	to reach an agreement on money, terms, etc
sole	N	unique. One and only

supplier	<i>N</i>	person or company who sells you goods
the long run	<i>P</i>	a long period of time

### Supplementary Vocabulary

lead time	<i>N</i>	time needed to ship or manufacture goods
payment terms	<i>N</i>	terms or conditions for payment
backorder	<i>N</i>	order which cannot be taken or filled now
wholesale	<i>N</i>	sale of goods and services to retailers
buyer	<i>N</i>	Professional purchaser specializing in a specific group of materials, goods, or services

## The Office - Marketing Plan (C0269)

A: Okay everyone, let's begin. I called you here today to evaluate our marketing strategy during this recession. I wanted to re-emphasize our corporate mission of Aiming to give our customers the best coffee and service in a clean and welcoming atmosphere.

B: Several other shops have reduced the prices for their coffees and are drawing in more customers. Why aren't we doing the same thing?

A: I know that recent sales have been slow, but we are not going to reduce our prices to the level of our competitors. We offer a superior product and our focus is on long-term growth rather than short-term sales. If we lower our prices, we run the risk of devaluing our product.

B: Customers don't care about the coffee anymore. They only care about the price.



A: I disagree. Highly discerning customers know that our coffee is far better than the coffee you buy at the other places. Our coffee beans are artisan roasted and we use state-of-the-art equipment to brew our coffees. When you compare the coffees side-by-side our coffee wins the taste test every time. We have never sought to appeal to the mass market with cheap coffee drinks, and we will not do so now.

C: That's true. We've certainly achieved top of mind awareness when it comes to the best tasting brews and it's important to distinguish ourselves from our competitors. I think the main question is how we can show our appreciation to our customers.

A: That's the main question I would like to discuss today.

B: Money is tight for everyone these days so even our most loyal customers may be reconsidering the money they pay for their morning coffee. Since the superiority of our coffee beans is one of our core competencies why don't we sell the beans for people to brew coffee at home.

C: That could definitely be a way we could expand our company, but would we be undermining the essence of the company that way?

A: Let's brainstorm some more ideas, and do some research. The customer always comes first, and what the customer wants, the customer gets. Maybe it's time we started selling coffee beans.

### Key Vocabulary

devalue	N	reduce in value
discerning	A	Showing insight and understanding
state-of-the-art	A	the latest and most advanced in technology
awareness	N	showing realization and perception
undermine	V	to subvert or weaken insidiously or secretly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Product Place- ment	P	also called "embedded marketing", where a company's products are placed in strategic places in film, television, or other forms of media
Downturn	N	a recession ; when things are not going very well
Value Proposi- tion	N	an analysis of the total cost and benefits of a product that a company can deliver its customers
R&D	N	Research and development
Excel	V	to be very good at doing something, to do something better than anyone else

Lifestyle Segmentation	N	when the population is divided up into different categories based upon hobbies, interests, spending habits, etc.
Word of Mouth	N	advertisement that is spread through positive reviews from consumers, instead of from print or TV commercials

## Daily Life - Buying A Suit (C0270)

- A: Hello sir, what can I do for you today?
- B: Hi, I need a new suit. I have an important interview next week, so I really need to look sharp.
- A: No problem! We have a broad selection of suits, all tailored made so that it will fit perfectly.
- B: Great! I want a three piece suit, preferably made from Italian cashmere or wool.
- A: Very well sir. Would you like to have some shirts made also?
- B: Sure. I'll also take some silver cuff link and a pair of silk ties.
- A: Very good. Now, if you will accompany me, we can take your measurements and choose the patterns for your suit and shirts.

## Key Vocabulary

sharp	A	stylish or fashionable
-------	---	------------------------

broad	A	wide;a lot
preferably	R	most wanted or preferred
accompany	V	to go together with

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Collar	N	the cloth around the neckline of a shirt, that is folded over
Impression	N	the first feeling you give when you encounter/meet someone
Custom-made	A	made according to your own specifications
Alteration	N	a change (in length, width, fit) made to an item of clothing
Dry-Clean	V	A cleaning process that uses chemicals to clean clothes



Learn English on your Terms

**Herringbone**      *A*

A type of pattern, common on suits, that resembles thin, "saw-like" lines

**Garment**      *N*

an article of clothing

## The Office - Presentation Series 1 - The Overview and the Agenda (C0271)

A: Hi everyone, Can everyone hear me? Can you guys at the back hear everything?

A: Okay great. Well I think all of you know why we are here this afternoon. As most of you are aware 2010 marks an important moment for Alpha computers.

A: We have bounced back from the recession and now we are set to launch our new line of laptop and desktop computers.

A: I'm really pleased to welcome Michael Ford, the Global Marketing Manager for Alpha computers, who has flown in from California to give all of you an overview of the marketing campaign and to answer any questions you may have. So please give a warm welcome to Mr. Ford .

B: Thank you Jonathan. It really is a pleasure to be here today. It has been three years since I visited Beijing , and it's clear to me that operations here are obviously going from strength to strength.

B: The Alpha brand continues to grow in leaps and bounds in China, and that is certainly down to the hard work of all of you here. So congratulations to all of you.

B: I'd like to start by outlining the key points of my presentation this afternoon and giving you an idea of the topics that will be discussed. The presentation today is divided into five main parts.

B: First of all, I'd like to briefly touch on the background of the new x420 line; how the whole concept has come about and how the new product fits into our existing brand line.

B: Secondly I'd like to present data on projected sales for the x420. We will then go on to discuss our key rivals in this sector. Then I would like to go on to outline the campaign concept for the x420.

B: Finally I'm happy to open up the discussion for any questions or points you might have for me.

### Key Vocabulary

strength

N

a quality or feature  
that makes someone or  
somethi

first of all	<i>P</i>	phrase used to introduce a series of ideas, starting with the first one
go on	<i>I</i>	continue, go forward
Finally	<i>f</i>	at last
launch	<i>V</i>	to begin
overview	<i>N</i>	a general explanation
strength to strength	<i>P</i>	more and more successful

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Powerpoint Presentation	<i>N</i>	A presentation using a computer program called powerpoint
Projector	<i>N</i>	a machine used to project a large digital image onto a plain white surface

Podium	<i>N</i>	a small usually wooden table used to hold a microphone for use of a speaker
Speech	<i>N</i>	a public discourse
Graph	<i>N</i>	A graphic image that represents variations and numbers

## Daily Life - Getting A Nanny (C0272)

Grace: Hey Mel! Are you up for some tennis today?

Mel: Sorry, I can't! I have to go to work, pick up Jake and Maddie from school, and make them an afternoon snack, then take Jake to soccer practice and Maddie to dance class.

Grace: You sound exhausted. Maybe you should hire a nanny to help you out! She can pick the kids up and take them to their after-school activities. She can also help you do some household chores, and run some errands.

Mel: Oh, I don't know... it's hard to find the right nanny . You have to consider her previous work experience, the responsibilities you give her, and how she interacts with the kids. I would love to have someone to help me out, though.

Grace: I think you should definitely consider it! This way you won't have to juggle such a busy schedule, and you'll still get to spend time with the kids in the evenings. I can refer you this great nanny Amy. She used to work for my neighbors, before they moved away. She's very responsible, a good cook, and great with kids.

Mel: Oh, that's great. Thanks Grace. Can you give me her number? I'll talk it over with Dan and give her a call tomorrow. Maybe this way I won't be so tired every day, and Dan and I might even get to go on a date once in a while.

### Key Vocabulary

exhausted	A	very tired
hire	V	to give work
nanny	N	a woman who is paid to care for a young child
chore	N	a small job that is done regularly
errand	N	short journey that you take to do or get something
juggle	V	to do several things at the same time
refer	V	to send someone to a person or place for treatment

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Babysitter	N	A person that looks after kids when their parents are not home
Domestic Help	N	Any person that is hired to work at a residence
Minimum Wage	N	The lowest legal wage a person can earn either hourly or monthly
Maid	N	A woman that helps with the household chores such as cleaning and cooking
Butler	N	A man that helps with the household chores such as cleaning and cooking

## The Weekend - The Zodiac and Horoscopes (C0273)

Angela: Hey Lydia, what are you reading?

Lydia: I'm looking at my horoscope for this month! My outlook is very positive. It says that I should take a vacation to someplace exotic, and that I will have a passionate summer fling!

Angela: What are you talking about? Let me see that... What are horoscopes?

Lydia: It's a prediction of your month, based on your zodiac sign . You have a different sign for the month and date you were born in. I was born on April 15th, so I'm an Aries. When were you born?

Angela: January 5th.

Lydia: Let's see. . . you're a Capricorn. It says that you will be feeling stress at work, but you could see new, exciting developments in your love life . Looks like we'll both have interesting summers!

Angela: That's bogus. I don't feel any stress at work, and my love life is practically nonexistent. This zodiac stuff is all a bunch of nonsense.

Lydia: No it's not, your astrology sign can tell you a lot about your personality. See? It says that an Aries is energetic and loves to socialize.

Angela: Well, you certainly match those criteria, but they're so broad they could apply to anyone. What does it say about me?

Lydia: A Capricorn is serious-minded and practical. She likes to do things in conventional ways. \* laughs \* That sounds just like you!

## Key Vocabulary

horoscope	N	future predictions based on person's birth
outlook	N	forecast; the way that a person thinks about things
fling	N	short romantic relationship, a romantic encounter

Aries	N	the first sign of the zodiac
Capricorn	N	the 10th sign of the zodiac
zodiac	N	12 imaginary areas in the sky
astrology	N	the study of how the positions of the stars affect our being

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Psychic	N	a person who professes an ability to perceive information hidden from the normal senses through extrasensory perception
Tarot	N	Any of a set of cards depicting vices, virtues, and elemental forces, used in fortunetelling.

Fortune Teller	<i>N</i>	A person that is able to predict your future by reading cards or your hands
Voodoo	<i>N</i>	a religious tradition originating in West Africa, also called black magic
Oracle	<i>N</i>	a person or agency considered to be a source of wise counsel or prophetic opinion



## The Office - Presentation Series 2 - Talking about numbers, charts and graphs (C0274)

Mr Ford: As all of you are well aware, competition in the laptop computer sector is intense.

Mr Ford: We continue to fight with our competitors for market share, and this is the case both in the developed markets in the West, as well as more developing markets in Asia and Africa.

Mr Ford: You may ask yourself, why is this market so cut-throat? Well the answer is simple. There is a huge untapped potential market out there ,with a huge untapped potential for profit.

Mr Ford: If I bring up the first graph here, it shows the increase in terms of number of computer owners across the globe.

Mr Ford: As you can see in the 1980's computer ownership amounted to around 0.5% of the total world population. Since the 1990's, computer ownership has risen dramatically.



Mr Ford: In the new millennium we saw an even larger explosion in computer owners , with figures rising to around 4- 5%, an increase of 1000 % percent compared with the 1980's .

Mr Ford: If we move on to discuss the figures for China specifically we can see in Chart B that the overall figure for computer ownership stands at around 60 million, which represents a huge increase in a very short time period.

Mr Ford: Now of course 60 million is just a drop in the ocean if you compare the total population of China, and this is a key reason why the personal computer market is such a hot market.

Mr Ford: For us at Alpha, and of course for all our competitors as well, we have millions of potential customers who are looking to join the internet generation.

Mr Ford: If we do this right we really can reap huge rewards in a very short time frame. I'd now like to move on to discuss the x420 brand itself, and compare and contrast with some of our key competitors.

## Key Vocabulary

amount	P	to turn out to be
to		
dramatically	R	in a sudden and extreme way
stand	V	represent
reap	V	to get something as a result of something
cut-throat	A	situation in which people compete in an unpleasant way

## Supplementary Vocabulary

pie chart	N	a circular chart divided into sectors, illustrating proportion
bar graph	N	a chart with rectangular bars with lengths proportional to the values that they represent.

line chart

*N*

a two-dimensional scatterplot of ordered observations where the observations are connected following their order.

market share

*N*

the proportion of industry sales of a good or service that is controlled by a company.

sales forecast

*N*

the estimate of upcoming or future sales

## Daily Life - Kitchen Appliances (C0275)

A: I have been looking at this online catalog for over an hour and I still haven't finished getting all the kitchen appliances that we need!

B: What are you getting?

A: Well, the first thing on my list is a new blender. I decided to also get a juicer and a new coffee maker.

B: Don't forget to also get a new mixer. I lent the old one to my brother and he broke it.

A: Yeah I know. I also decided to throw away the old toaster and get a new one. I am also getting a rice cooker and steamer to make some nice steamed fish or veggies.

B: I'm actually thinking of completely refurnishing the kitchen and getting a new stove, oven, dishwasher and trash compacter.

A: That's a good idea ! The kitchen will look amazing!

### Key Vocabulary

blender	<i>N</i>	a machine used for cutting food and ice and mixing
juicer	<i>N</i>	a machine used for making juice
mixer	<i>N</i>	a machine used for mixing things
toaster	<i>N</i>	a machine used for toasting bread
dishwasher	<i>N</i>	the machine used for washing dishes

### Supplementary Vocabulary

microwave oven	<i>N</i>	an oven that uses waves to heat food
sandwich maker	<i>N</i>	small appliance used to press and heat bread to make sandwiches
fryer	<i>N</i>	machine that can heat up cooking oil to fry food



Learn English on your Terms

slow  
cooker

*N*

a pot that uses low continuous heat to cook food

## Daily Life - Telephone Services (C0276)

A: Telco Mobile, how can I help you?

B: Yes, I'd like to activate my voice mail service please.

A: Certainly sir, we currently have a special promotion where we include voice mail services ,call waiting and also three way calling.

B: Sure that sounds great! Are there any other fees?

A: Not at all. No hidden fees or surcharges, it is a flat monthly rate.

B: Perfect. I also wanted to know if there is any call forwarding service? I am usually out of town and would like my calls to be forwarded to a local number.

A: Yes of course. We can activate all these services in about an hour.

## Key Vocabulary

to acti-	V	to cause a device to start working
promotion	N	something done to make people aware of a product
surcharge	N	money that be paid in addition to the regular
surcharge	N	money that be paid in addition to the regular

### Supplementary Vocabulary

ringtone	N	the sound made by a cell phone when it receives a call
smartphone	N	a phone that has more features than a traditional cell phone, including web browser, in-phone cameras, and different applications
headset	N	worn on the head to help you speak and listen while not holding your phone

rebate	<i>N</i>	a partial refund, a discount
contract	<i>N</i>	an agreement between two or more sides that has specific terms
hands-free	<i>A</i>	something that makes you able to use it without hands

## The Office - Presentation Series 3 - Making Comparisons (C0277)

Mr. Ford: Now a key question you might ask yourself is what differentiates the new x420 line with our previous models, and also of course with some of our competitors.

Mr. Ford: In other words what makes the x420 stand out from all the others? This is a key question, and is something I'd like to explore in a little depth. Firstly, the x420 has a range of USPs that really make it a cut above the rest.

Mr. Ford: The first thing to mention is that the x420 is the first in a new generation of ultra-light laptop computers. It is only 2lbs, which compares very favorably with all our key competitors. In terms of computer performance, for such a light machine it's very powerful. 4Gb of RAM, with an ultra-fast processor.



Mr. Ford: The most advanced video and sound cards on the market are installed with a crystal-clear 15-inch LCD display. The x420 really stands out as next generation laptop. Compared with our previous x540 range it really is in a league of its own .

Mr. Ford: Now, if we go on to look at projected sales for the x420 we can see that sales revenue for 2010 is expected to hit at least 20 million dollars. Now this is really a conservative estimate.

Mr. Ford: If our marketing campaign is successful I'm confident that we could see a doubling of this figure at the very least. Now please bear in mind that this is only for the first year of production.

Mr. Ford: I'm certain that in the coming three years the x420 will actually overtake all our existing products, both in terms of sales and revenue. Okay, now let's move on to discuss our marketing concept and look more closely at our key competitors.

## Key Vocabulary

a cut above	P	better than
crystal-clear	A	perfectly clear
bear in mind	N	remember
differentiate	V	recognize or show the difference
in other words	P	take another way to say
stand out	P	very noticeable
in a league of its own	P	the best; have no competitor

### Supplementary Vocabulary

revenue	N	the amount of sales, in dollars (or other currency)
market share	N	how much of the market is occupied by sales of a certain product



Learn English on your Terms

**breakthrough** *N*

creative, innovative  
technology

**generate** *V*

to come up with

## Global View - At The Car Dealership (C0278)

A: Hi there! I am looking for a new car. I have this old Ford Pinto that I would like to trade in.

B: I see. You are in luck this month because all of our models are on sale! it is a perfect time to buy a new car since it's the end of the year,

A: Perfect! I like this one.

B: That is the Ford Focus. A very light but powerful vehicle. It comes with dual side airbags, power steering and power windows, tinted windows and your choice of either automatic or manual transmission.

A: Sounds like a good car! How many miles to the gallon?

B: It is a very fuel efficient vehicle giving you about 34 miles in the city and 40 on the highway.

A: That is really convenient. Especially now that fuel prices are so high! What's under the hood?

B: A very powerful 2.5-liter turbocharged engine, Trust me, this car is fast!

A: Now for the most difficult question. What is the price tag for this lovely vehicle?

B: Very affordable sir. You can take it out of this lot today with 0% down payment and no interest for the first year! You can test drive it now and we can sign the papers when we get back.

A: Great! Let's do it!

### Key Vocabulary

trade in	P	something that you sell as part of payment for new
miles	N	unit measuring distance
fuel	N	something that can be turned into energy
down payment	N	first payment that you pay when buy something
interest	N	money paid by a borrower for the borrowed money

## Supplementary Vocabulary

lemon	<i>N</i>	something that is sold, that seems like a good deal but actually does not work the way it should
warranty	<i>N</i>	a guarantee on something sold, that would pay for a certain amount of damage to the product
limited-time offer	<i>N</i>	a promotion that is only available for a certain amount of time
rip off	<i>V</i>	to give someone a bad deal
rioff	<i>N</i>	a bad deal



## Global View - Drugs (C0279)

A: Hey man, you wanna buy some weed?

B: Some what?

A: Weed! You know? Pot, Ganja, Mary Jane some chronic!

B: Oh, umm, no thanks.

A: I also have blow if you prefer to do a few lines.

B: No, I am ok, really.

A: Come on man! I even got dope and acid! Try some!

B: Do you really have all of these drugs? Where do you get them from?

A: I got my connections! Just tell me what you want and I'll even give you one ounce for free.

B: Sounds good! Let's see, I want.

A: Yeah?

B: I want you to put your hands behind your head!  
You are under arrest!

### Key Vocabulary

weed	N	a drug, Marijuana
come on	P	to ask someone to do something (informal)
connection	N	A person, especially one of influence or importance, with whom one is associated
under ar- rest	P	the act of legally taking someone to jail

### Supplementary Vocabulary

illicit	A	illegal, not authorized
undercover	A	to work under the disguise of someone else
rehab	N	a place to recover from addiction



Learn English on your Terms

withdrawal	N	to stop using something; the feeling you get when you stop using drugs
craving	N	a desire to do something (eat, do drugs, smoke, etc.)
high	N	a feeling you get when you are on drugs
hallucinate	V	to have hallucinations, where your brain imagines things that are not there



## The Office - Presentation Series 4 - Discussing the Competition (C0280)

Mr. Ford: Now, of course, with all this cutting-edge technology there must be a catch, you might ask yourself. I bet the retail price will be too much for most consumers, you might say. Well, you'd be wrong!

Mr. Ford: Yes, of course the x420 is aimed at the luxury market, but if you compare the price of our leading competitors, the x420 represents incredible value for money. At only 15,000RMB it is far more affordable and far more attractive than almost every leading brand and model.

Mr. Ford: So, what differentiates us from our competitors? Well, if we compare Orange's luxury MP40 range then we can really highlight some of the differences.

Mr. Ford: Now, of course Orange has an enviable record for producing revolutionary and top class products, and I must admit the MP40 is a breathtaking machine. However, for most consumers the MP40 is simply far too expensive to consider.

Mr. Ford: Compared with the x420 it is more expensive and there's no doubt that considering the quality and workmanship that goes into the x420 we really win hands down on value for money.

Mr. Ford: Also, if you compare the after sales service we offer I think we can proudly boast the best customer service facilities in the whole lap-top sector. As opposed to most of our rivals, we guarantee quality, we guarantee service and we guarantee reliability.

Mr. Ford: The questions we must ask ourselves are "What does the Alpha brand stand for? and also " How can we set ourselves apart from our competitors? The answer to both of these questions is the same my friends.

Mr. Ford: Alpha stands first and foremost for quality, for excellence and for service. If we always stick to this philosophy then I'm confident that we will really be able to expand our market share significantly. Okay, let me move on now to give you an idea of our marketing campaign for the x420

## Key Vocabulary

cutting-edge	A	the newest and most advanced
catch	N	hidden problem that makes something complicated
aim	V	to direct (something) at a particular goal
differentiate	V	to make different in some way
highlight	V	to make or try to make people notice
enviable	A	causing envy ; very desirable
foremost	A	most important

## Supplementary Vocabulary

high-end	A	at the top level of consumer purchases, aimed at luxury and high-quality markets
----------	---	--



Learn English on your Terms

outsource	V	to send a job somewhere else, often overseas
hotline	N	a phone number people can call to get help any time of day
motto	N	an expression that is the guiding principle of a person or organization
trademark	N	something (symbol, logo, phrase, etc.) that distinguishes one company's product from its competitors

## The Weekend - Breaking Up (C0281)

Lydia: Hello?

Maggie: Hey! Do you want to go out tonight?

Lydia: No, I think I'll pass. Mark broke up with me. I feel awful.

Maggie: What?!? What happened? Just last week you were talking about going on vacation together!

Lydia: I don't know what I did wrong. He said he needed some space to figure things out... He said I didn't do anything wrong, that I'm a great person... just not the one for him...

Maggie: Ugh! That's so cliché. Mark's not worth your time, Lydia. You deserve so much better!

Lydia: I know we had hit a rough patch but I had hoped we could work it out next weekend, when we both had some time off... I think he found someone else. I had been getting suspicious because he had been spending a lot of time with a coworker...

Maggie: Whatever. He's a jerk, forget about him!  
There are many more fish in the sea.

Lydia: Talk about being cliché, Maggie! But you're right. There's no use for me to sulk around... Let's go out tonight!

### Key Vocabulary

break up	V	end a romantic relationship
talk about	P	to deliver or express in speech
figure things out	V	think about something until understand
cliché	A	a saying or idea that is overused
hit a rough patch	P	go through a difficult time
work out	P	solve, overcome

### Supplementary Vocabulary

get dumped	V	to have someone break up with you
honeymoon period	N	the time at the beginning of a relationship when everything is going well
long-distance relationship	N	when two people live far away from each other but are in a relationship
blind date	N	when someone is set up to go on a date with a person he/she does not know
commitment	N	responsibility and sincerity in a relationship
casual dating	N	not dating to get married, just having fun, nothing serious



## Global View - Physics (C0282)

Prof. Good morning, everybody. Welcome to Brown: Physics 101. My name is Ed Brown, and I will be your professor for this semester. Since today is our first class, I wanted to give you an overview of what this course will look like, how you will be graded, and what we will cover this semester.

Matt: Will we be focusing more on theoretical physics or experimental physics, Professor?

Prof. This is an introductory course, and my aim is Brown: to give you a broad overview of the field of physics. The term “physics” encompasses many different areas of research and study, and I hope this course will provide you with conceptual understanding of physics, which will prove useful whether or not you choose to further your study in this field.

Prof. We will begin the course by looking at the fundamental concepts of physics, then by the middle of the semester we will begin exploring the more theoretical side of physics. It is essential that you first have a firm grasp of the fundamentals, so that you can better understand the theoretical concepts when we get to them.

Matt: Will we learn about black holes, wormholes, and string theory?

Prof. We will learn about the general theory of relativity, including black holes. We will also explore developing theories in quantum mechanics, such as string theory. We will discuss some hypothetical features of space-time, like wormholes.

Prof. We will also explore some of the more influential developments in the fields of thermodynamics, electromagnetism, and nuclear physics, all of which have had significant impacts on modern life. Now, I am going to have the TAs pass out the syllabus for this class, so you can see how this course will be graded.

Matt: Oh man, looks like this isn't gonna be the easy A I thought it'd be!

### Key Vocabulary

encompass      v      to include (something) as a part

conceptual      A      based on or relating to ideas or concepts

grasp	N	an understanding of something
black hole	N	an invisible area in outer space
quantum mechanics	N	the branch of physics that deals with energy and matter on an atomic level
hypothetical	A	involving or based on a suggested idea or theory
thermodynamics	N	a science that deals with the action of heat
electromagnetism	N	a magnetic field that is produced by a current of electricity
nuclear physics	N	the area of physics which deals with nuclei

### Supplementary Vocabulary

academia	N	the various interests of a university and those who teach there
----------	---	---



Learn English on your Terms

applicable	A	something that can be used in real-life situations
gravity	N	the force of attraction between two objects
ivory tower	N	refers to those who live in intellectual isolation, often without contact or applicability to the outside world
relevant	A	knowledge that can be applied to everyday situations

## The Office - Presentation Series 5 - Deferring Questions (C0283)

Mr. Ford: Now, as we have already discussed there is a huge untapped market out there both in Asia, in other developing markets, and in the more mature markets for us to push into. Now of course, this represents an enormous challenge with enormous rewards for the winners, but for any new product we need a great marketing message and marketing campaign

Mr. Ford: It needs to be directed and focused at our target consumer, and needs to be pitched at exactly the right level. The question we must first address is of course, who is our target consumer and secondly what do they expect from the next generation Alpha lap-top?

Mr. Ford: Let's first of all tackle the first question. Our target consumer for the x420 is the middle class, white collar worker with an above average income. However, as we mentioned before the total number of computer owners is expanding rapidly and we need to broaden our audience for this product.

Mr. Ford: For example, the x420 is also ideally suited to the younger student sector, who might use laptops both for study and gaming. There is no doubt that.

Audience Member: Mr. Ford, if I could just interrupt a moment. You say that the computer is suitable for students, but don't you think the price of the x420 is just too much for most students?

Mr Ford: Well, that's a fair point. If you don't mind I'd like to tackle your question a little bit later in the Q and A section. Is that okay?

Audience Member: Yes sure.

Mr Ford: Okay, so as I was saying we have an exciting campaign planned for the x420. Firstly, we will have a nationwide television campaign, as well as advertising on radio and also in many computer publications. We also intend to.



Audience Member: I'm sorry to stop you Mr. Ford, but do you really think that a television campaign is cost effective. I mean, how much is that going to cost?

Mr Ford: Well I don't have the figures to hand, but I'd be happy to discuss those figures with you after the presentation. Okay let me just go on to talk a little more about the exciting campaign we have in store.

### Key Vocabulary

untapped	A	available but not used
developing market	N	markets that are in growth
mature markets	N	developed market
marketing message	N	the information of the sale of a product
tackle	V	deal with something that is difficult
white collar	N	a person that works in an office

**Q and A***N*

question and answer

**Supplementary Vocabulary****consumerism** *N*

the increasing consumption of goods; a movement that emphasizes quality and consumer awareness

**bottom of pyramid** *N*

those people who earn around \$1USD/day, the majority of the world's people belong to this consumer segment

**promote** *V*

to encourage, to advertise something

**out of reach** *A*

something that cannot be obtained

**wallet-friendly** *A*

an inexpensive product; anything that saves you money



## Daily Life - Tune Up (C0284)

A: Welcome to Al's Garage. What seems to be the problem?

B: No problem at all! I am taking a long road trip and I want to make sure my car is in good mechanical condition.

A: Very wise decision. When was the last time you had a tune up?

B: Not that long ago, I think it was four months ago.

A: We usually recommend that you bring your car in every five thousand kilometers.

B: Why? I mean, what exactly do you do to a car that you need to check it so often?

A: First of all, we change the motor oil and oil filter. If you don't do this, it can cause your engine to wear faster and that means you would probably have to change the pistons and intake valves.

B: I see. What else?

A: We also check your spark plugs, fuel filter, and other oil levels such as hydraulic fluid. We also check the clutch and brakes to determine when you will need new ones.

B: Ok, well, when you put it that way, it doesn't seem like a waste of time and money.

A: Trust me, regular tune ups will keep your car running smoothly and avoid break downs.

### Key Vocabulary

road trip	P	long trip by car
piston	N	a part of an engine that moves up and down inside
spark plug	N	a device in the engine which produces electric spa
break down	N	stop working
engine	N	the device which helps cars getting running

clutch	N	pedal that you press before you change gear
brake	N	a device that slows down or stops something
regular	A	ordinary
smoothly	R	without problems or difficulties

### Supplementary Vocabulary

brake pads	N	part of the disk brake, brake pads are squeezed together to help the car brake
antifreeze	N	a chemical compound used in internal combustion engines, helps to regulate the temperature of the engine
ABS; anti-lock braking system	N	prevents the wheels of the car from locking up while braking



Learn English on your Terms

**mileage**

*N*

the number of miles  
traveled over a period of  
time

## Daily Life - Handyman (C0285)

A: The air conditioning is not working! We need to call a handyman before we start to fry in here!

B: Dan is on top of that. I think they are also getting the handyman to fix the bathroom toilet that keeps clogging up.

A: That would be convenient. They might as well ask him to fix the electrical wiring. The circuit breakers keep going out all the time. It's really annoying!

B: Yeah you are right. This office is falling apart! Frank told me the other day that the gutters outside were clogged and that's why the parking lot was flooded.

A: I know! I was in ankle deep water trying to get to my car that day! The handyman definitely has his work cut out for him.

### Key Vocabulary

air condi-  
tioning              N

something that makes  
the air cooler

handyman	<i>N</i>	a person who is skillful at doing small jobs
on top of that	<i>P</i>	besides that
clog up	<i>P</i>	becomes blocked
wiring	<i>N</i>	the system of wires that carry electricity
fall apart	<i>P</i>	slowly break
gutter	<i>N</i>	long, hollow device that is attached to a roof

### Supplementary Vocabulary

plumber	<i>N</i>	someone who installs the pipes, bathroom fixtures, and fixes toilets, sinks, etc.
electrician	<i>N</i>	someone who works with the electric wiring of a building
plunger	<i>N</i>	a rubber device that helps to unclog toilets

insulation	<i>N</i>	material used to regulate temperature; keep a building warm in the winter and cool in the summer
gutter	<i>N</i>	a channel on the side of a building or street that guides away surface water

## The Office - Presentation Series 6 - Addressing the Audience (C0286)

Mr. Ford: The campaign that we have in store for the x420 is exciting, imaginative and revolutionary. We have spent two years listening to and responding to feedback from customers and staff alike.

Mr. Ford: I would like to say that without the assistance and support of each and every one of you we really could not have devised this campaign. I'd like to take my hat off and really thank you all for the wonderful work you've done so far, not only in helping support our marketing efforts, but also in your continuing your commitment to Alpha computers.

Mr. Ford: There's no doubt in my mind that we have a great workforce here and together we can really push Alpha computers to a whole new level of success.



Mr. Ford: On the subject of the campaign let me ask you all a question. How do we define the perfect lap-top? Is it about affordability, quality, speed, reliability? What do you look for in a consumer? Well, I believe the answer lies in a combination of all of these elements.

Mr. Ford: Our campaign will really hammer home the point that the x420 is a state-of-the-art laptop for all of your computing needs. With our television campaign we hope to really reach out to a huge audience.

Mr. Ford: We have a great ad campaign planned focusing on the fantastic USP's of the x420. We have hired one of the best PR companies to work with us on the campaign, and have already completed three separate TV adverts, all focusing on one key feature of the x420.

Mr. Ford: I'm excited to say that today, for the first time, we will unveil to all of you here the first of these advertisements!

## Key Vocabulary

in store	A	existing, happening, or available in a store
hammer home	P	to emphasize a point
unveil	V	to show or reveal
each and every	P	a more forceful way of saying each

### Supplementary Vocabulary

breakthrough	N	a significant or sudden advance
sleek	A	smooth, glossy, graceful, refined-looking
mind-boggling	A	something that overwhelms the mind; beyond comprehension
multitask	V	to do several different things simultaneously
masses	N	the general populace, the common people



## Daily Life - High School Reunion (C0287)

- A: I hate coming to high school reunions.
- B: It will be great honey. We will get to see your old classmates and catch up to see how they have been doing.
- A: Yeah I guess so. Oh look! There is Robert Matthews! Rob!
- C: Hey Bill! Wow great to see you!
- A: Likewise! It's been a long time! This is my wife Dorothy.
- C: Pleasure to meet you. So Bill, how have you been?
- A: Can't complain! We have 2 children who are in college and my business is going well. What about you?
- C: Ah you know me! I am a dedicated bachelor. I never married although I do have a beautiful daughter with Mary, you remember her? We were high school sweetheart, didn't really work out between us, but I really can't complain either.

A: That's good. Have you seen Frank? I was hoping he would come tonight.

C: You didn't hear? Frank passed away last year.

A: Are you serious?

C: Nah! I'm just yanking your chain. He'll be here soon. I saw him just last week and he told me he would show up.

### Key Vocabulary

catch up	P	meet each other
dedicated	A	have strong loyalty to someone or something
likewise	A	also
yank your chain	P	deceive someone in a friendly or playful way

high school sweet-heart	N	the person who you loved in high school
-------------------------	---	---

### Supplementary Vocabulary

reminisce	V	to reflect and muse about old times
stereotype	N	to generalize a particular person or group; a generalization, a simplified image
jock	N	an athlete, stereotypically popular but not very smart
nerd	N	a stereotype of someone who studies well but lacks in social skills
cheerleader	N	a person who leads the cheering at sports events; a person who rallies the crowd



## The Weekend - Getting A Tattoo (C0288)

A: I have made up my mind. I am getting a tattoo.

B: Really? Are you sure?

A: Yeah! Why not? They are trendy and look great! I want to get a dragon on my arm or maybe a tiger on my back.

B: Yeah but, it is something that you will have forever! They use indelible ink that can only be removed with laser treatment. On top of all that, I have heard it hurts a lot!

A: Really?

B: Of course! They use this machine with a needle that pokes your skin and inserts the ink.

A: Oh, I didn't know that! I thought they just paint it on your skin or something.

B: I think you should reconsider and do some more research about tattoos. Also, find out where the nearest tattoo parlor is and make sure they used sterilized needles, and that the place is hygienic.

A: Maybe I should just get a tongue piercing!

### Key Vocabulary

trendy	A	following the latest trends
on top of all that	P	besides that
reconsider	V	to think carefully about something again
hygienic	A	clean and unlikely to cause illness
sterilized	A	completely clean and free from germs

### Supplementary Vocabulary

rebellious	A	defying authority, going against the mainstream
body art	N	used to describe tattoos, but also other, more temporary forms of decorating the body



Learn English on your Terms

<b>temporary</b>	<i>A</i>	existing for only a short period of time
<b>permanent</b>	<i>A</i>	something that exists for a long time; does not leave

## The Office - Presentation Series 7 - Handling Technical Problems (C0289)

Mr. Ford: Okay, so if we could dim the lights Jonathan, we can kick-off with the first TV advert. Please note that we are still in the early days with this advert, so it might seem a bit rough round the edges. Okay, so. just need to click this and the advert should pop up on the screen...

Mr. Ford: Hmmmmmm. Sorry about this. Bear with me me a second. There seems to be a problem with the projector. Let me see. could you lend a hand a second?

Jonathan: It looks like the projector is not recognizing the computer. Let me check the connection a second... Well the connection seems okay, and the computer is running normally.

Mr. Ford: Okay. Sorry guys. Obviously a problem with the system. Let's just reboot and start over. Let's see if this resolves the issue.

Jonathan: Right, lets try again. No, still nothing Michael. There might be a technical issue with the projector. I think maybe the projector has overheated. We might need to cool it down for ten minutes and start again. I'll call IT support to come over right now.

Mr. Ford: Okay guys. Unfortunately technical problems do crop up from time to time, don't they? But it's not a huge problem. In the meantime while the IT guys get to work on that I can talk a little bit more about the advertising concept and what we are looking to achieve overall with this campaign.

### Key Vocabulary

kick-off	V	beginning of an event
recognize	V	Identify
crop up	P	appears or happens unexpectedly
rough round the edges	A	having a rough quality; not smooth or refined



bear with *P* to be patient with me  
me

## Supplementary Vocabulary

kink	N	a flaw that hinders the success of an operation or plan
unprepared	A	without adequate preparation, not ready
stall	V	to intentionally delay
screw-up	N	as a noun: a mess-up, can be used to refer to a person or thing; as a verb: to mess up

## The Weekend - Buying Jewelery (C0290)

Shop assistant: Good afternoon, sir, is there anything I can help you with today?

Mark: umm... yeah! I'm looking for a nice gift to give my girlfriend. Our fifth anniversary's next Friday.

Shop assistant: Well, I would be happy to assist you in choosing the perfect gift for her. Is there anything particular that you have in mind?

Mark: No, not really... I'm completely at a loss.

Shop assistant: Well, you can give her a set of pearl earrings, or this beautiful heart-shaped pendant. What is her favorite gemstone?

Mark: That purple one. I'm sorry... I've never bought jewelry for anyone and I'm kind of nervous.

Shop assistant:

Don't worry, we specialize in providing our customers a relaxed, pressure-free shopping environment. That stone is an amethyst. We have a range of beautiful amethyst pieces. Take a look at this bracelet. It's 18K rose-gold, studded with amethyst and blue topaz. It's a great statement piece.

Mark:

Oh...wow. That's really pretty. Jess would love that. But... I was thinking of something a little more delicate, perhaps a necklace?

Shop assistant:

We have this beautiful platinum pendant, or you could also get her a locket. You could also get her a timepiece—it's both glamorous yet functional. If you tell me a little more about your girlfriend, maybe I can help you find something for her.

Mark:

Jess? Well, she's very smart, and has a great sense of humor. She's very feminine...

Shop assistant:

Perhaps you could give her a ring?

Mark:

Well...actually...I was thinking about asking Jess to marry me...I've just been so nervous.

Shop assistant:

Well sir, I believe your fifth anniversary is a great time to propose!

Mark:

Okay, I've decided. I'm going to pop the question!

Shop assistant:

Fabulous! We should look at engagement rings then! Now that's a whole other section.

## Key Vocabulary

anniversary      N

The date on which a romance began

have in mind	P	to be thinking of something
heart-shaped	A	something in the shape of a heart
pendant	N	a piece of jewelry that hangs on a chain
gemstone	N	a stone that can be used in jewelry
amethyst	N	a clear purple or bluish-purple stone
bracelet	N	a piece of jewelry worn on the wrist
18K	A	contain 75% gold
blue topaz	N	a blue precious stone
platinum	N	a heavy, silver-colored metal
locket	N	A small ornamental case

**pop the question** *P* ask a big question (proposal)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>bling-bling</b>	<i>N</i>	slang: a term used to describe shiny jewelry, usually with a lot of diamonds
<b>carat</b>	<i>N</i>	a unit of weight in gemstones
<b>flashy</b>	<i>A</i>	eye-catching, shiny and brilliant; ostentatious, attention-grabbing but not classy
<b>show-stopper</b>	<i>N</i>	something that is so interesting as to figuratively "stop the show"
<b>gold-digger</b>	<i>N</i>	someone who marries for money



## Daily Life - Ordering Chinese Food (C0291)

Waitress: Hi, welcome to Happy Buddah! Can I get you anything to drink?

Manny: A Coke for me, please.

Andrea: I'll have a Sprite.

Waitress: Okay, I'll go get that for you. Are there any questions with the menu?

Andrea: Do you use MSG?

Waitress: No ma'am, we are MSG-free.

Andrea: Oh man, I haven't had Chinese food in so long! I want everything! This place has the BEST sesame chicken.

Manny: Yeah, I've been craving Chinese for such a long time. I used to get take-out all the time. It's definitely been a while. Let's start off with some crab rangoon.

Andrea: Ooh yeah, that sounds good. I think I'm going to get the sesame chicken with fried rice, a spring roll, and egg drop soup.

Manny: It's so tempting to order everything on the menu, it all looks so appetizing! I think I'll get General Tso's chicken, hot and sour soup, fried wontons, and white rice.

Andrea: Aren't you supposed to be on a diet? You should at least get brown rice.

Manny: I don't think so! I hate brown rice, and I'm so sick of eating healthy all the time. I've been eating so much salad I swear I've forgotten what meat tastes like! There's no better remedy than some nice, greasy, calorie-laden Chinese food. I might even get an order of broccoli beef!

Andrea: Gosh, I'm so hungry! Let's call the waitress over!

### Key Vocabulary

craving	N	a very strong desire for something
tempting	A	attractive
remedy	N	a medicine or treatment

take-out	N	food that is sold by a store to be eaten elsewhere
appetizing	A	delicious

### Supplementary Vocabulary

adaptation	N	something that is changed/alerted to suit a new form
guilty pleasure	N	an indulgence;; something that you eat, drink, or do that you shouldn't, but makes you happy
hits the spot	P	just right; just what you were looking for (often refers to food or a drink)



## The Office - Presentation Series 8 - Common Presentation Mistakes (C0292)

Mr. Ford: So as I mentioned previously the campaign advertisement will focus on those key elements that every consumer looks for in a quality laptop: affordability, quality, speed and reliability. We have pulled out all the stops to produce a product that really rivals all our competitors.

Mr. Ford: Actually, just to illustrate my point let me give you an anecdote here. I remember last year I was playing golf with one of our key suppliers. It was a lovely summer afternoon. Anyway, I invited our supplier for a game of golf, and wanted to get his input on the new x420.

Mr. Ford: Actually, I often get together with him for a good game of golf. It really is a wonderful way to relax. To be honest, I'm not that great at golf, but I have improved in the last few years. But the key to golf is practice, practice, practice. I've lost my thread. What was I talking about again?

Jonathan: I think you were discussing the campaign advertisement Michael.



Mr. Ford: Yes, excuse me. I'm afraid I got side-tracked there. Yes anyway, the campaign. Well, erm. let me see. Is the projector working yet Jonathan?

Jonathan: No sorry, IT are still fixing it.

Mr. Ford: Ahh okay, erm... all the information on the campaign is on the PowerPoint. I haven't actually got my notes with me...ermlet me see, erm.....

Audience Member: Mr. Ford, could you at least tell us the schedule for the campaign? When are the first advertisements scheduled for?

Mr. Ford: That's a good question. Unfortunately I erm...don't have that information on me. I will have to get back to you on that point.

Jonathan: Okay Michael, the projector is fixed. I think we're ready.



Mr. Ford: Thank goodness. Okay everyone, sorry for the delay. So without further ado the new x420 marketing campaign! Enjoy! oh erm... I'm terribly sorry, this is not the advert, this is my golfing holiday in Barbados. I think I must have brought the wrong file. Can we take five?

## Key Vocabulary

illustrate	V	to give examples to make something easier to understand
side-track	N	change topic
get back to you	P	to talk to or write to you at a later time
take five	P	have rest

## Supplementary Vocabulary

tangent	N	a separate, loosely related train of thought
befuddle	V	to confuse, make unclear



Learn English on your Terms

**clumsy**              *A*              awkward in movements  
or action

**get tongue-tied**      *P*              get confused, to not know what to say

## Advanced Media - Cheese Lovers (F0293)

A: Hello everyone my name is Laurie and I want to welcome you to this course. We will learn all about one of the oldest yet most delicious foods on this planet; cheese! Let's get started!

A: Cheese is usually categorized into four types: soft, semi-soft, semi-hard and hard. The designation refers to the amount of moisture in the cheese, which directly affects its texture. Making cheese is an ancient practice, dating back thousands of years, and the home cheese maker can usually find recipes for cheese that falls into any of the four categories.

A: Soft cheese includes cottage cheese, cream cheese, ricotta, brie, bleu, roquefort, mozzarella, munster and similar cheeses. These cheeses generally pair well with fruit or meats, or can be used as breakfast cheeses in an omelette or as pasta fillings. They are usually mildly flavored and very high in moisture.

A: American, Colby, co-jack and similar cheeses are in the semi-soft category. These are slightly stronger in flavor and cover a wide range of uses. Co-jack cheese, a blend of Colby and Monterrey jack is one of the most popular. This allows the sharper flavor of Colby to be combined with the milder jack cheese, and also melts better than plain Colby. Grilled cheese sandwiches often use American cheese, and Mexican cheeses such as Asadero and Queso Fresco are becoming more popular.

A: Hard cheeses include Parmesan, Romano, Asiago, Swiss, Gruyere and others. Parmesan and Romano are most familiar as the grated powder used to top spaghetti, but they are also used as accompaniments for fruit, wine, nuts and other appetizer items. Swiss is a popular sandwich cheese and melts well, unlike some other hard cheeses.

### Key Vocabulary

camembert	N	a type of cheese
mild	A	soft, not strong
cheese	N	solid product made from milk

flavour	N	the way something tastes
texture	N	the way something feels
moisture	N	a small quantity of water
pasteurize	V	to destroy micro organisms via elevated temperatures
American	A	Nationality
Colby	N	a type of cheese
co-jack	N	a type of cheese
quesco	N	a type of cheese
Parmesan	N	a type of cheese
Romano	N	a type of cheese
Asiago	N	a type of cheese
Swiss	N	a type of cheese
Gruyere	N	a type of cheese

## Supplementary Vocabulary



Learn English on your Terms

blue                    *N*                    a type of cheese

mature                *A*                    fully aged

organism              *N*                    a form of life

## Daily Life - Picking A University (C0294)

A: I've never heard of AmLion College. Could you...

B: Of course sir, let me give you a brief overview. AmLion College is located in the center of New York city. The school covers a wide range of academic subjects; and eighty percent of the courses are transferable to other state universities. And, last year AmLion College was ranked number one in terms of graduate employment.

A: Interesting, and what about the tuition fees, then?

B: You'll be looking at somewhere around fifteen thousand US dollars per semester.

A: Okay, well.

B: And, did I mention our on-campus housing? Students can stay in our newly renovated dorms for as little as three thousand dollars per month!

A: Sounds good. Well. I'll just grab one of your flyers.

B: Sir, you got the wrong flyer. Sir, sir!

## Key Vocabulary

overview	<i>N</i>	a general review
wide range	<i>P</i>	a variety
rank	<i>V</i>	place something in a particular position
tuition	<i>N</i>	school fee
semester	<i>N</i>	one of two divisions of an academic year
dorm	<i>N</i>	a room for student to sleep in
on-campus housing	<i>A</i>	flats or apartments in school
flyer	<i>N</i>	a small sheet that advertises a product

## Supplementary Vocabulary

admission	<i>N</i>	the right of entrance
-----------	----------	-----------------------



Learn English on your Terms

fraternity	<i>N</i>	a group of persons associated by or as if by ties of brotherhood.
spring break	<i>N</i>	a school holiday, usually for a week, during March

## The Office - Presentation Series 9 - Summary and Conclusion (C0295)

Mr. Ford: Right everyone. I apologize that I can't show you the marketing campaign today, but next week you will all have the opportunity to see it for yourselves, and I have no doubt that you will be impressed. Let me wrap up the presentation by summarising my key points.

Mr. Ford: As I mentioned at the outset, 2010 represents a key year for Alpha computers. The recession is hopefully behind us. It is clear to everyone in the computer industry that demand is booming, especially in the developing markets.

Mr. Ford: If we are to succeed in this ultra-competitive field then we really need to push forward and offer our customers products that meet their needs on all levels. As I hope I have illustrated, the x420 represents the kind of computer that can really satisfy those needs.

Mr. Ford: I gave you an idea of the kind of revenue we expect to hit in 2010 with the new x420 range, and believe me, this is really just the beginning. Once we establish the x420 in the market we have plans to continue to expand our range with ever more revolutionary and impressive products.

Mr. Ford: Alpha computers is dedicated to innovation and improvement. I really see no limit to our potential as long as we stick to the principles I stressed earlier: quality, excellence and service.

Mr. Ford: Before we move on to the Q and A section I'd really like to leave you with a quote that really sums up everything that we've discussed today, and hopefully it will provide you with the same inspiration that it gives me.

Mr. Ford: As the great Henry Ford once said "Quality means doing it right, when no one is looking" Well, in fact our customers are looking; they are looking for us to lead the way and to give them the quality that our competitors cannot. We cannot let them down!

## Key Vocabulary

impress	V	cause someone to feel admiration
wrap up	P	to finish or end (something)
boom	V	to grow or expand suddenly
sum up	P	to tell information again using fewer words
at the outset	P	at the beginning of something

## Supplementary Vocabulary

trend	N	the general course or prevailing tendency
Emphasis	N	special stress laid upon, or importance attached to
illustration	N	the act of clarifying or explaining



## Global View - Vegan Or Vegetarian? (C0296)

A: Hey Julie, you want to go grab something to eat?

B: Sure! What do you feel like having?

A: I really feel like having a big juicy steak!

B: Oh. ok. I don't eat meat, but that's fine, I am sure wherever we are going they will have other options right?

A: I didn't know you were a vegetarian!

B: I'm not, I am a vegan.

A: A what?

B: A vegan. I don't eat or use any animal based products. I don't wear leather, eat eggs, drink milk or anything that comes from an animal. I used to be a pescatarian before, which basically means you don't eat meat, but still have fish and seafood.

A: Wow! That's interesting! It must be tough!

B: It's a bit difficult to find vegetarian friendly restaurants sometimes, but since more and more people are vegetarians or vegans nowadays, it's getting a bit less difficult.

### Key Vocabulary

feel like	P	have an inclination or desire for
steak	N	piece of cow meat
vegetarian	N	a person who does not eat meat or fish
vegan	N	a person who does not eat or use animal products
leather	A	made with animal skin that is chemically treated
come from	P	originates from
more and more	P	continuing to become larger in number

### Supplementary Vocabulary

vegetable	<i>N</i>	kind of food that is not meat
meat	<i>N</i>	kind of food that is not a vegetable
milk	<i>N</i>	substance coming from a cow
hippie	<i>N</i>	a person whose behavior, dress, etc, implied a rejection of conventional values

## The Weekend - Ordering At An Italian Restaurant

(C0297)

A: Good evening ladies. My name is Josh and I'll be your server tonight. May I take your order?

B: Do you have any recommendations?

A: Well, I personally like the chicken penne with cream mushroom sauce, but the prawn fettuccine is also very nice.

B: Hmm. I'd like to have the grilled chicken, but can I have spaghetti instead of penne?

A: Of course, mam. And for you?

C: I... ah..I'll have the horse tripe.

### Key Vocabulary

server                    N                    a waiter or waitress

recommendation     N                    a suggestion or proposal

prawn                    N                    a large shrimp

fettuccine	N	pasta in the shape of long narrow strips
spaghetti	N	pasta dish originally from Italy
penne	N	a type of Italian pasta
horse tripe	N	the stomach of a horse used as food

### Supplementary Vocabulary

parmesan	N	a type of cheese, usually goes with spaghetti
pizza	N	an Italian dish, round in shape
calzone	N	a turnover made of pizza dough, usually containing cheese
ricotta	N	a soft Italian cheese that resembles cottage cheese.

## The Office - Presentation Series 10 - The Q and A Session (C0298)

Jonathan: Well everyone, I'm sure you'd like to join me in thanking Michael for what was a really inspirational presentation. Sincere thanks Michael.

Jonathan: Now, I'm sure many of you will be keen to ask some questions, so I'd like to open it up a Q and A session. Please raise your hand if you have any questions at all. Janice, go ahead.

Janice: Yes thank you Jonathan. I would just like to go back to the comment Mr. Ford made in regards to our competitors, particularly Orange. Now as you know, Orange has established themselves as the market leader in the high-end lap-top market.

Janice: How does Mr. Ford expect to compete with a company that has such a huge reputation and huge resources?

Mr. Ford: Well Janice, first of all, thanks for a very good question. I think you have hit the nail on the head actually. Orange are the global leaders precisely because of their size and power.

Mr. Ford: But, although we can't compete in terms of size I do believe we hold an advantage in terms of dedication to customer service. Yes, I admit this is a David and Goliath battle, but don't forget who won that contest.

Frank: Erm, Mr Ford. Could you elaborate on the actual technical details of the x420 a little more?

Mr. Ford: I'd love to but I think we are a little pressed for time right now. However Jonathan has all the technical specs for you on the power-point presentation, which you can look over in your own time.

Marcie: Mr. Ford. One final question. Would you like to join me for a game of golf this Sunday?

### Key Vocabulary

inspiration      *N*      stimulation or arousal of the mind, feelings

open      it      *P*      begin; start  
up

in re-	P	about
gards		
hit the nail on the head	P	to say something that is exactly right
elaborate	V	to explain something in a more detailed way
pressed for time	P	don't have enough time

### Supplementary Vocabulary

interpret	V	to construe or understand in a particular way
precise	A	definite or exact in statement
jargon	N	any talk or writing that one does not understand
in a rush	P	requiring speed or urgency



Learn English on your Terms

put forth

P

to give an idea or question e.g I put forth this question to challenge your idea's



## Daily Life - Returning A Product (C0299)

A: Hi I would like to return this TV.

B: Sure, do you have the receipt?

A: Yeah here you go. Actually I also want to return this keyboard.

B: Ok, may I ask what is the reason for returning these products?

A:: The TV flickers a lot when I am watching a movie and at times the image is not very clear.

B: I see, and what about the keyboard?

A: I spilled some coffee on it and now it won't work.

B: I am sorry sir, but we can only exchange or refund defective products, we cannot take responsibility for misuse or damages.

A: Fine! I don't know why they make these things so delicate anyways.

## Key Vocabulary

receipt	N	a piece of paper that proves you bought something
return	V	go back to the original place
keyboard	N	controller device for computer
product	N	things that a company makes or sells
flicker	V	to move to and fro; vibrate; quiver
spill	V	to cause or allow to run or fall from a container
exchange	V	give something and receive something in return
defective	A	having a mistake or error
refund	V	to get your money back
delicate	A	fragile; easily damaged

## Supplementary Vocabulary

complaint	<i>N</i>	an expression of discontent
invoice	<i>N</i>	a document issued by a seller to a buyer showing the goods or services supplied and money due
policy	<i>N</i>	a plan of action adopted or pursued by an individual, government, party, business
quality	<i>N</i>	degree or standard of excellence
warranty	<i>N</i>	guarantee given to the purchaser by the dealer, manufacturer will make repairs or replace defective parts free of charge for a stated period of time.



## Daily Life - Online Dating (C0300)

A: Do you want to hang out tomorrow?

B: Oh, I can't. I have a date!

A: Really? Wow with who?

B: This girl I've been chatting with for the past couple of months. She's really cool and she's driving over here this weekend.

A: Wait a minute, you mean you met her online?

B: Yeah! I signed up for a website called match. and it is great! You fill in all your details and preferences, like if you are a smoker or if you have any pets. Then you find people that have similar characteristics and you can email them or chat.

A: That is kind of weird! What if she is a psycho or something like that?

B: It's the same as meeting people anywhere and dating them! I am just tired of going to bars or being set up for dates by my friends! I think this is a really cool alternative, especially if you are a bit shy.

A: I guess it does seem logical. I'll have to check it out!

### Key Vocabulary

date	N	a appointment, engagement, or occasion with another person
chat	V	talk with another person
online	R	over the internet
psycho	A	a crazy person
characteristic	A	a distinguishing feature or quality
preference	N	the favoring of one thing over another
hang out	P	spend time with a friend

### Supplementary Vocabulary

reject	V	to refuse to accept
--------	---	---------------------



Learn English on your Terms

<b>hunk</b>	<i>N</i>	a handsome man
<b>compatible</b>	<i>A</i>	able to exist together harmoniously
<b>ugly</b>	<i>A</i>	very unattractive or unpleasant to look at
<b>sexy</b>	<i>A</i>	excitingly appealing; glamorous

## The Weekend - Vampires (C0301)

A: You want to go to the movies tonight?

B: Sure! What's playing?

A: The new Twilight movie!

B: Twilight? As in the vampire movies? No way I am watching that. I don't understand why everyone is so excited about these films about vampires. It doesn't make sense.

A: Of course it does. It's like a modern tale of Romeo and Juliet. You have a couple that is in love but can't be together because they are so different. Add in the fact that immortality and super human strength is really sexy and there you have it! Plus the cast is hip, young people that make the movie even more enticing.

B: I don't buy into that. I think it's just a fad. Pretty soon this will pass and everyone will be into werewolves or zombies!

## Key Vocabulary

movie

N

movie

vampire	N	a dead person who sucks the blood of living person
tale	N	a story
fad	N	a temporary fashion or notion
werewolves	N	a wolf with extraordinary strength
zombie	N	a dead corpse, likes to eat brain
immortal	A	live forever
entice	V	to lead on by exciting hope or desire
hip	A	cool, fashionable
super human strength	P	extraordinary power

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Ghoul	N	spirit or ghost
-------	---	-----------------



Learn English on your Terms

horror	A	centered upon or depicting terrifying events
nightmare	N	a terrifying dream in which the dreamer experiences feelings of helplessness
fan	N	an enthusiastic devotee or follower of a celebrity, pastime, etc
obsess	V	to think about something unceasingly or persistently

## Global View - Phobias (C0302)

A: Are you excited about your trip next month?

B: Yes and no. I can't wait to go to Europe, but at the same time I am terrified.

A: Why?

B: Well, I have aerophobia. I have a chronic fear of flying.

A: Oh really? I have an uncle who is also terrified of flying. It's not that bad though, I mean, it is pretty scary to be in this big machine flying through the air at seven hundred miles per hour. I actually have arachnophobia.

B: You're scared of spiders? I actually have two more phobias. Acrophobia and glossophobia.

A: I guess that explains why you are afraid of flying, but public speaking is not that bad.

B: Are you kidding? When I get on stage, my palms start to sweat, I get really nervous and I can hardly speak.

A: Well, I must confess I am a bit claustrophobic. I hate being in an elevator for more than 5 seconds.

B: We are such weirdos right?

### Key Vocabulary

trip	N	journey to a place
terrify	A	to fill with terror or alarm; make greatly afraid
aerophobia	N	an abnormal fear of drafts of air, gases, or airborne matter
chronic	A	constant, habitual
phobia	N	irrational fear of a specific object, activity
glossophobia	N	the fear of public speaking
Acrophobia	N	a pathological fear of heights

sweat	V	to excrete (perspiration, moisture, etc.) through the pores of the skin
nervous	A	being worried about what might happen
kidding	V	fool or joke
claustrophobia	N	an abnormal fear of being in enclosed or narrow places.
confess	V	To admit or acknowledge something damaging
weirdo	N	a strange person

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Venustraphobia	N	the fear of beautiful women
panic	N	a sudden overwhelming fear
scary	A	causing fright or alarm.



## Daily Life - Mexican Food (C0303)

A: Hello sir, welcome to Pistolera restaurant. May I take your order?

B: Yes, I would like the chicken cheese enchiladas with a side of guacamole.

A: I'm sorry sir, but we ran out of chicken. May I suggest our delicious beef burritos or cheese quesadillas? Both include a side of guacamole and jalapenos.

B: Sure I'll have the burrito.. Do you have nachos?

A: Of course sir. Our nachos come with melted cheese and chili.

B: Sounds good.

A: Would you like anything to drink?

B: Sure, I'll have a Corona.

## Key Vocabulary

corona	N	a type of beer from mexico
jalapeno	N	a spicy green pepper
guacamole	N	a dip of mashed avocado mixed with tomato, onion, and seasonings
melt	V	to become liquefied by warmth or heat
burrito	N	a tortilla folded over a filling

### Supplementary Vocabulary

taco	N	crisply fried tortilla folded over and filled
tortilla	N	a kind of thin pancake made from corn, cooked on a hot griddle until dry
dip	N	a liquid or soft substance into which something is dipped



Learn English on your Terms

Churro

N

a Spanish and Mexican pastry resembling a doughnut or cruller and made from deep-fried dough

## Daily Life - Neat Freak (C0304)

- A: Ugg, this bathroom is a pigsty!
- B: Helen, why do you keep flushing the toilet? What's wrong?
- A: I just can't stand it. It's really gross in here! There's a stain on the toilet seat, and the floor was wet and slippery. So I cleaned it!
- B: You did what? Helen, I know it's gross, but I've seen many public washrooms that are much worse. Why are you cleaning the counter top? are you out of your mind?
- A: I can't help myself; it's just so disgusting in here!
- B: Helen, this is not like your own bathroom. Just leave it to the cleaners, okay?
- A: Hang on. I'm just gonna quickly wipe the sink and sweep the floor.
- B: You're such a neat freak! I'm outta here!

## Key Vocabulary

<b>pigsty</b>	<i>N</i>	a dirty or untidy place
<b>flush</b>	<i>V</i>	to cause water to clean a toilet
<b>gross</b>	<i>A</i>	disgusting
<b>are you out of your mind</b>	<i>P</i>	saying to indicate someone's idea or actions is unbelievable or crazy e.g are you out of your mind? you can't fight a bear!
<b>neat freak</b>	<i>P</i>	likes to have every element of their life tidy and in order

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>dump</b>	<i>N</i>	an accumulation of discarded garbage
<b>litter</b>	<i>N</i>	scattered rubbish
<b>tidy</b>	<i>A</i>	neat, orderly, or trim
<b>revolting</b>	<i>A</i>	disgusting; repulsive
<b>odour</b>	<i>N</i>	smell, aroma



## The Weekend - Bowling (C0305)

A: Alright, so the first thing that you need to know about bowling is that you should never cross that line where the lane begins.

B: Why not?

A: Because they polish and oil it to make the ball slide down. If you step there you will slip and fall.

A: OK, so I got my bowling shoes, my ball, our names on the scorecard, so now, how the heck do I play this?

A: You throw the ball down the lane and try to knock down all the pins. If you do, that is called a strike. If you don't knock them all down on the first try, then you get a chance to get the spare. After ten frames, we add up the points and see who has the most. Three hundred is a perfect score, but very hard to get.

B: Got it! OK, I'm gonna give it a go. Oh no! My ball went in the gutter!

A: I told you, its harder than you think. Now let a pro show you how it's done.

## Key Vocabulary

bowling	G	a game where you try to knock pins down with a ball
polish	V	to make smooth and glossy, esp. by rubbing or friction
lane	N	any narrow or well-defined passage, track, channel, or course
knock	V	to strike in collision
gutter	N	a sunken channel on each side of the lane
pro	A	an expert player

## Supplementary Vocabulary

split	N	separate or apart
perfect game	P	a game in bowling of 12 consecutive strikes.



Learn English on your Terms

pin	<i>N</i>	a small, slender, often pointed piece of wood, metal
strike	<i>V</i>	to hit, collide
gutter ball	<i>P</i>	A ball that goes into the gutter



## The Weekend - Pick Up Lines (C0306)

A: Let's go out tomorrow night. We can go to a bar and try to find you a girlfriend.

B: I don't think that's a good idea. I am just not good with approaching someone and starting up a conversation.

A: Maybe you just need a few pick up lines, you know, break the ice.

B: Pick up lines don't work!

A: Come on! You can just walk up to a girl and say: "If you were a booger I'd pick you first."

B: What? Come on! That's just lame! No girl would fall for that!

A: Fine, then you can say: "So there you are! I've been looking all over for YOU, the woman of my dreams!"

B: That's a good one! I think that's pretty funny.

A: Yeah, so you make her laugh, you make a fool of yourself a little bit and then you buy her a drink.

B: Ok, how does this sound: “I was so enchanted by your beauty that I ran into that wall over there. So I am going to need your name and number for insurance purposes.”

A: Nice! Let’s go!

### Key Vocabulary

bar	N	a place one goes to drink alcohol
girlfriend	N	a female friend with whom a man or boy is romantically involved with
break the ice	P	to overcome reserve, awkwardness, or formality within a group
lame	A	not cool
pick up lines	P	conversation opener with the intent of engaging an unfamiliar person for romance or dating.

fool	V	a silly person
enchant	V	to delight to a high degree,charm

### Supplementary Vocabulary

seduce	V	to persuade or induce to have sexual intercourse
flirt	V	toy or play with another's affections
connection	N	a bond between two people
wing man	P	Wingman is a role that a person may take when a friend needs support with approaching potential partners
stud	N	a man seen as desirable



## The Office - Small Talk Series - Showing Interest

(C0307)

Tina: Hey Michelle, this is my friend James. He's visiting Shanghai from New York.

Michelle: Oh, hi James. Nice to meet you. So, uh. you visiting for business or pleasure?

James: Well, actually a little of both. I'm meeting some business contacts but I'm also taking some Mandarin classes too.

Michelle: That's cool! How's it going?

James: Well, I'm finding the classes pretty tough actually, but I'm having a great time in Shanghai. It's really an amazing city.

Michelle: It sure is. Are you staying for long?

James: Only two weeks unfortunately. I wish I could stay longer but.

Michelle: Well listen, if you need someone to show you the sights then just call me. I'm having a little get together at my new apartment next week so if you want to drop by then.

James: That sounds great. I'd love to! Let me take down your number Michelle.

### Key Vocabulary

visit	G	go to someplace in a formal way
class	N	lesson
sight	N	something seen or worth seeing
get together	P	spend time together
pleasure	N	feeling of happiness
drop by	V	an informal visit

### Supplementary Vocabulary

rendezvous	N	an agreement between two or more persons to meet at a certain time and place.
reunion	N	the act of uniting again.



## Daily Life - Boxers and Briefs (C0308)

A: Lily, I found a pair of men's boxers in the laundry machine this morning!

B: What?! That's weird. Are they your boyfriend's?

A: Nah, Kevin only wears briefs. Plus, this pair is extra small!

B: What do they look like?

A: They're light blue with thin pink stripes... Oh, and there's a Snoopy on it which is hilarious, hahah...

B: Those are my undies!

### Key Vocabulary

boxers	N	loose-fitting shorts with an elastic waistband
--------	---	--

laundry	N	clothes that need to be washed
---------	---	--------------------------------

briefs	N	close-fitting, legless underpants with an elastic waistband
hilarious	A	very amusing
undies	N	underwear (informal)

### Supplementary Vocabulary

bra	N	a woman's undergarment for supporting the breasts
iron	N	an appliance with a flat metal bottom, used when heated, as by electricity, to press or smooth clothes
maid	N	a female servant
washing machine	N	appliance for washing clothing

## Global View - Indian Food (C0309)

A: So where is this mystery restaurant that we are going to?

B: It's an Indian restaurant! I know you have never had Indian food, so I thought you might want to try.

A: That sounds great! I am craving some type of beef dish.

B: Well, Indian cuisine actually doesn't serve beef. You see, cows are a sacred animal, a very important element in the Hindu religion, so beef is not eaten.

A: I see, so what are we having? Chicken?

B: There are many amazing dishes to choose from. We can have some chicken tikka masala which is an amazing curry. It's a bit spicy, but I think you can handle it.

A: Sounds good! I have always heard that Indian spices give a rich flavor to food.

B: Yeah. Also, we can have some Naan bread which is baked in a tandoori oven. Since you don't use any utensils to eat, you can use this bread to scoop up the curry or rice.

A: What about veggies?

B: They have a good variety of vegetable based dishes like palak paneer, vegetable samosas or Daal.

A: It all sounds exquisite! I can't wait!

### Key Vocabulary

mystery	N	mystery
Hindu	N	a person who adheres to the religion of Hinduism
cuisine	N	a style or quality of cooking
samosa	N	a stuffed pastry, triangular in shape.

daal	N	a meal containing lentils
exquisite	A	possessing qualities of unusual delicacy and fine
chicken tikka masala	N	Chicken marinated in yogurt and spices, served in
sacred	A	holy
craving	V	want something very much

### Supplementary Vocabulary

cricket	N	a game played by two teams of eleven players on a field with a wicket at either end of a 22-yard pitch
secret	N	done, made, or conducted without the knowledge of others
spiritual	A	of or pertaining to sacred things or matters



Learn English on your Terms

savory

A

pleasant or agreeable in  
taste or smell



## The Office - Small Talk 2 (C0310)

James: So Michelle, let me introduce you to Maria. She's my colleague from Brazil. Maria, this is Michelle.

Maria: Hi Michelle. So what do you do here in Shanghai? I mean, what work do you do?

Michelle: I work in advertising right now. How about you?

Maria: I'm actually in the wine business.

Michelle: That sounds really great. I love wine myself! Is this your first time to Shanghai Maria?

Maria: No actually, I often visit. I usually come to China for business at least once a year. Also, I love the restaurants in Shanghai, so that's a good reason to come.

Michelle: Me too. Actually, there's a great Brazilian restaurant I recommend. I mean, the food is delicious but the service isn't so good. I often like to get together with friends and have a great barbecue there.

James: We should go together some time.

Michelle: Wonderful idea! I'd love that!

### Key Vocabulary

recommend	V	say something deserves to be chosen
service	N	an act of help or assistance
colleague	N	the person who works with you together
barbecue	N	a framework, as a grill or a spit, or a fireplace for cooking meat or vegetables over an open fire

introduce	V	to present (a person) to another so as to make acquainted.
-----------	---	--

### Supplementary Vocabulary

acquaint	V	to become more or less familiar, aware of something
advocate	V	to speak or write in favor of; support or urge by argument
impression	N	a strong, favourable, or remarkable effect
picnic	N	excursion or outing in which the people carry food with them and share a meal in the open air.



## The Office - Sorry I'm Late (C0311)

Maggie Gao: Okay everyone, shall we begin?

Bill: Sorry Maggie, but we are missing a few people. Can we hang on a sec?

Maggie Gao: Well, I did say eleven o'clock sharp, and it's now five past so. . . .

James: Hi everyone, I'm so sorry I'm late. It's raining cats and dogs outside and I had to wait ages for a taxi.

Maggie Gao: Okay James, take a seat quickly please. Right, the subject of the meeting is.

Sally: Hi guys. Please excuse me ,I was held up in traffic.

Maggie Gao: Right, as I was saying the subject of the m. . . .

Bruno: Hi Maggie. I'm terribly sorry. The traffic is murder out there.

Maggie Gao: Sit down Bruno! Okay now, as you are aware, the topic for this meeting is ‘The importance of being punctual’. Who would like to start?

### Key Vocabulary

hang on	P	hold on
a sec		
wait ages	V	wait for a very long time
hold up	V	stuck
I am terribly sorry	P	Very sorry
please	R	pardon
excuse me		

### Supplementary Vocabulary

late	A	occurring, coming, or being after the usual or proper time
absent	A	not in a certain place at a given time



Learn English on your Terms

excuse	V	to offer an apology for; seek to remove the blame of
slack	A	negligent; careless



## The Weekend - Ordering Drinks (C0312)

A: What Can I get you?

B: I'll have a Cosmo please.

C: Dude! You can't order a Cosmo! That's a ladies drink, you're embarrassing me!

B: What are you talking about? It's a good drink!

C: It's too soft! Order something with a little more kick to it!

B: Fine! I'll have a sex on the beach.

C: You have to be kidding me!

B: Come on! It's delicious! Especially when served in a pineapple or coconut.

C: Forget it, I'm ordering for you. I'll have a Scotch on the rocks and my friend here will have a Manhattan. Put it on my tab. Here now this is a real drink!

B: That's strong! This is going to get me wasted!

C: That's the idea!

### Key Vocabulary

dude	N	informal way of calling a man
kick	N	power
tab	N	an account of expenses that is required to be paid when wanted.
wasted	A	drunk
kidding	V	fool or joke
order	N	ask for something
cosmo	N	name of a drink
sex on the beach	N	alcoholic drink that contains Schnapps, peach Vodka, Cranberry Juice and Orange Juice

### Supplementary Vocabulary

bloody mary	N	alcoholic drink that contains vodka, tomato juice, Worcestershire sauce, Tabasco sauce, celery stick and ground white pepper
hang over	P	Unpleasant physical effects following the heavy use of alcohol
bouncer	N	a person who is employed at a bar or night-club to eject disorderly persons.
disk jockey	N	a person who selects, plays, and announces records at a nightclub or radio station



## The Office - Small talk 3 (C0313)

Grace: Hey Michelle! Is that you?

Michelle: Wow, Grace! Long time no see! Where have you been?

Grace: Oh yeah. Well you see I got a promotion, so I moved to the new Pudong office last September.

Michelle: You did? Congratulations!

Grace: Thanks a lot. So how are things with you Michelle?

Michelle: Well, same old same old you know. Nothing much has changed here.

Grace: Are you still seeing Chris?

Michelle: No, actually we split up last month.

Grace: Oh dear. I'm sorry to hear that.

Michelle: But I met a really cute guy last night at a networking party so, . . . . . well, let's just wait and see.....

Grace: Good for you Michelle!

### Key Vocabulary

long time	P	a greeting phrase used after two friends have not seen each other for a long time
no see		not
same old	P	nothing new
same old		
promotion	N	new position
networking	N	meeting new people
split	V	leave here

### Supplementary Vocabulary

demote	V	to reduce to a lower grade, rank, class, or position
depart	V	to go away, leave



Learn English on your Terms

**blog**

*N*

a journal written online and accessible to users of the internet



## Daily Life - Making A Collect Call (C0314)

A: This is the operator, how may I help you?

B: Yes, I would like to make a collect call.

A: Ok sir, please dial the number. Now please state your name.

B: Tommy.

A: Please wait a moment. Hello, you have a collect call from Tommy. Would you like to accept the charges?

C: Yes of course.

A: Dad?

C: Yeah Tommy, what happened are you ok?

A: Yeah dad everything is ok. I'm calling you because I want to know if it's ok for me to go to my friend's house today after school.

C: Yeah sure no problem. You scared me to death! I've told you to make a collect call in case of an emergency only! Why didn't you call me from your mobile phone?

B: I ran out of credit and I also didn't have twenty five cents N forthe payphone. Sorry dad.

### Key Vocabulary

operator	N	a person who operates a telephone switchboard
charge	N	amount of money to be paid
credit	N	the positive balance in a person's mobile phone account
payphone	N	a public telephone operated by coins or a phonecard
collect call	N	a telephone call that the receiving party is asked to pay for

### Supplementary Vocabulary

network	<i>N</i>	telephones interconnected by telecommunication equipment or cables
landline	<i>N</i>	a home telephone
connect	<i>V</i>	to establish communication between
reception	<i>N</i>	the quality attained in receiving radio or television broadcasts

## The Office - Sending A Quote Via Email (C0315)

Tracy: Melanie, can you help me with something? We need to finalize the account with the Mexican Embassy and, I need some advice on phrasing this letter correctly in English.

Melanie: Sure Tracy, let me just get my laptop. all set.

Tracy: Okay, so. . . . . toWhom It May Concern, I am writing.

Melanie: Um, Tracy? I think that's a little too formal. I know you want to be polite but you've already made contact with them, so in English you can be more relaxed inthe opening. . . .

Tracy: Okay, more relaxed. Got it. . . . Hey Sally, what's up? It's Tracy here, just.

Melanie: Okay Tracy, now it's too relaxed! You've still got to show some respect. How about starting with "Dear Ms. Cooper, I'm writing to confirm. ?



Tracy: Great, okay. “Dear Miss Cooper, I’m writing to confirm the final quotation forthe full page back cover color advertisement you requested forthe spring issue of Voila magazine.

Melanie: That’s great. . . .

Tracy: “ The final costing, including advert design and production, comes to forty-five thousand six hundred RMB. We want payment ten working days before publication or we will cancel the ad. Thanks for. ”

Melanie: Woo, okay back up a second Tracy. That’s too direct. Can I suggest you say, ” please note thatfinal payment is due two working weeks before publication? You don’t want to offend her.

Tracy: Oops okay. You are right. Then I can just end with “All the best, Tracy”

Melanie: Hmmmm, maybe, but I’d play it safeand just finish with “Yours Sincerely”. That’s more professional.

Tracy: Oh, Melanie you are a life saver, thank you!

## Key Vocabulary

costing	V	charge, make someone pay
please note that	N	being informed of something
quotation	N	a statement of the price of an item or service
play it safe	P	go with the safest option
I am writing to	N	introduction

## Supplementary Vocabulary

cargo	N	freight of a ship, airplane
link	N	a word icon, etc, on which a user may click to move to another part of or different website, document



Learn English on your Terms

attachment	N	omething attached, as a document added to a letter, or an picture in a email etc
etiquette	N	conventional requirements as to social behavior; proprieties of conduct as established in any class or community or for any occasion.

## Daily Life - Small Talk Series 4 - Discussing Recent Workevents (C0316)

Jeremy: Hi Michelle. Do you need to use the photocopier?

Michelle: Oh hi Jeremy. No please, go ahead. So how are you Jeremy? I was talking to Linda about you only last week.

Jeremy: Oh I'm fine thanks. I'm super busy with work actually. Did you hear about the Lawson contract?

Michelle: No, tell me more.

Jeremy: Well, I was discussing the contract with Bill and he said that they met the head of Lawsons last week.

Michelle: And.

Jeremy: And hopefully they are going to confirm the deal on Wednesday, fingers crossed

Michelle: That's great news Jeremy. Congratulations! Anyway, I must get back, but give my regards to your wife Monica.

Jeremy: I will Michelle. Speak to you soon.

### Key Vocabulary

contract	N	written agreement between two or more people
fingers crossed	P	hope for luck
deal	N	price
regard	N	good wishes
head	N	top boss

### Supplementary Vocabulary

hopeful	A	full of hope; expressing hope
executive	N	a person or group of persons having administrative or supervisory authority in an organization



Learn English on your Terms

sincere

A

not hypocritical or de-  
ceitful

## The Office - First Paycheck (C0317)

Emily: Hey, Susan. Have you got a sec? I have some questions about my paycheck.

Susan: You bet, Emily. Pull up a chair.

Emily: Well, this is my first paycheck here in the States and there are a few things I don't understand. First off, what is this FICA, and SUI Y tax, and why are there deductions both for Medicare and for my health insurance plan?

Susan: OK, let's start from the top of your pay stub. This number here represents your gross pay.

Emily: Yes, that's easy enough to understand.

Susan: Then here we have a series of deductions. First off are the federal ones. FICA stands for Federal Insurance Contribution Act, or something like that. It's your federal income tax. And then there's Social Security and Medicare, which are both federal programs to help you out after you retire or if you were unable to work.

Emily: All right, I see. So the Medicare isn't actually a health insurance I can use now.

Susan: That's right. Below the federal deductions are the state deductions. There's the state income tax, and then this SUI SDItax you were asking about is paying into an unemployment and disability fund that our state has set up, but you can see it's a pretty small quantity that they take.

Emily: Yeah, I don't mind giving them a dollar fifty for that. So there are two separate income taxes - one at a state level and one at a federal level?

Susan: That's right. Not all states have an income tax. Some use higher property taxes or sales taxes instead.

Emily: I see. All right, well I think everything else I can figure out on my own. The deductions for health insurance and my 401(K) are pretty self-explanatory. Thanks for your help, Susan.

Susan: No problem! All those deductions do add up, and nobody's net pay is as high as they'd like. I can understand why you'd want some explanation.

Emily: Yeah, I guess it's the same in the UK, I just never paid much attention. See you later!

## Key Vocabulary

stub	N	for keeping a record of the content of the part filled out and torn away.
federal	A	of or relating to a form of government or a country in which power is divided between one central and several regional governments
income	N	amount of money that you receive
fund	N	a sum of money or other resources whose principal or interest is set aside for a specific objective

**self-explanatory** A needing no explanation; obvious

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>basic</b>	A	elementary or simple
<b>jargon</b>	N	language peculiar to a particular trade, profession, or group
<b>welfare</b>	N	financial or other assistance to an individual or family from a city, state, or national government
<b>deposit</b>	V	to place for safekeeping or in trust
<b>tax</b>	N	a sum of money demanded by a government for its support or for specific facilities or services

## Global View - Allergies (C0318)

Jim: Argh...I feel terrible, I keep sneezing and my eyes are all watery, what's wrong with me?

Tom: Wow, you're not dying are you, it looks like you have a cold, you should take some medicine.

Jim: I don't think it's a cold, I feel fine if I move a few feet away from my desk.

Tom: Maybe we should put you into quarantine ha ha, jokes aside, I think you might have an allergy.

Jim: An allergy? I never thought about that, I don't think I'm allergic to pollen though and I'm desensitized to bee stings after being stung so many times, Hmm...

Jim: Ow! Why did you chuck that peanut at me?

Tom: Just checking if you're allergic to peanuts, I guess not.

Jim: Not funny! I could have gone into Anaphylactic Shock.



Tom: Okay my bad, how about dust? This office is full of it.

Jim: Yes the whole office is dusty yet I only feel affected near our desks!

Cat: Meow meow meow

Jim: You brought your cat into the office?!

Tom: Yes, it's Mr Snuffle's birthday today, I didn't want him to be alone on his special day!

Jim: ACHOO! Argh put it away ACHOO!

Tom: I guess we found the problem, you're allergic to cats!

## Key Vocabulary

pollen

N

the fertilizing element of flowering plants, consisting of fine, powdery, yellowish grains or spores

<b>desensitize</b>	<i>V</i>	to lessen the sensitivity of
<b>allergic</b>	<i>A</i>	have allergy towards something
<b>affect</b>	<i>V</i>	to act on; produce an effect or change in
<b>dust</b>	<i>N</i>	dry fine powdery material, such as particles of dirt, earth or pollen
<b>anaphylactic shock</b>	<i>N</i>	severe and sometimes fatal allergic reaction to a foreign substance such as bee venom
<b>quarantine</b>	<i>N</i>	a strict isolation imposed to prevent the spread of disease.

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>sneeze</b>	<i>V</i>	to expel air and nasal secretions from the nose involuntarily
<b>hayfever</b>	<i>N</i>	an allergic reaction to pollen, dust



Learn English on your Terms

**reaction**      *N*      action in response to some influence

**contagious**      *A*      capable of being transmitted by bodily contact with an infected person or object

## Daily Life - Small Talk 5 - Brief Talk With A Stranger

(C0319)

Older gentleman: Oh dear Miss, you are soaked! Wow, it's really raining heavily outside.

Michelle: Yes, it sure is. I had to run here from work! I need to rush as I'm on my lunch break.

Older gentleman: Well please, why don't you go ahead of me in line? I'm in no hurry.

Michelle: Oh, that's so nice of you! Thank you very much.

Older gentleman: My pleasure Miss. Actually, could you recommend what to eat here? I've never been here before.

Michelle: Sure. Well, the avocado sandwich is delicious, and it's the healthiest thing on the menu. Personally, I think the beef salad is the tastiest choice. I usually get that. Also, the milkshakes are the best milkshakes in town!

Older gentleman: Well, thanks for the suggestions.

man:

Michelle: Oh, don't mention it.

### Key Vocabulary

soak	V	to be thoroughly wet
rush	V	in a hurry
personally	R	as regards oneself
suggestion	N	idea about what someone should do
mention	V	talk about something briefly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

drench	V	to wet thoroughly
scrumptios	A	very pleasing
haste	N	urgent need of quick action

## Global View - Taking The GMAT (C0320)

Ash: I can't seem to progress up the career ladder no matter how hard I try and I have been here for 2 years already!

Mindy: Well, have you thought of getting an MBA? I heard it does wonders in getting you to the top.

Ash: An MBA hey. . . well my degree wasn't in business, the business schools won't be interested in me.

Mindy: Nonsense! The business schools measure your ability through a test called GMAT.

Ash: GMAT? What does that stand for and what will the test contain?

Mindy: Graduate Management Admission Test, it contains three parts; Analytical Writing Assessment, the Quantitative section, and the Verbal section. Not only does the test mark you on the number of questions answered but also on the difficulty.

Ash: Okay this sounds a little tough, how am I supposed to practice for this?

Mindy: Up to you, you could have a one on one session with a tutor or group sessions, you can also use free or private computer software. Going to church might help as well!

Ash: No matter what I do I'm going to ace this test and go on to become a corporate fat cat!

Mindy: Umm. . . That's the spirit!

### Key Vocabulary

corporate	A	related to business
management	N	the action of controlling an area of a business
graduate	N	person who finished university
GMAT	N	Graduate Management Admissions Test
analytical	A	pertaining to or proceeding by analysis
quantitative	A	type of information based in quantities

verbal	A	consisting of or in the form of words
MBA	N	Master of Business Administration
fat cat	P	A wealthy and privileged person

### Supplementary Vocabulary

greed	N	excessive desire, as for wealth or power
wizard	N	a person of amazing skill or accomplishment
market	N	the field of trade or business
thesis	N	a dissertation on a particular subject in which one has done original research
professor	N	a teacher of the highest academic rank in a college or university



## Global View - Thai Food (C0321)

A: What did you cook?

B: Well, as you know I was in Thailand last month, and I took a cooking class! So I prepared some of my favorite dishes.

A: Great idea! As long as I don't get food poisoning! So what is on the menu tonight?

B: Ok, for starters we have Tom Yam soup. It's a bit spicy, but really good!

A: This is delicious! The ginger and lemongrass really gives it a nice taste!

B: Now this next dish is one of the most famous. Foreigners call it papaya salad but the proper name is Tom Sam. It is a spicy salad made from a mix of fresh vegetables including shredded unripened papaya and tomato.

A: This is delicious! The combination of sour and spicy is really interesting! I could have this everyday!

B: Ok, now for the last and best dish in my opinion. This is called Pad Thai. It's stir-fried noodles with eggs, fish sauce, tamarind juice, red chili pepper plus bean sprouts, shrimp and tofu and garnished with crushed peanuts and coriander. It's practically Thailand's national dish!

A: Wow, this is great! I never knew Thai food was so creative and delicious!

B: Wantsome more?

A: I'm stuffed!

### Key Vocabulary

combination	N	the result of mixing two or more things together
stuff	A	filled with food; no longer hungry
creative	A	having the ability to think of new ideas

**foreigner** *N* a person not native to or naturalized in the country or jurisdiction under consideration

**delicious** *A* tasty

**dish** *N* food

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**Stir Fry** *V* technique for cooking food in a wok while stirring it

**Bitter** *A* Having or being a taste that is sharp, acrid, and unpleasant

**Sour** *A* Having a taste characteristic of that produced by acids; sharp, tart, or tangy

**Fishcake** *N* A food consisting of a filleted fish and potato patty sometimes coated in breadcrumbs or batter



Learn English on your Terms

Tangy

A

A distinctively sharp taste, flavor, or odor, as that of orange juice.



## The Office - Small Talk 6 - Talking About Yourself

(C0322)

Michelle: Excuse me, is this seat taken?

Stranger: No, please feel free.

Michelle: Thanks a lot.

Stranger: Do you work in Shanghai?

Michelle: Yes I do. How about you?

Stranger: No, I'm a tourist. This place is amazing! It's much bigger than I imagined, and much more exciting! There's so much to see here.

Michelle: You can say that again! It's much more modern than people imagine. Where are you from?

Stranger: Um, well let's see.....I'm from Kansas originally. A much quieter and more peaceful place than here, that's for sure!

Michelle: Uh huh....

Stranger: But I'm living in Paris right now.

Michelle: Oh Paris! Wonderful, I'd love to visit some time!

### Key Vocabulary

<b>tourist</b>	<i>N</i>	a person who is traveling
<b>amazing</b>	<i>A</i>	causing wonder or astonishment
<b>modern</b>	<i>A</i>	high-tech
<b>originally</b>	<i>R</i>	originally
<b>peaceful</b>	<i>A</i>	calm or tranquil
<b>imagine</b>	<i>V</i>	to form a mental image of
<b>exciting</b>	<i>A</i>	excite

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>ego</b>	<i>N</i>	self-importance
------------	----------	-----------------

vain	A	excessively proud of or concerned about one's own appearance, qualities, achievements
historic	A	well-known or important in history
seclude	A	sheltered or screened from general activity
off the beaten track	P	out of the way



## Daily Life - Cancelled Flight (C0323)

A: Good afternoon Sir, may I please see your passport and reservation?

B: Here you go.

A: I'm sorry sir, this flight has been cancelled due to some mechanical problems.

B: Cancelled! So what am I supposed to do now?

A: We apologize for any inconveniences that may be caused by this. If your flight is urgent, I can put you on a waiting list for another flight this evening, but it's on a first come first served basis, so there is no guarantee that you will be able to take that flight.

B: What's my other option?

A: If you can wait until tomorrow, we will put you up in a hotel for today and you can take scheduled flight for tomorrow morning.

B: That's fine. I'll do that then.

A: Thank you for your understanding sir. I will book your flight now.

### Key Vocabulary

reservation	N	an arrangement to secure accommodations at a restaurant or hotel
cancel	V	to decide that something will not happen
inconvenience	N	the quality or state of being inconvenient.
urgent	A	important
scheduled	V	planned at a specific time

### Supplementary Vocabulary

route	N	a customary or regular line of passage or travel
diversion	N	the act of diverting or turning aside, as from a course or purpose
delay	V	to put off to a later time



Learn English on your Terms

depart	v	to go away, leave
refund	v	To give back, especially money; return or repay:



## Global View - Thanksgiving Dinner (C0324)

A: So what are you doing for Thanksgiving?

B: Not much really. It's more of an American tradition, so back home we don't really celebrate it. In fact, I am not even sure of what exactly is being celebrated!

A: Well you know, it's a time to get together with all your family and be thankful for everything!

B: Yeah but, how did this holiday come to be?

A: Well, the first settlers of Massachusetts arrived there because of religious persecution from England and King James. Once in the New World, they befriended a native named Squanto, who taught them how to harvest food from the area such as corn.

B: Interesting! I am amazed how big and delicious thanksgiving dinners are!

A: Come to my house for Thanksgiving! We are having turkey, pumpkin pie, mashed potatoes with gravy, and lots of stuffing!

B: Count me in!

### Key Vocabulary

Thanksgiving	N	a holiday
tradition	N	special way of doing things that is accepted by a
celebrate	V	hold a feast in memorial of
religious	A	exhibiting religion, faithful, devout
persecution	N	to exterminate, drive away, or subjugate a people because of their religion, race, or beliefs
befriend	V	to make friends or become friendly with
native	A	of indigenous origin
harvest	N	the gathering of crops
gravy	N	sauce for meat, potatoes

turkey	N	a large American bird similar to the chicken
--------	---	--

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Cranberry	N	a firm, sour, edible, red berry
Pilgrim	N	the English settlers of New England, who celebrated the "First Thanksgiving" with the Natives
Cider	N	a fermented beverage made from apple juice
Cornucopia	N	a hollow, horn-shaped wicker basket filled with various kinds of festive fruit and vegetables
Yam	N	specifically its orange-fleshed cultivars, often marketed as 'yams' in North America and as 'kumara' in New Zealand

## The Office - Small Talk 7 - Talking About A Trip (C0325)

Jim: Hey Michelle. Good to see you. Are you at lunch?

Michelle: Oh hi Jim. No I just got back. I thought you were on vacation now.

Jim: No, I wish I was! I just got back from Spain actually.

Michelle: Oh wonderful! Have you been there before or was it your first time?

Jim: My first time. I've traveled around Europe a lot, but this was my first time to Spain. It was amazing, and the weather was just beautiful! No rain, and just sun, sun, sun....

Michelle: I'm so jealous of you. I've never been anywhere in Europe. I've always dreamed of traveling around and seeing the sights.

Jim: Well, I really recommend Spain. You really should go. Anyway, it's been great to catch up, but I must be going, this is my floor. Speak again soon I hope.

Michelle: For sure. Take care.

### Key Vocabulary

vacation	P	have holidays
jealous	A	feeling resentment against someone because of that person's rivalry, success, or advantages
catch up	P	meet each other
floor	N	one of the many levels of a building
take care	V	deal with
for sure	P	phrase of agreement

### Supplementary Vocabulary

envy	N	a feeling of discontent with regard to another's advantages, success, possessions
------	---	---



Learn English on your Terms

<b>tourist</b>	<i>N</i>	a person who is traveling
<b>rat race</b>	<i>P</i>	endless pursuit with little reward or purpose such as job.
<b>mid life crisis</b>	<i>P</i>	period of dramatic self-doubt that is felt by some individuals in the "middle years" or middle age of life

## Daily Life - Report Card (C0326)

A: Look, Jimmy's report came today.

B: Let's have a look. What is this? Where are all the grades?

A: He's in the third grade Sam! You see under each subject that he is being taught in school, he receives a mark from one to three. A one means his achievement or work is excellent. Here in Science for example he got a two, which means its satisfactory.

B: What about here in physical education?

A: He got a three here which means it's unsatisfactory. We should work on that with him.

B: So confusing! In my day we got an A or B if we were doing well and if we failed an exam we would get an F!

## Key Vocabulary

report	N	written document that provides information about a persons achievements
grade	N	a position or degree in a scale, as of quality, rank, size, or progression
subject	N	a branch of knowledge as a course of study
mark	N	a symbol used in rating conduct, proficiency, attainment
achievement	N	something that has been done or accomplished
satisfactory	A	fulfilling all demands or requirements
exam	N	formal test taken at the end of a course

### Supplementary Vocabulary

pass	V	to complete successfully
------	---	--------------------------

fail	V	to receive less than the passing grade or mark in an examination, class, or course of study
distinction	N	special honour, recognition
award	N	something awarded, such as a prize or medal
principal	N	the head or director of a school



## Daily Life - Buying A Pair Of Jeans (C0327)

A: Excuse me, can I try on this pair of jeans?

B: Sure. Let me see... I'm afraid we don't have any size eights left.

A: What are you talking about? I'm always a size four. Here, I'll try these.

B: They seem a bit too tight. Shall I find you a larger size?

A: No, they fit fine! They show off my curves perfectly!

B: Yeah, your love handles. Yeah, they sure do, although... here, you forgot to close this button.

A: Yeah right, I'll do it now...

### Key Vocabulary

try on

v

try on, to put clothing in order to judge its appearance and fit

tight	A	according little or no extra room; fitting closely
fit	V	to go into or through a particular space
love handles	N	bulges of fat at the sides of the waist.
show	V	get someone to pay attention

### Supplementary Vocabulary

loose	A	not fitting closely or tightly
change	V	to remove and replace
wear	V	to have on the body
denim	N	cotton for jeans, overalls, and other work and leisure garments
appropriate	A	suitable or fitting for a particular purpose, person, occasion, etc

## The Office - Small Talk 8 - Talking About Work (C0328)

Mr. Camp- Ah Michelle hi. I was hoping to see you.  
bell: How have you been? How's the family?

Michelle: Oh hello Mr. Campbell. I'm fine and Jack's doing well. How are you?

Mr. Camp- I'm fine thanks. I got your report this morning. Thank's for that. Are you joining the conference today?  
bell:

Michelle: Yes, I'm leaving at four pm.

Mr. Camp- Good, well we can discuss this more  
bell: then, but I think the figures are looking very good for this quarter.

Michelle: Yes, me too.

Mr. Camp- I'm planning to discuss the advertising  
bell: budget at the conference. I don't think we should continue with the TV advertising.

Michelle: No, me neither. It's far too expensive.

Mr. Camp-bell: Well, let's discuss this more at the conference. Maybe we can share a taxi there.

Michelle: Yes, sure.

### Key Vocabulary

conference	<i>N</i>	a formal meeting where many people talk about ideas
report	<i>N</i>	written document that provides information about something
discuss	<i>V</i>	talk about
quarter	<i>N</i>	one fourth of a calendar or fiscal year
budget	<i>N</i>	money available to spend
advertise	<i>V</i>	to announce or praise in order to raise awareness in a product or service

### Supplementary Vocabulary



Learn English on your Terms

marketing	<i>N</i>	act of buying or selling in a market
publish	<i>V</i>	to issue publicly the work of
segment	<i>N</i>	a different group
graph	<i>N</i>	a diagram representing a system of connections or interrelations among two or more things



## Daily Life - Going To The Bakery (C0329)

- A: Welcome to Al's Bakery. What can I get you?
- B: Hi! Let me get a dozen croissants, four blueberry muffins and a loaf of sourdough bread.
- A:: Sure. Would you like to have the loaf sliced?
- B: No, that's OK. Do you have any whole wheat bread?
- A: We are out at the moment. May I suggest some rye bread?
- B: Sure that sounds good. Do you have any cakes?
- A: We have various birthday cakes and also ice cream cakes.
- B: I'll just take a cheesecake.
- A: Will that be all?
- B: Yes.
- A: Your total is forty three dollars and twenty cents.

## Key Vocabulary

bakery	N	store that bakes and sells bread and pastries
loaf	N	any shaped or moulded mass of food
slice	V	cut into thin slices
wheat	N	the grain of some grasses, used in making flour, pasta, etc
bread	N	a kind of food made of flour
muffin	N	a small cake
blueberry	N	the edible, usually bluish berry of various shrubs
rye	N	a widely cultivated cereal grass
total	A	complete amount
cheesecake	N	a type of cake

**cake**                    *N*                    a baked dessert

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**sausage roll**            *N*                    a roll of sausage meat in pastry

**pavlova**                *N*                    a meringue cake topped with whipped cream and fruit

**pie**                      *N*                    a baked food having a filling of fruit, meat, pudding

**chop**                    *V*                    to cut or sever with a quick, heavy blow or a series of blows

**bake**                    *V*                    to cook by dry heat in an oven or on heated metal or stones

## The Weekend - Fortune Telling (C0330)

A: Look at this newspaper article about this famous local medium. It says that she is really gifted and so popular now, that she is booked solid with appointments for the next twelve months!

B: You don't really believe in all that hocus pocus mumbo jumbo do you?

A: Well I have had many friends that went to a psychic and got their palms read and most of the things the psychic told her came true!

B: Of course it does! They tell you general and obvious things like that you will be successful or have a big house. I think most of the times they are just scam artists.

A: Well historically it is a practice that many cultures share. Reading the tarot cards, in the east they would even read tea leaves! I even heard that there are people that make you smoke a cigar, and then read your ashes.

B: All superstitious nonsense! I would still like to go to one and see what he or she has to say, just for kicks.

A: Great! I'll make an appointment!

### Key Vocabulary

medium	N	a person through whom the spirits of the dead are alleged to be able to contact the living.
gifted	A	having great special talent or ability
psychic	A	sensitive to influences or forces of a nonphysical or supernatural nature.
historic	A	of, pertaining to, treating, or characteristic of history or past events
practice	V	to do or perform (something) repeatedly
tarot	N	any of a set of 22 playing cards bearing allegorical representations, used for fortunetelling

ash	<i>N</i>	the powdery residue of matter that remains after burning
superstition	<i>A</i>	irrational fear of what is unknown or mysterious
hocus	<i>P</i>	foolish religious reverence, ritual, or incantation
pocus		
mumbo		
jumbo		

### Supplementary Vocabulary

talent	<i>N</i>	a special natural ability or aptitude
far fetched	<i>A</i>	improbable
voodoo	<i>N</i>	black magic; sorcery
gypsie	<i>N</i>	a member of a people scattered throughout Europe and North America

## The Office - Small Talk 9 - Talking About The Weather

(C0331)

Melissa: Hey Michelle, jump in quick. It's pouring out there!

Michelle: Oh hi Melissa. Are you going to the conference too? I was planning to pick up Mr. Campbell.

Melissa: Yes, he told me. We need to pick him up at his hotel and then go to the conference.

Michelle: Oh I see, okay. So I heard you got married. Congratulations!

Melissa: Ah thank you! I'm very excited. We were going to get married next year, but then we decided to get married on holiday instead. It was wonderful.

Michelle: That sounds so romantic! Jack and I were hoping to get married in Europe next year, but we had to postpone our plans. We just don't have the money!

Melissa: I know what you mean. I think Shanghai is getting more and more expensive, don't you?

Michelle: I sure do. In my opinion it's actually becoming more expensive than back home.

Melissa: Definitely. Oh there's Mr. Campbell. Driver can you stop here please?

### Key Vocabulary

pouring	V	flowing or falling, as from one container to another, or into, over, or on something
romantic	A	relating to a feeling of love between a couple
postpone	V	decide to do something at a later time
definitely	R	certainly
in my opinion	P	way to express your opinion



Learn English on your Terms

## Supplementary Vocabulary

raincheck	N	an ordered or requested postponement of an invitation until a more convenient
cute	A	pleasingly pretty
drizzle	V	to rain gently and steadily in fine drops
cancel	V	to decide or announce that a planned event will not take place

## Daily Life - Setting Up Your Voice mail Message

(C0332)

A: Can you help me set up my voicemail message? I just got this service and I am not really sure what I am supposed to say.

B: Sure! You just basically gotta let the caller know who they called, and ask them for their contact information so you can call them back.

A: Ok, so can I say, “ This is Abby’s voicemail. I will call you later, so leave me your name and number”.

B: That’s more or less the idea, but try something that sounds more friendly.

A: Ok, so how about this, “ This is Abby and I am really happy you called! I promise I will give you a ring as soon as I can, so please leave me your name and number. Talk to you soon!”.

B: A little too friendly Abby. Just say this, “ Hi, you have reached Abby. I am unable to answer your call right now, but if you leave me your name and phone number, I will get back to you as soon as possible. Thanks”.

A: That's perfect! Can you say that again and record it for me?

### Key Vocabulary

voicemail	N	an electronic system enabling the recording and storage of voice messages.
record	N	set down in writing or voice or the like
basically	R	essentially, fundamentally
service	N	the supplying or a supplier of something required by the public.
set up	V	prepare

### Supplementary Vocabulary

fundamentally	A	a foundation or basis; basic
repair	V	to restore to a good or sound condition after decay or damage



Learn English on your Terms

available	A	accessible
tape	N	a ribbon of material used to record sound, images, data
static	A	atmospheric electricity interfering with radar, radio, the sending and receiving of wireless messages



## Global View - Human Anatomy (C0333)

A: OK class, so today we are going to continue with our anatomy class, today we will review everything we have learned. Can anyone tell me what the first major organ is?

B: The brain!

A: That's right the brain! It serves as a control center for the body, handling the processes of the central nervous system as well as cognition. Then what major organ is in our chest?

B: The heart!

A: Very good! It pumps blood throughout the body, using the circulatory system such as blood vessels and veins. Now let's not forget that our lungs provide oxygen to our heart and body to keep us alive! Now what about the organs that help us digest food?

B: The stomach and intestines!

A: Very good! Let's not forget that the stomach is the one that breaks down our food and our intestines process that food and then expel the waste. Are we forgetting anything?

B: Yeah! Our kidneys, liver and bladder!

A: Oh yes, you are right. Very important organs indeed.

B: So what do these organs do teacher?

A: Well, ummm, they...Time for a break! We can talk about it when you get back.

### Key Vocabulary

anatomy	N	the trunk of the body from the neck to the abdomen
organ	N	a grouping of tissues into a distinct structure e.g heart
brain	N	An organ enclosed in the skull that controls and co ordinates the body.
control	N	the ability to direct the actions of something

process	N	a planed series of steps or actions that leads to something
chest	N	The front of the body, from neck to the waist.
heart	N	An organ in the chest that pumps blood.
pump	V	To supply, to circulate.
blood	N	the fluid that circulates in the body.
lung	N	Body part that inflates with air and allows breathing
oxygen	N	a gas that we breath in order to live.
digest	V	to swallow and dissolve something.
stomach	N	the organ people use to digest food
expel	V	to release something.

liver	N	the organ used to produce blood
-------	---	---------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

leg	N	lower limbs of the body
arm	N	the upper limbs of the human body
skull	N	the bony framework of the head, enclosing the brain and supporting the face
embalm	V	to treat a dead body so as to preserve it, as with chemicals, drugs.
spine	N	backbone of the body

## The Office - Small Talk 10 - General Talk (C0334)

Mr. Campbell: Hi ladies. Thanks for picking me up. It's awful weather out there!

Michelle: Absolutely. It's been raining for hours.

Mr. Campbell: How are you Melissa? Are you okay?

Melissa: I'm great thanks, Mr. Campbell.

Michelle: Do you have any business trips planned soon Mr. Campbell?

Mr. Campbell: Of course. I'm always travelling! I will leave for London next Monday, and then I'll fly to Boston from there. It's going to be a busy month. How about you Michelle? Any vacation plans?

Michelle: Yes. Mike and I will travel to Beijing to see Mikes parents for Spring festival, and hopefully next year we will visit London. I hear it's a wonderful city.

Mr. Campbell: I couldn't agree more. London is really fantastic. It's my favorite city. I'm sure you'll have a great time.

### Key Vocabulary

vacation	N	holiday
absolutely	R	to a complete degree
awful	A	really bad
plan	V	To have something set to do in the future.
festival	N	a day or time of religious or other celebration

### Supplementary Vocabulary

random	A	without definite aim, purpose, method
terrible	A	extremely bad; horrible
parade	N	a large public procession



Learn English on your Terms

**unsure**

A

without sure knowledge; uncertain

## The Weekend - Going To The Playground (C0335)

- A: Hey honey! Where were you?
- B: I decided to take Kenny to the park and get some fresh air.
- A: How was it? Were there a lot of kids?
- B: It wasn't too crowded, but we had a great time! We got on the see-saw together, then went on a couple of different slides and then I tried to go with him in the jungle gym, but I didn't fit.
- A: Sounds like fun! When we go he always just likes to play in the sandbox.
- B: Yeah, but today he was really hyper. He even got on the monkey bars and then he went on to go on the swings for a half hour. I'm exhausted!
- A: You should go to the park more often since you don't go to the gym anymore!

## Key Vocabulary

park	N	an area of land, for the enjoyment of the public
crowded	A	filled to excess; packed.
see-saw	A	a plank used to balance
slide	V	a smooth surface for sliding on
sandbox	N	a box for holding sand, large enough for children to play in
hyper	A	overexcited; overstimulated
swing	N	the action of hitting the golf ball
exhausted	A	very tired

### Supplementary Vocabulary

merry-go-round	N	a revolving, circular platform with wooden horses or other animals, benches, etc., on which people may sit or ride
----------------	---	--

**hop  
scotch**      *N*      a children's game in which one hops across square spaces

**marbles**      *N*      a game for children in which a marble is propelled by the thumb to hit another marble

**skipping  
rope**      *N*      a length of rope that is swung around while someone jumps over it

## Daily Life - Christmas Traditions (C0336)

A: What are you doing awake?

B: I can't sleep...

A: But it's almost midnight!

B: Exactly. I'm too excited for Christmas morning. Also, I thought I heard Santa.

A: Really? How do you know it was Santa?

B: Well I heard that naughty boys and girls get coal in their stockings, so I thought I'd be nice and make Santa cookies. I even left out some milk. I heard someone in the kitchen eating the cookies, so I came downstairs!

A: Hmm... well I know that Santa won't come down the chimney with you hiding behind the tree, spying on him!

B: Really?

A: Really! Let's go back upstairs and get back to bed. That way, we can let Santa do his job. Then when you wake up, it will be Christmas already!

B: O-K...

A: Hey, honey! Is that you? Don't eat all the cookies  
- I want some, too!

### Key Vocabulary

midnight	N	twelve AM
christmas	N	the annual festival of the Christian church commemorating the birth of Jesus
santa	N	a figure of Christmas who brings presents to kids
naughty	A	disobedient; mischievous
coal	N	a black or dark-brown mineral
stocking	N	large sock; traditionally Christmas gifts are put in

cookie	N	a sweet baked food
chimney	N	a usually vertical structure that allows the passage of smoke
spying	V	to observe secretly

### Supplementary Vocabulary

elf	N	a creature with magical powers, often mischievous
reindeer	N	a type of large deer
angel	N	a spiritual being said to be from heaven
snow	N	ice crystals which fall from the sky
sled	N	a small vehicle consisting of a platform mounted on runners for use in traveling over snow or ice.

## Global View - The Night Before Christmas (C0337)

Twas the night before Christmas, when all through  
the house

Not a creature was stirring, not even a mouse;

The stockings were hung by the chimney with  
care,

In hopes that St. Nicholas soon would be there;

The children were nestled all snug in their beds,

And mama in her 'kerchief, and I in my cap,

Had just settled down for a long winter's nap,

When out on the lawn there arose such a clatter,

I sprang from the bed to see what was the matter.

Away to the window I flew like a flash,

Tore open the shutters and threw up the sash.



The moon onthe breast ofthe new-fallen snow  
Gave the lustre of mid-day to objects below,  
When, what to my wondering eyes should appear,  
But a miniature sleigh, and eight tiny reindeer,  
With a little old driver, so lively and quick,  
I knew in a moment it must be St. Nick.  
More rapid than eagles his coursers they came,  
And he whistled, and shouted, and called them by name;  
” Now, Dasher! now, Dancer! now, Prancer and Vixen!  
On, Comet! on Cupid! on, Donder and Blitzen!  
To the top ofthe porch! to the top ofthe wall!  
Now dash away! dash away! dash away all!



As dry leaves that before the wild hurricane fly,

When they meet with an obstacle, mount to the sky,

So up to the house-top the coursers they flew,

With the sleigh full of toys, and St. Nicholas too.

And then, in a twinkling, I heard on the roof

The prancing and pawing of each little hoof.

As I drew in my head, and was turning around,

Down the chimney St. Nicholas came with a bound.

He was dressed all in fur, from his head to his foot,

And his clothes were all tarnished with ashes and soot;

A bundle of toys he had flung on his back,



And he looked like a peddler just opening his pack.

His eyes - how they twinkled! his dimples how merry!

His cheeks were like roses, his nose like a cherry!

His droll little mouth was drawn up like a bow,

And the beard of his chin was as white as the snow;

The stump of a pipe he held tight in his teeth,

And the smoke it encircled his head like a wreath;

He had a broad face and a little round belly,

That shook, when he laughed like a bowlful of jelly.

He was chubby and plump, a right jolly old elf,

And I laughed when I saw him, in spite of myself;

A wink of his eye and a twist of his head,  
Soon gave me to know I had nothing to dread;  
He spoke not a word, but went straight to his work,  
And filled all the stockings; then turned with a jerk,  
And laying his finger aside of his nose,  
And giving a nod, up the chimney he rose;  
He sprang to his sleigh, to his team gave a whistle,  
And away they all flew like the down of a thistle.  
But I heard him exclaim, ere he drove out of sight,  
" Christmas to all, and to all a good-night.

### Key Vocabulary

stir	V	to move,movement
hung	V	to fasten or attach (a thing) so that it is supported only from above or at a point near its own top
chimney	N	a vertical structure that allows the passage of smoke
nestle	V	to lie close and snug
snug	A	warmly comfortable or cozy
nap	V	to sleep for a short time
clatter	N	noise
tore	V	rip
lustre	N	radiance of beauty, excellence
sleigh	N	large
reindeer	N	large deer

rapid	A	with high speed
dash	V	to move with violence; rush
hurricane	N	very big rain and wind storm
obstacle	N	something that obstructs or hinders progress.
course	N	a thing suitable for running or chasing
prance	V	to dance or move in a lively or spirited manner
paw	V	to strike or scrape with the paws or feet
hoof	N	an encasing protecting the foot of an animal such as horse
St Nicholas	N	another name for Santa clause

tarnish	V	to ruin, make dirty or destroy
soot	N	a black dirty substance
bundle	N	several objects or a quantity of material gathered or bound together
dimple	N	a small, natural hollow area or crease seen when smiling
stump	N	the lower end of a tree or plant left after the main part falls or is cut o↵
pipe	N	smoking utensil
wreath	N	a circular band of flowers, foliage, or any ornamental work, for adorning the head or for any decorative purpose
plump	A	well filled out or rounded in form

**elf**                    *N*                    a magical being

**thistle**              *N*                    a prickly plant

### Supplementary Vocabulary

**eggnog**              *N*                    a drink made of eggs, milk or cream, sugar, and, usually, rum or wine.

**white  
christ-  
mas**                *P*                    having Christmas with snow

**snowman**            *N*                    a figure of a person made of packed snow.

**carol**                *N*                    a Christmas song or hymn.

## Daily Life - Having Leftovers (C0338)

A: What's for dinner?

B: Leftovers.

A: What? Leftovers of what and from when?

B: From last night! I took the left over turkey, mixed it with some diced peppers and onions, added a little bit of mayonnaise and made some sandwiches!

A: Isn't that dangerous though? I mean bacteria and germs reproducing on food that was left out or re-heated?

B: Well, I didn't leave the turkey out at room temperature for more than an hour and I refrigerated it soon after we finished eating. Also, when reheating, I put it in the oven for fifteen minutes at one hundred degrees Celsius.

A: Well ok, I am just afraid of getting food poisoning.

B: Don't worry about it! Making a new meal out of leftovers is almost an art! Not only do you save money, but you also get to be creative and have something different to eat!

### Key Vocabulary

leftovers	N	food remaining uneaten at the end of a meal
turkey	N	a large American bird similar to the chicken
mix	A	of different kinds combined
dice	V	to cut into small cubes
bacteria	N	small organisms
germ	N	a microorganism
reheat	V	to make hot or warm again
refrigerate	V	to make or keep cold
food poisoning	P	becoming sick because of bacteria in food

## Supplementary Vocabulary

sanitary	A	of or pertaining to health or the conditions affecting health
microwave	V	to cook, defrost, or otherwise prepare in a microwave oven
soap	N	a substance used for washing and cleansing purposes
contaminate	V	to make impure or unsuitable by contact or mixture with something unclean, bad

## Global View - Parent Teacher Conference (C0339)

A: Thank you for coming tonight Mrs. Webber. As a teacher, it's great seeing the kid's parents assist our parent-teacher conference night.

B: Of course! I am very interested to know how my child is doing and also get some insight from you as to how he can improve.

A: Well Allen is a great student. He is a hard worker and very well behaved, however he does struggle a bit with math.

B: I guess he gets that from me, I never did well in math when I was a kid. What can I do at home to compliment what he is learning in the classroom.

A: Well, it's important that you sit with him and review his homework assignments and help him with math. I would also recommend he stay after school twice a week for tutoring sessions. It will really help a lot.

B: Thanks a lot! I will definitely do that. Is there anything else?

A: Um.. yes. Here is a notice from our financial department, seems your child's tuition is overdue.

B: Oh yes, I....

### Key Vocabulary

teacher	N	a person who teaches or instructs
conference	N	a formal meeting where many people talk about ideas
insight	N	an instance of apprehending the true nature of a thing
struggle	V	try very hard to do something that is difficult
compliment	N	an expression of praise
tutor	N	a person employed to instruct another in some branch or branches of learning, esp. a private instructor.

tution	N	the charge or fee for instruction
overdue	A	past due

### Supplementary Vocabulary

repeat	V	to go through or undergo again
excel	V	to surpass others or be superior in some respect or area
bully	N	a person who intimidates smaller or weaker people.
fee	N	a sum paid or charged for a privilege

## Global View - Happy New Year! (C0340)

A:: It's almost midnight! We are about to start a brand new year!

B: I know it's so exciting! A new year is always like a clean slate.

A:: fresh start to accomplish any dreams, objectives and goals.

A: Do you have a New Year's resolution?

B: I was thinking about it, but I'm never able to keep my New Year's resolution. Last year for example I joined a gym and only went twice.

A: Yeah I know what you mean. That's why this year I am keeping things more simple. Maybe like getting together with friends I haven't seen in a long time, or doing some volunteering work.

B: That seems reasonable. We should get together and watch the ball drop in Times Square.

A: Sure, as long as you don't try to kiss me at midnight!

B: Well, we can't break tradition! It's bad luck!

### Key Vocabulary

midnight	N	twelve AM
brand new	A	completely new
accomplish	V	to bring to its goal or conclusion
volunteer	N	a person who performs a service willingly and without pay
tradition	N	special way of doing things that is accepted by a majority
resolution	N	a formal document stating the wishes of someone
new year	N	1st January

### Supplementary Vocabulary



Learn English on your Terms

goal	<i>N</i>	the result or achievement toward which effort is directed
evening	<i>N</i>	the latter part of the day and early part of the night.
promise	<i>N</i>	a declaration that something will or will not be done
fireworks	<i>N</i>	combustible or explosive device for producing a striking display of light or a loud noise



## Daily Life - Baking A Cake (C0341)

A: Ok, so are you ready to learn how to bake a cake?

B: Almost, let me just put my apron on.

A: Ok, so the first thing we are going to do is pre-heat the oven, that way we have it at the desired temperature once we finish preparing everything. Set it to three hundred and seventy five degrees Fahrenheit.

B: Got it.

A: No we are gonna make the batter. Take some butter and sugar and mix it lightly until you have a nice consistency. Then add some vanilla extract and eggs and continue mixing.

B: Do I have to use a whisk or can I use the electric mixer?

A: Go ahead and use the mixer, but put it on medium speed. I'm gonna sift the flour and baking powder separately and then we can mix it with milk and the rest of the ingredients.

B: Ok, so now we need a baking pan right?

A: Yeah, but grease and flour it first so the cake won't stick to it when it bakes.

B: Done. So how long do we bake it for?

A: We can leave it in there for about twenty five minutes. Then we let it cool for ten minutes before we remove the cake from the pan.

B: Wow! This was a lot easier than I thought!

### Key Vocabulary

bake

bake

apron

apron

preheat

preheat

desired

desired

consistency

consistency

sift

sift

grease

grease

## Global View - At The Library (C0342)

A: Wow! Look at all these books! I bet I can find a book about anything here!

B: Shhh!! Please keep your voice down. There are people reading and studying here.

A: Ok, I'm sorry. Are you the librarian? Maybe you can help me, I am looking for a book.

B: Yes I am. You can check our online catalog to search the book you want based on the genre, title or if you know the author, I can point you towards the right direction.

A: I am looking for a book that has nursery rhymes.

B: That would be in our children's section. That book shelf there on the right.

A: Ok, I would like to check out these books.

B: Do you have a library card?

A: No. How do I get one?

B: I just need to see your drivers license or utility bill to prove that you a resident of this state.

A: Here you go.

B: So you are all set. You can have these books for two weeks. If you need to have them longer, you can bring them here to renew them. If you don't, you get charged ten cents a day for each book.

A: Ok, thanks!

### Key Vocabulary

librarian	N	a person trained in library science and engaged in library service.
author	N	composer of a literary work, such as a novel or poem.
section	N	a distinct part or subdivision of anything

check out	<i>P</i>	to borrow (an item) by having it listed as one's temporary responsibility
renew	<i>V</i>	to cause something to continue to be effective
catalog	<i>N</i>	a complete, usually alphabetical list of items, often with notes giving details
genre	<i>N</i>	a certain type or style.

### Supplementary Vocabulary

fiction	<i>N</i>	the class of literature comprising works of imaginative narration, esp. in prose form.
non-fiction	<i>N</i>	dealing with or offering opinions or conjectures upon facts and reality, including biography, history, and the essay



Learn English on your Terms

science  
fiction

*N*

form of fiction that draws imaginatively on scientific knowledge and speculation in its plot, setting, theme

## Daily Life - Seafood Dinner (C0343)

- A: This is such a nice restaurant! I feel so classy!
- B: Yeah, it's a little bit pricey, but they serve the best seafood in town.
- C: May I Take your order?
- B: Yes, I would like some marinated grilled shrimp for starters and I'll also have the lobster.
- C: Excellent choice sir. And for you madame?
- B: I would like the baked oysters and the seafood platter.
- C: Very good madame.
- B: That seafood platter sounds good. Excuse me, what does the platter have?
- C: It's a great combination of clams, scallops, squid mussels, calamari and fillets of salmon and tuna. It comes with a side of butter sauce and french fries.

B: That sounds great! Cancel the lobster and give me one of the same please.

C: Very well sir. Anything to drink?

A: Can we get a bottle of your house white wine please?

C: Superb choice. I will be back shortly with the wine.

### Key Vocabulary

class	A	high class
pricey	A	expensive
marinated	N	To leave something to be soaked in a sauce for its flavour
starter	N	as the first step or part
platter	N	a course of a meal, usually consisting of a variety of foods served on the same plate.

clams	N	Edible sea creature that buries it self in the sand.
scallops	N	Edible sea creature similar to oysters that move in the water by opening and closing their shell.
squid	N	a sea creature having a having a torpedo-shaped body
mussels	N	Edible sea creature that attaches it to something such as a rock
calamari	N	cooked squid cut into rings.

### Supplementary Vocabulary

eel	N	a creature with a long snakelike body, a smooth slimy skin
-----	---	--

sushi	<i>N</i>	cold boiled rice moistened with rice vinegar, usually shaped into bite-size pieces and topped with raw seafood
dodgy	<i>A</i>	something not good
crab	<i>N</i>	A hard shelled sea creature

## Global View - Booking A Hotel Room (C0344)

A: Madison Suites, how may I help you?

B: Yes, I'm calling from Mexico. I will be in town next week and would like to know if you have availability.

B: OK ma'am, can you tell me the date you expect to check in?

A: Yes, July ninth. I will be there for seven nights.

B: We have a junior single suite or a superior double suite available for those dates.

A: What's the difference?

B: The junior suite is smaller and has one twin bed, while the superior suite has a double bed and mini-bar.

A: OK, I would like to reserve the superior suite. Is breakfast included?

B: Yes, a buffet breakfast is served every morning. I will need your name and your credit card details in order to complete the reservation.

A: Sure, my credit card number is...

### Key Vocabulary

buffet	N	a meal laid out on a table or sideboard so that guests may serve themselves
reservation	N	an arrangement to secure accommodations at a restaurant or hotel
availability	N	the quality of being at hand when needed
check in	V	confirm details at front desk
superior	A	better than others
suite	N	a connected series of rooms to be used together
reserve	V	to keep back or save for future use

### Supplementary Vocabulary



Learn English on your Terms

room service	N	Food and beverages served to a guest in his or her hotel room.
concierge	N	some one who handles luggage and mail, makes reservations, and arranges tours
maid	N	A woman servant employed in cleaning.
chauffeur	N	To serve as a driver for another person



## Daily Life - Working Out (C0345)

A: Do you want to go catch a movie tonight?

B: I can't, I have to go to the gym.

A: Come on! You can go tomorrow, just skip it today.  
It's not as if you are gonna get in trouble!

B: Actually I will! I am working out with a personal trainer that gets on my case if I don't go. I like it, because it makes me feel more obligated to go and get healthy.

A: That's cool, does your personal trainer basically teach you how to work out?

B: Yeah. He makes a work out plan depending on the areas I want to work on, or the muscles I want to build. Like for example in order to get better muscle tone in my abs, pecs and biceps, he makes me work out with free weights. Then for my quads, calves and hamstrings, I do leg lifts or squats.

A: Sounds like you are really getting in shape!

## Key Vocabulary

gym	N	a place where you go to exercise
personal trainer	A	professional who educates people about physical fitness.
case	N	argument
oblige	V	do something because you feel it is the right thing to do
to work out	V	to find a solution or create a plan by thinking
muscle	N	tissue composed of fibers capable of contracting to effect bodily movement
muscle tone	N	strength or firmness of muscles and skin
abdominals	N	muscles of the front area of the stomach
pectoral	N	the chest or breast area

bicep	<i>N</i>	a large muscle at the front of the upper arm
hamstring	<i>N</i>	Any of the tendons at the rear of the human knee
squat	<i>N</i>	A lift or a weightlifting exercise in which one squats and stands while holding a weighted barbell supported by the back of the shoulders

### Supplementary Vocabulary

steroids	<i>N</i>	compounds that help to grow muscles at a fast rate and help in recovery.
deadlift	<i>N</i>	A lift in which one pulls a bar from the ground to the waist.
bodybuilder	<i>N</i>	a person who practices bodybuilding.



Learn English on your Terms

locker  
room

*N*

oom containing lock-  
ers, as in a gymnasium,  
factory, or school, for  
changing clothes and  
for the storage and safe-  
keeping of personal be-  
longings.

## Global View - All About Wines (C0346)

Salesperson: Hello there, welcome to Wine World. Let me know if I can help you out at all.

Customer: Um, yes, please, I could really use some help. I'm going over to my boss' house for dinner tonight and don't know what kind of wine I should bring.

Salesperson: OK, do you know what kind of food will be served?

Customer: Well, his wife is Japanese. He said she makes really good sushi.

Salesperson: Hmm, that's a bit of a challenge. Sushi is notoriously difficult to pair with wine. Well, let's see. have to be a white wine, of course.

Customer: Why? Wouldn't a red wine go well with sushi?

Salesperson: No, I don't think so. Sushi is a very delicately flavored food, and red wine would be a jarring contrast. You need a white wine, which has more subtle flavors, to complement the fish.

Customer: I see. So should I get a bottle of Chardonnay? That's a white wine, right?

Salesperson: Yes, Chardonnay is a white wine, but I'm not sure it'd be your best bet. Chardonnay is one of the more full-bodied whites, and tends to be a bit oaky. I'd suggest that you go for something brighter, like this Sauvignon Blanc from New Zealand.

Customer: Sauvignon Blanc? What's that?

Salesperson: That's another varietal, or type of grape, just like Chardonnay.

Customer: Let's see. The label says it's got "attractive citrus and grassy aromas that give way to crisp, mineral flavors and a bone-dry finish. Serve chilled." Oh, no, how long will it take to chill the wine? I'm on my way to the dinner now.

Salesperson: It's OK, don't worry, we'll just choose a wine from the cooler. We don't have quite as extensive a selection over here, but...this Rhone Valley white would be lovely.

Customer: All right. What varietal is that?

Salesperson: Well, this is a French wine, so they don't always specify the varietal on the label. The French believe that the soil a grape is grown in is one of the most important factors in the final flavor of the wine. This wine is probably a blend of a few different types of grapes, mostly Viognier, I'd guess.

Customer: And you think this is a good wine?

Salesperson: Yes, this is one of our best-sellers. It's not quite as dry as the Sauvignon Blanc we were looking at earlier, which means it's more approachable. It's light and crisp, with a bit of a vanilla aroma.

Customer: Perfect! I'll take it!

## Key Vocabulary

notoriously	A	publicly or generally known, as for a particular trait
aroma	N	the way something smells
crisp	A	invigorating
bone-dry	A	no moisture, dry
subtle	A	Fine or delicate

### Supplementary Vocabulary

chardonnay	N	a dry white wine made from this grape
grape vine	N	A vine on which grapes grow.
acidity	N	The state, quality, or degree of being acid.
zesty	A	affecting the organs of taste or smell with a strong and often harsh sensation



Learn English on your Terms

sharp

A

quick, acute, or pene-  
trating

## Global View - Immigration and Customs (C0347)

A: Good afternoon, passport and arrival card please.

B: Here you are.

A: Where are you coming from?

B: China.

A: Is this your country of birth or residence.

B: I just work there.

A: What is the purpose of your visit to the United States?

B: I'm here on vacation.

A: How long do you plan to stay in the United States?

B: Almost three weeks.

A: Sir, you didn't fill out the information on your arrival card of where you will be staying.

B: Oh, I'm sorry, but there are a couple of different places I will travel to within the United States, so I wasn't sure what to put.

A: You must specify an address of the place where you will spend most of your time.

B: Ok, here you are.

A: Do you have enough means to support yourself while you are here?

B: Yes. I have some travellers cheques and two credit cards.

A: Very good. Do you have anything to declare?

B: Nope. I only have my clothes and camera!

A: Very well sir, welcome to the United States, enjoy your visit.

## Key Vocabulary

passport	<i>N</i>	A form of identification that allows someone to travel.
arrival	<i>N</i>	an act of arriving; a coming
residence	<i>N</i>	the place, esp. the house, in which a person lives or resides; dwelling place; home
traveller	<i>N</i>	a person or thing that travels.
declare	<i>V</i>	to state something officially
purpose	<i>N</i>	reason for doing something
vacation	<i>P</i>	have holidays

### Supplementary Vocabulary

metal detector	<i>N</i>	an electronic device for detecting the presence of metal objects
----------------	----------	--

<b>luggage</b>	<i>N</i>	baggage such as suitcases and personal belongings.
<b>Terroist</b>	<i>N</i>	a person, usually a member of a group, who uses or advocates terrorism.
<b>body scanner</b>	<i>N</i>	a device that virtually strip searches a person in order to look for hidden objects without physically removing clothes or making physical contact

## The Weekend - Talking About Skincare (C0348)

A: You want to go get a facial with me today?

B: Dude, what are you talking about? Only girls do that.

A: Not at all, guys also get facials, manicures and pedicures. There is nothing wrong with looking after your skin and looking good.

B: True. So what do they do to you at your beauty spa?

A: Well, first they exfoliate my face, getting rid of all the dead skin. Then I get a face mask with nutrients that keep my skin healthy and young. Afterwards, they apply some moisturizer and you leave feeling like a million bucks.

B: That doesn't really sound like something I would be interested in. In any case, I just wash my face every night and use sunscreen during the day.

A: Well you should come with me one day, I'm sure you'll love it.

B: Uh... no.

## Key Vocabulary

facial	N	a treatment to beautify the face.
manicure	N	a cosmetic treatment of the hands and fingernails, including trimming and polishing of the nails.
pedicure	N	professional care and treatment of the feet
spa	N	a luxurious resort or resort hotel.
exfoliate	N	to remove the surface of, such as skin and dirt
sunscreen	N	a substance formulated to prevent sunburn, skin cancers, and other conditions caused by excessive exposure to the sun

## Supplementary Vocabulary



Learn English on your Terms

massage	<i>N</i>	the act or art of treating the body by rubbing, kneading, patting
tranquil	<i>A</i>	free from commotion or tumult; peaceful; quiet
sunburn	<i>N</i>	inflammation of the skin caused by overexposure to the sun or a sunlamp.
tan	<i>N</i>	A brown color on the skin caused by the rays of the sun

## Global View - Chinese Medicine (C0349)

A: What's wrong?

B: I have a headache. These past few days I've been living off painkillers. Man, I feel like my head is going to explode.

A: You should get acupuncture treatment. My mom was always having headache issues and it was acupuncture that cured her.

B: The results are too slow. On top of that, just the thought of smoking needles poking into my flesh frightens me.

A: They don't just randomly stick you, they find your pressure points. The heat allows the body to immediately respond to the treatment, restoring the body's "chi".

B: But I get scared the moment I see a needle. How could I stand having needles in my body for hours on end?

- A: The needles are very thin, and as long as the doctor's technique is good, and the patient himself is relaxed, it won't hurt-on the contrary it will actually alleviate pain. Now there are high-tech needles that are micro thin; they don't hurt at all. However, if you are really scared of acupuncture, scraping or cupping are also options.
- B: Scraping is too terrifying. When they finish scraping, your body is all red, as if you were just tortured. Cupping is the same, your body ends up with red circles all over it-looks like someone beat you up.
- A: This only signifies that the toxins have left the body. Actually, there is only discomfort during the treatment process. Once it's over you feel very comfortable.
- B: Chinese medicine is strange. The patients are already ill, and then the doctor makes them suffer more.
- A: This is the only way to get at the problem. Anyway, if you want to relieve the pain, You are just going to have to be tough and do it.

B: Forget it. I don't want to inflict any more pain on myself. In a little while I'll go and buy some more painkillers and take a nap.

### Key Vocabulary

acupuncture	N	Chinese Medical practice or procedure that treats illness or provides local anesthesia by the insertion of needles at specified sites of the body.
pressure point	N	a point on the skin that is extremely sensitive to pressure because of the presence of pressure-sensing organs.
treatment	N	an act or manner of treating.
needle	N	a small, slender, rod-like instrument, usually of polished steel, with a sharp point at one end

cupping	V	the process of drawing blood from the body and the application of a cupping glass
flesh	N	the soft substance of a human or other animal body, consisting of muscle and fat.
painkiller	N	a drug, treatment, or anything else that relieves pain

### Supplementary Vocabulary

meditation	N	devout religious contemplation or spiritual introspection.
tai chi	N	a meditative exercise, characterized by slow circular and stretching movements and positions of bodily balance.
herb	N	a plant when valued for its medicinal properties



Learn English on your Terms

**incense**

*N*

the perfume or smoke  
arising from a sub-  
stance when burned



## Daily Life - Talking About Relatives (C0350)

A: What are you doing this weekend?

B: My brother in law is having a small get together at his house and he invited me.

A: Is it a family thing or just friends?

B: A bit of both. Some cousins, aunts and uncles will be there, but also some friends from the neighborhood.

A: Is your great uncle Rick going to be there? He is really funny.

B: Yeah he is going to be there with his step-son and his ex-wife.

A: You mean your sister?

B: No, Rick is actually my great uncle, so he is my grandmother's brother.

A: You lost me.

B: I'll explain later, let's go.

## Key Vocabulary

brother	N	a male sibling
uncle	N	a brother of one's father or mother.
cousin	N	the son or daughter of an uncle or aunt.
aunt	N	the sister of one's father or mother.
step son	N	a son of one's husband or wife by a previous marriage.
ex-wife	N	a woman who was formerly a particular man's wife

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Niece	N	a daughter of a person's brother or sister.
-------	---	---

family re-	<i>N</i>	a gathering of relatives, friends, or associates at regular intervals or after separation
biological	<i>N</i>	Being of the same genes and blood as another family member
adopted	<i>N</i>	to take and rear (the child of other parents) as one's own child.

## Daily Life - Vaccinations (C0351)

A: Hello Mrs Parker, how have you been?

B: Hello Dr Peters. Just fine thank you. Ricky and I are here for his vaccines.

A: Very well. Let's see, according to his vaccination record, Ricky has received his Polio, Tetanus and Hepatitis B shots. He is 14 months old, so he is due for Hepatitis A, Chickenpox and Measles shots.

B: What about Rubella and Mumps?

A: Well, I can only give him these for now, and after a couple of weeks I can administer the rest.

B: Ok great. Doctor, I think I also may need a Tetanus booster. Last time I got it was maybe fifteen years ago!

A: We will check our records and I'll have the nurse administer the booster as well. Now, please hold Ricky's arm tight, this may sting a little.

## Key Vocabulary

vaccine	N	a medical substance that protects people or animals
Polio	N	acute viral disease, usually affecting children and young adults
Tetanus	N	an infectious, often fatal disease caused by a specific bacterium that enters the body through wounds
Hepatitis	N	inflammation of the liver, caused by a virus or a toxin
Rubella	N	a mild contagious viral disease characterized by fever, mild upper respiratory congestion, and a fine red rash lasting a few days
Chickenpox	N	A disease common of children, characterized by mild headache and fever, and eruption of blisters on the skin

Measles	N	an acute infectious disease occurring mostly in children. red spots being a common symptom
Mumps	N	characterized by inflammatory swelling of the usually other salivary glands
administer		administer

### Supplementary Vocabulary

## Global View - The 7 Wonders Of The World (C0352)

A: Have you seen this news article? Apparently an organization has made a list to name the new seven wonders of the world and people could vote for them online.

B: Wow, that's really interesting. So who won?

A: Well, the Great Wall of China, the Taj Mahal in India.

B: I've been there! It really is an amazing work of architecture and art. The entire complex is made of white marble and in the interior of the tomb, the walls are covered with gems and emeralds!

A: Cool! Also amongst the winners is Petra, in Jordan, Machu Picchu in Peru and the pyramid in Chichenitza in Mexico.

B: Wait a minute! It also says that the Christ Redeemer statue in Brazil and the Colosseum in Rome are wonders. I would love to go to Italy and see the Colosseum, stand in the middle like a gladiator!

A: Well, let's see if we can find some cheap airfare and we can go towards the end of the year.

B: Good idea!

### Key Vocabulary

Taj Ma-hal	N	A mausoleum located in India made entirely of white marble.
Great Wall	N	An extensive wall in China that kept invaders at bay
architecture	N	the art and science of designing buildings
Petra	N	A historical city in Jordan which was carved out of the mountain,
Machu Pichu	N	An Inca ancient city set high in the Andes mountains in Peru
pyramid	N	a structure where the outer surfaces are triangular and converge at a point

Colosseum	<i>N</i>	An ancient amphitheater located in Rome
wonder	<i>N</i>	A monumental human creation that is amazing
gladiator	<i>N</i>	A person trained to entertain the public by engaging in mortal combat
tomb	<i>N</i>	A grave or other place of burial

### Supplementary Vocabulary

world heritage site	<i>N</i>	an area or structure designated by UNESCO as being of global significance
Mausoleum	<i>N</i>	an external free-standing building constructed as a monument enclosing the interment space or burial chamber of a deceased person

Temple	<i>N</i>	a structure reserved for religious or spiritual activities, such as prayer and sacrifice
Ruins	<i>N</i>	the remains of human-made architecture: structures that were once complete, as time went by, have fallen into a state of partial or complete deterioration
Ancient	<i>A</i>	having been of long duration; of great age; very old.



## Global View - College Life (C0353)

A: Hey, Jordan, is that you? Long time no see!

B: Oh, hey, no kidding! I haven't seen you since orientation three months ago! So how've you been? Settling into college life OK?

A: Yeah, I think so! I pledged Phi Iota Alpha, so I'm living at the frat house now.

B: Oh, so you're a frat boy now, huh?

A: Yeah, yeah, I know, it's totally cliché, but really, I think it's been a good decision. I've got a lot of support and good suggestions from the guys. What about you? What have you been up to?

B: Not much. I'm still living at home and commuting to school. I ended up dropping that metalworking class I was so excited about. It just wasn't as interesting as I'd hoped. The guidance counselor suggested that I focus on my prerequisite courses so that I can make sure the credits count.

A: That sounds smart... but kind of boring.

B: Yeah, it is, a little bit. I joined the Great Outdoors Club, though, which has been a lot of fun. We've gone on two camping trips already, and I've made some good friends.

A: That's cool. Hey, so have you decided on your major yet?

B: Definitely pre-med. What about you?

A: I still have no clue. . . but we don't have to declare a major 'til our sophomore year, so I've got time! Oops, I'm late for class. Gotta run!

B: OK, take care! Hey, nice running into you!

A: Yeah, you too!

## Key Vocabulary

Long	v	phrase used to express that you haven't seen someone in a very long time
time	no	
see		

orientation	N	a class where instructions are given on the first day at school
settle into	V	to become accustomed to one's new surroundings
frat house	N	Fraternity house, place where members of a fraternity live and socialize
frat boy	N	a term used to call people that are part of a fraternity
drop	V	to quit or not continue a class
credit	N	academic mark
major	N	the specific focus of your undergraduate program

### Supplementary Vocabulary

gap year	N	A temporary one year absence from university
----------	---	--

thesis	<i>N</i>	A dissertation advancing an original point of view as a result of research
minor	<i>N</i>	secondary course of study
pre-law	<i>N</i>	any course of study taken by an undergraduate in preparation for study at a law school
freshman	<i>N</i>	a first year student in high school or university



## Global View - Homeschooling (C0354)

A: I think we should home school our children when we decide to have kids.

B: What? Why?

A: Well, our public schools here are not very good and private school are just too expensive. I have been reading up on home schooling and it has a lot of advantages.

B: Like what? I think that by doing something like that we would be isolating our children from social interaction.

A: Well, first of all, I would be able to teach them everything they learn in school in a more relaxed and fun way. I also think that having a one-on-one class is much better since you can focus more on his or her strengths or weaknesses.

B: I think neither your parents or mine would agree to such an idea.

A: I will bring it up over Sunday brunch.

B: Good luck with that!

## Key Vocabulary

home school	V	to educate kids at home by a parent or tutor
first of all	P	firstly
read up	V	to do research or instruct yourself on a topic
isolate	V	to set apart from others; place alone
social interaction	N	meeting, talking, doing activities with people
one-on-one	P	a meeting or class between two people
strengths	N	a quality that makes someone effective or useful
weakness	N	the quality or state of being weak

bring some- thing up	P	to mention or open for discussion
----------------------------	---	--------------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

GED	N	general education diploma which is the equivalent of a high school diploma
SAT	N	Scholastic Aptitude Test is a test which is taken throughout the US as an admission test to US colleges
tutor	N	a person employed in the education of others, either individually or in groups.
recess	N	a short period of free time between school classes.
quiz	N	a short quick test

## Daily Life - Lending Money (C0355)

A: Can I borrow five bucks?

B: No!

A: Come on! I'll pay you back on Tuesday.

B: Last time I lent you money, you never paid me back.

A: I promise if you lend me five dollars today, I will repay you in full next week.

B: Ok, but I'm taking your skateboard as collateral.

A: Fine! I can't believe you don't trust me.

B: It's nothing personal, just business.

### Key Vocabulary

borrow	V	to take or have something temporarily
bucks	N	dollar (slang )

<b>lend</b>	<i>v</i>	to give something to someone temporarily
<b>repay</b>	<i>v</i>	pay back
<b>trust</b>	<i>v</i>	confident expectation of something; hope.
<b>collateral</b>	<i>N</i>	security pledged for the payment of a loan

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>barter</b>	<i>v</i>	the act of exchanging goods for other goods
<b>mooch</b>	<i>N</i>	a person that is always asking to borrow money or food
<b>loan</b>	<i>N</i>	Something lent for temporary use
<b>interest</b>	<i>N</i>	a percentage added to a loan as a fee for lending money



Learn English on your Terms

**past due**

A

the status of a scheduled loan payment that has not been paid on time.

## Daily Life - Coins and Money (C0356)

- A: Help me organize these coins.
- B: That's a lot of money! What did you do? Break the piggy bank?
- A: Yeah, I'm gonna go to the bank and change it for bills, but first I have to separate them into little piles.
- B: Ok, I'll find all the quarters and dimes while you sort the nickels and pennies.
- A: Great, then we can add everything up and take it to the bank.
- B: I found some coins that are not from here.
- A: Oh yeah, those are from my trip to London. I have a couple of different pence, but in all it won't add up to one pound.
- B: Are you sure the bank will change these coins for you?
- A: Hopefully!

## Key Vocabulary

coin	N	a small round piece of money usually made from metal
piggy bank	N	a small container used to store coins
bill	N	form of money that is made from paper
quarter	N	a coin worth one fourth of a dollar
dime	N	a coin worth one tenth of a dollar
nickel	N	a coin worth one twentieth of a dollar
penny	N	a coin that is worth one cent or one one hundredth

## Supplementary Vocabulary

Mint	V	To make or fabricate coins
------	---	----------------------------

Treasury	<i>N</i>	A place in which private or public funds are kept
Safe	<i>N</i>	A large metallic vault used to store money safely
Bling	<i>N</i>	Slang term used for money, gold and jewelry
Money Press	<i>N</i>	Machine that prints and produces bills



## Daily Life - Making A Dinner Reservation (C0357)

A: Bruno Bistro, how may I help you?

B: Yes hello, I would like to make a reservation please.

A: Certainly sir, For which day and time please?

B: Tonight at seven.

A: I'm sorry sir, but we are fully booked tonight until eight.

B: In that case, eight o'clock is fine.

A: Very well, and how many people will attend tonight?

B: Four people.

A: Lastly, may I please know what name I should make the reservation under?

A: Mark.

## Key Vocabulary

bistro	N	mid-priced restaurant
make a reservation	P	to make an arrangement to hold something for later
fully booked	P	all sold out or full of reservations
in that case	P	if something said earlier is true
attend	V	go to
reservation	N	Something that is kept back or withheld

## Supplementary Vocabulary

steakhouse	N	a restaurant that specializes in beef steaks.
diner	N	A place that offers a wide range of foods, mostly American, a casual atmosphere and late operating hours.

Soup Kitchen	<i>N</i>	a place where food is offered to the hungry for free or at a reasonably low price
saltshaker	<i>N</i>	a container with a perforated top for sprinkling salt
Cutlery	<i>N</i>	Utensils such as knives, forks, and spoons used as tableware



## Daily Life - Text Me (C0358)

A: Why didn't you text me last night?

B: What? I sent you three or four messages!

A: I didn't get any of them. I was waiting for you to text me the address of where the party was and I never got your message.

B: Why didn't you just call? I hate sending SMS messages.

A: Well, because I didn't have any credit on my phone. I used it all up this month.

B: I thought you had an unlimited SMS plan?

A: I do, but if I don't have any credit in my phone, it won't let me call or send messages.

B: No wonder you didn't get my texts!

## Key Vocabulary

text	V	act of sending a text message via a mobile phone
SMS	N	abbreviation for Short Message Service
credit	N	amount of money that you have available to make a
use it up	V	to completely finish or extinguish something
unlimited	A	without limits or restrictions
no wonder	P	not surprisingly

## Supplementary Vocabulary

voicemail	N	A service that allows you to leave a recorded message
calling card	N	A prepaid card that allows you to make international phone calls

**pay as you go** *P* Credit purchased in advance in order to make phone calls on a mobile phone

**coverage** *N* The area that the mobile phone operator covers or allows for making phone calls

**drop a call** *V* To lose connection of a call

## Global View - E-mail Scam (C0359)

A: I got an urgent email from Tom! He says he is in London and got robbed and needs us to wire him some money for his hotel.

B: What? That sounds really dodgy to me.

A: No way, Tom is an honest person, he wouldn't lie to me.

B: No I mean, it seems like someone may have hacked his email account and sent that out. I mean think about it, why would he email you instead of calling you.

A: Do you really think someone is trying to scam people into sending money?

B: For sure! There are so many con artists out there, you never really know.

### Key Vocabulary

urgent                      A                              important

get                            A                              to be victim of a robbery, something stolen  
robbed

wire	V	to send money electronically
dodgy	A	questionable, suspicious
hack	V	to gain access illegally or without authorization
scam	V	to swindle (someone) by means of a trick
con artist	N	a swindler who exploits the confidence of his victim

### Supplementary Vocabulary

swindle	V	To cheat or defraud of money or property
Ponzi Scheme	N	is an investment fraud that involves the payment of purported returns to existing investors from funds contributed by new investors.



Learn English on your Terms

con	V	to persuade by deception
Fraud	N	a person who makes deceitful pretenses
Pirate	N	a person who uses or reproduces the work or invention of another without authorization.

## Global View - Urban Legends (C0360)

A: Have you read all these crazy things that are going on around the world?

B: What do you mean?

A: I was reading about how some people get tricked or drugged in their hotel rooms and have their organs removed! Then they are sold on the black market.

B: Don't tell me you actually believe all that? Don't be so gullible, they are just urban legends. They are just stories people make up to scare you.

A: Well, I was also reading about how some popular songs have subliminal or even satanic messages if you play them backwards! Can you believe that?

B: You really think an artist or songwriter is going to go through the trouble of putting subliminal or satanic messages in a song? Don't be so naive!

A: Well maybe you are right, but how about the story of how KFC has rows of headless chickens which are super grown in order to get bigger chickens faster!

B: Sounds a bit too far fetched to be true don't you think?

### Key Vocabulary

black market	N	any system in which goods are sold and bought illegally
gullible	A	easily believing something that is not true
urban legend	N	stories that are exaggerated or not true
make up	P	invent
subliminal	N	something that persuades in a subconscious way
satanic	A	relating to Satan or the devil
naïve	A	having or showing a lack of experience, judgment,

far fetched	A	improbable; not naturally pertinent
-------------	---	-------------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

Myth	N	an untrue story
boogie man	N	a fictional being that scares children
cynical	A	a person who believes that only selfishness motivates human actions
grounded	A	quality of not letting emotions or impulses get the best of you
realist	N	a person who tends to view or represent things as they really are.

## Daily Life - Fast Food (C0361)

A: I'm hungry, let's order up something to eat.

B: Ok, maybe we can order a soup and a salad from the restaurant down the street.

A: I was thinking of getting a hamburger, fries and a chocolate sundae.

B: You eat too much junk food. That sort of stuff clogs up your arteries and is very high in cholesterol.

A: Well I never seem to gain weight so I don't mind.

B: It's not only about getting fat or not, it's about being healthy. You could really have some health problems later on.

A: How about pizza or maybe some fried chicken! Better yet, let's order some hot dogs!

B: You are a lost cause.

## Key Vocabulary

salad	N	mixed vegetables served cold
french fries	N	deep fired strips of potato
hamburger	N	a type of sandwich with a beef patty
junk food	N	food that is not healthy
clog	V	to block or get in the way of something
cholesterol	N	a fatty substance found in animal tissue
how about	P	what do you think
pizza	N	bread with tomato sauce and cheese on top
fried chicken	N	chicken pieces cooked in hot oil
hot dog	N	a food with bread and a sausage in the middle

lost cause	<i>N</i>	a useless or hopeless situation
------------	----------	---------------------------------

### Supplementary Vocabulary

tofu	<i>N</i>	A protein-rich food coagulated from an extract of soybeans and used in salads and various cooked foods.
MSG	<i>N</i>	a flavor enhancer used in food
greasy	<i>A</i>	Having a lot of grease or oil
Take out	<i>P</i>	Taking food away or having it delivered,
doggy bag	<i>N</i>	a bag or box used to take left over food home from a restaurant

## Daily Life - What Mood Are You In? (C0362)

A: Are you ok? You seem a bit anxious.

B: Yeah I'm OK, I have been having a lot of mood swings lately. I think it has to do with the pills my doctor prescribed that are causing chaos on my hormones.

A: So you mean you feel ecstatic one minute and then blue the next?

B: Yeah, it's weird. For example just this morning I was feeling detached and lonely, even though there was really no reason to feel that way.

A: Well, maybe your mood will swing positively and you will feel confident, brave and hopeful!

B: I hope you are right.

### Key Vocabulary

anxious	A	worried or nervous of what may happen
mood swing	N	rapid or successive change of your mood

ecstatic	A	feeling very excited or happy
blue	A	feeling sad, depressed
detached	A	feeling of showing lack of emotional involvement
lonely	A	sad from being apart from other people
confident	A	assurance: freedom from doubt
brave	A	Not feeling any fear

### Supplementary Vocabulary

maniac	N	suffering from a disorder characterized by alternating mania and depression
anxiety	N	An abnormal sense of fear, nervousness, and apprehension
self esteem	N	Personal feelings or opinions of oneself



Learn English on your Terms

**emotional** A determined or actuated by emotion rather than reason

**overwhelming** A overpowering in effect or force

## Daily Life - Living With Your Parents (C0363)

A: Why did your girlfriend break up with you?

B: I don't know, she said she was tired of me not manning up and being more independent, which I think is all a bunch of crap.

A: Well, you still live with your parents, so she does have a point.

B: What do you mean? Lots of people live with their parents, especially when rent isso expensive andthe slump inthe economy.

A: Yeah, but you are almost forty! Plus, you make good money so there is really no excuse. It's simply because you are a momma's boy.

B: Whatever dude, I have everything I need, why would I move out! Have a great roof over my head, my mom does my laundry and cooks for me, what else could a guy ask for!

A: Let's agree to disagree.

### Key Vocabulary

girlfriend	<i>N</i>	a female romantic partner
break up	<i>P</i>	end a romantic relationship
man up	<i>P</i>	take responsibility for your actions
crap	<i>N</i>	an unpolite way of saying something is foolish
momma's boy	<i>N</i>	A grown male still dependent on his mother
move out	<i>V</i>	change the place where you live, leave a house

### Supplementary Vocabulary

wimp	<i>N</i>	a weak, cowardly, or ineffectual person
pamper	<i>V</i>	To treat with excessive care, attention or indulgence
Mooch	<i>N</i>	someone that tries to get something free



Learn English on your Terms

immature	A	characteristic of a lack of maturity
needy	A	demanding or needing attention, affection, or reassurance to an excessive degree



## Daily Life - Hiring Help (C0364)

A: Can you help me write a newspaper ad?

B: Sure, what are you looking to buy or sell?

A: Actually, I want to hire someone to help me around the house.

B: Oh, you want to get a maid?

A: Well, I think it's better if you call her a cleaning lady or domestic help.

B: Ok, so what do you wanther to do?

A: Well, let's see. I wanther to come in three times a week for a couple of hours to clean the kitchen, bathroom and maybe do some cooking.

B: Got it. And how much do you offer per month?

A: I would pay her hourly, I don't know what the going rate is though.

B: I know for sure it's more than minimum wage but maybe you should just negotiate with the person that answers the ad.

A: Great! Thanks for your help!

### Key Vocabulary

ad	N	and advertisement or advert
hire	V	to give work
maid	N	a female who's job is to clean and cook
cleaning lady	V	a person that is hired to clean, a maid
domestic help	N	a servant who is paid to perform tasks around the
hourly	R	per hour
going rate	N	the current price or fee of something

<b>negotiate</b>	<i>V</i>	discuss and reach a mutual deal
<b>minimum wage</b>	<i>N</i>	the lowest legal salary a person can earn

### Supplementary Vocabulary

<b>servant</b>	<i>N</i>	One who is privately employed to perform domestic services.
<b>cook</b>	<i>N</i>	A person who prepares food for eating.
<b>gardener</b>	<i>N</i>	One who works in or tends a garden for pleasure or hire.
<b>plumber</b>	<i>N</i>	One that installs and repairs pipes and plumbing.
<b>electrician</b>	<i>N</i>	a person whose occupation is the installation, maintenance, and repair of electrical devices

## Daily Life - Household Chores (C0365)

A: Kevin, what is this mess? It looks like a pigsty in here! Clean this up!

B: Ok dad, I will do it in a minute, let me just finish this level of this game.

A: No, I said now! Plus, you are grounded, you're not allowed to play video games. I want you to make your bed, do the laundry and then come downstairs and sweep the floors.

B: That's so unfair!

A: You have to pull your weight around here young man. My house, my rules.

B: But I already mopped the floors, dusted the furniture and vacuumed the rugs!

A: That's great, but you still have work to do, so get to it.

### Key Vocabulary

mess

N

disorder

grounded	A	to be punished and not allowed to go outside
sweep	s	to clean the floor with a broom or brush
pull your weight	N	to help or collaborate in the household
dust	v	to remove dust and dirt
mop	v	to clean the floor with water and a mop
vacuum	v	to use an electric device to suction dust and dirt

### Supplementary Vocabulary

wax	v	to put a greasy substance on a surface to make it shiny
polish	v	To make smooth and shiny by rubbing or chemical action.
take out the trash	v	action of taking the trash outside to be collected



Learn English on your Terms

do the v to wash the dishes  
dishes

iron v action of using a hot  
flat surface to remove  
wrinkles from clothes